

# User Documentation - ME1310



# Table of contents

- [User Documentation - ME1310](#)
  - [Product description](#)
  - [Revision history](#)
  - [Warranty and support](#)
  - [Safety and regulatory information](#)
  - [Overview](#)
    - [Specifications](#)
    - [Platform components](#)
    - [Product architecture](#)
    - [Description of system access methods](#)
    - [Recommended technical expertise](#)
  - [Planning](#)
    - [Environmental considerations](#)
    - [Power consumption and power budget](#)
    - [MAC addresses](#)
    - [PCI mapping](#)
    - [Connector pinouts and electrical characteristics](#)
    - [Material, information and software required](#)
    - [Platform, modules and accessories](#)
    - [Hardware compatibility list](#)
    - [Validated operating systems](#)
    - [Security](#)
  - [Getting started](#)
    - [Getting started - Application installation and performance benchmarking](#)
  - [Mechanical installation and precautions](#)
    - [ESD protections](#)
    - [Unboxing](#)
    - [Components installation and assembly](#)
    - [Airflow](#)
    - [Rack installation](#)
    - [Cabling](#)
  - [Accessing platform components](#)
    - [Accessing a BMC](#)
    - [Accessing the operating system of a server](#)
    - [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#)
    - [Accessing the switch NOS](#)
  - [Discovering platform IP addresses](#)
  - [Default user names and passwords](#)
  - [Software installation and deployment](#)
    - [Preparing for operating system installation](#)
    - [Installing an operating system on a server](#)
    - [Verifying operating system installation](#)
    - [Platform resources for customer application](#)
    - [Common software installation](#)
  - [Configuring](#)
    - [Configuring and managing users](#)
      - [Configuring and managing BMC users](#)
      - [Configuring and managing switch NOS users](#)
    - [Configuring date and time](#)
      - [Configuring BMC date and time](#)
      - [Configuring switch NOS date and time](#)
    - [Configuring networking](#)
      - [Configuring the BMC networking](#)
      - [Configuring UEFI network boot](#)
      - [Configuring switch NOS networking](#)
    - [Configuring BMC services](#)
      - [Configuring BMC SNMP](#)
      - [Configuring BMC event subscriptions](#)
    - [Configuring the switch](#)
    - [Configuring synchronization](#)
    - [Configuring UEFI/BIOS options](#)
    - [Configuring sensors and thermal parameters](#)
  - [Operating](#)
    - [Platform power management](#)
    - [BMC session management](#)
    - [System inventory](#)
    - [Monitoring](#)
      - [Monitoring sensors](#)
      - [Sensor list](#)
    - [Maintenance](#)
      - [System event log](#)
      - [POST code logs](#)
      - [Interpreting sensor data](#)
      - [Component replacement](#)

- [Backup and restore](#)
- [Upgrading](#)
- [Platform cooling and thermal management](#)
- [Troubleshooting](#)
  - [Collecting diagnostics](#)
  - [Factory default](#)
  - [Support information](#)
- [Knowledge base](#)
  - [Sending a BREAK signal over a serial connection](#)
  - [Disabling sleep states in Linux](#)
- [Application notes](#)
  - [Generating custom secure boot keys](#)
  - [Provisioning custom secure boot keys](#)
- [Reference guides](#)
  - [Supported Redfish commands](#)
  - [Supported IPMI commands](#)
- [Document symbols and acronyms](#)

# Product description

Table of contents

- [ME1310 flexible edge server for rapid deployment of telecom and 5G services](#)
  - [Main applications](#)
  - [Main features](#)

## ME1310 flexible edge server for rapid deployment of telecom and 5G services



The Kontron ME1310 high performance 1U edge server is a distributed unit for wide temperature ranges. The ME1310 is used for RAN or multi-access edge computing (MEC). This platform has more cores, more memory and an increased density.

### Main applications

- Solve restricted space and power challenges by enabling complex applications closer to the network edge
- Decrease network congestion and improve the performance of applications by getting task processing closer to the user
- Enable applications such as Radio Access Network (RAN), artificial intelligence, data caching, ultra-low latency, and high-bandwidth edge applications

### Main features

- 3rd generation Intel® Xeon® D processor
- Two PCIe expansion slots for hardware acceleration
- On-board Ethernet network switch with PTP/SyncE and OXC0 holdover
- Long product lifecycle
- Daisy chain configuration to connect multiple distributed units together
- Compliant with all major vRAN software
- DC or AC power
- Eight DDR4 DIMM sockets, 4 channels at up to 3200 MHz support up to 512GB
- Storage option:
  - Two M.2-2230 up to 512GB each and two M.2-2280 up to 2TB each (NVMe)
  - Four M.2-2230 up to 512GB each (NVMe)

## Revision history

Revision	Brief description of changes	Date of issue
1.0	First client release	March 2023

# Warranty and support

Table of contents

- [Limited warranty](#)
- [Disclaimer](#)
- [Customer support](#)
- [Customer service](#)

## Limited warranty

Please refer to the full terms and conditions of the Standard Warranty on Kontron's website at:  
[https://www.kontron.com/support-and-services/rma/canada/standard\\_warranty\\_policy\\_canada.pdf](https://www.kontron.com/support-and-services/rma/canada/standard_warranty_policy_canada.pdf).

## Disclaimer

Kontron would like to point out that the information contained in this manual may be subject to alteration, particularly as a result of the constant upgrading of Kontron products. This document does not entail any guarantee on the part of Kontron with respect to technical processes described in the manual or any product characteristics set out in the manual. Kontron assumes no responsibility or liability for the use of the described product(s), conveys no license or title under any patent, copyright or mask work rights to these products and makes no representations or warranties that these products are free from patent, copyright or mask work right infringement unless otherwise specified. Applications that are described in this manual are for illustration purposes only. Kontron makes no representation or warranty that such application will be suitable for the specified use without further testing or modification. Kontron expressly informs the user that this manual only contains a general description of processes and instructions which may not be applicable in every individual case. In cases of doubt, please contact Kontron.

This manual is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved by Kontron. No part of this document may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language, in any form or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the express written permission of Kontron. Kontron points out that the information contained in this manual is constantly being updated in line with the technical alterations and improvements made by Kontron to the products and thus this manual only reflects the technical status of the products by Kontron at the time of publishing.

Brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

©2023 by Kontron

## Customer support

Kontron's technical support team can be reached through the following means:

- By phone: 1-888-835-6676
- By email: [support-na@kontron.com](mailto:support-na@kontron.com)
- Via the website: [www.kontron.com](http://www.kontron.com)

For sales information, including current and future product options, please contact Kontron Sales Support in Canada through the following means:

- By phone: 1-800-387-4222
- By email: [gss-com@kontron.com](mailto:gss-com@kontron.com)

## Customer service

Kontron, a trusted technology innovator and global solutions provider, uses its embedded market strengths to deliver a service portfolio that helps companies break the barriers of traditional product lifecycles.

Through proven product expertise and collaborative, expert support, Kontron provides unparalleled peace of mind when it comes to building and maintaining successful products. To learn more about Kontron's service offering—including enhanced repair services, an extended warranty, and the Kontron training academy—visit [www.kontron.com/support-and-services](http://www.kontron.com/support-and-services).

# Safety and regulatory information

Table of contents


- [General safety warnings and cautions](#)
  - [Elevated operating ambient temperature](#)
  - [Reduced air flow](#)
  - [Mechanical loading](#)
  - [CE mark](#)
  - [Waste electrical and electronic equipment directive](#)
- [General power safety warnings and cautions](#)
  - [Circuit overloading](#)
  - [DC power supply safety](#)
  - [Reliable earth-grounding](#)
- [Regulatory specifications](#)

<b>NOTICE</b>	Before working with this product or performing instructions described in the getting started section or in other sections, read the Safety and regulatory information section pertaining to the product. Assembly instructions in this documentation must be followed to ensure and maintain compliance with existing product certifications and approvals. Use only the described, regulated components specified in this documentation. Use of other products/components will void the CSA certification and other regulatory approvals of the product and will most likely result in non-compliance with product regulations in the region(s) in which the product is sold.
---------------	--

## General safety warnings and cautions

<b>CAUTION</b>	Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type. Dispose of used batteries according to the instructions.
----------------	--

<b>WARNING</b>	To prevent a fire or shock hazard, do not expose this product to rain or moisture. The chassis should not be exposed to dripping or splashing liquids and no objects filled with liquids should be placed on the chassis cover.
----------------	---

	<b>ESD sensitive device!</b> This equipment is sensitive to static electricity. Care must therefore be taken during all handling operations and inspections of this product in order to ensure product integrity at all times.
---	---

### Elevated operating ambient temperature

If this product is installed in a closed or multi-unit rack assembly, the operating ambient temperature of the rack environment may be greater than the ambient temperature of the room. Therefore, be careful to install the product in an environment that is compatible with the maximum operating temperature specified by the manufacturer in the specifications.

### Reduced air flow

Do not compromise on the amount of air flow required for safe operation when installing this product in a rack. Side clearances must be respected.

### Mechanical loading

Do not load the equipment unevenly when mounting this product in a rack as it may create hazardous conditions.

### CE mark

The CE marking on this product indicates that it is in compliance with the applicable European Union Directives: Low Voltage, EMC, Radio Equipment and RoHS requirements.

### Waste electrical and electronic equipment directive

This product contains electrical or electronic materials. If not disposed of properly, these materials may have potential adverse effects on the environment and human health. The presence of this logo on the product means it should not be disposed of as unsorted waste and must be collected separately. Dispose of this product according to the appropriate local rules, regulations and laws.

WEEE directive logo



## General power safety warnings and cautions



Disconnect the power supply cord before servicing the product to avoid electric shock. If the product has more than one power supply cord, disconnect them all.

**WARNING**

Installation of this product must be performed in accordance with national wiring codes and conform to local regulations.

### Circuit overloading

Do not overload the circuits when connecting this product to the supply circuit as this can adversely affect overcurrent protection and supply wiring. Check the supply equipment nameplate ratings for correct use.

### DC power supply safety

Platforms equipped with a DC power supply must be installed in a restricted access area. When powered by DC supply, this equipment must be protected by a listed branch circuit protector with a maximum 20 A rating. The DC source must be electrically isolated from any hazardous AC source by double or reinforced insulation.



The DC power supply is protected from reverse polarity by internal diodes and will not operate at all if wired incorrectly.

**CAUTION**

This equipment is designed for the earth grounded conductor (return) in the DC supply circuit to be connected to the earth grounding conductor on the equipment (ground lug).

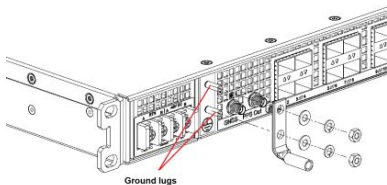
All of the following conditions must be met:

1. This equipment shall be connected directly to the d.c. supply system earthing electrode conductor or to a bonding jumper from an earthing terminal bar or bus to which the d.c. supply system earthing electrode conductor is connected.
2. This equipment shall be located in the same immediate area (such as adjacent cabinets) as any other equipment that has a connection between the earthed conductor of the same d.c. supply circuit and the earthing conductor, and also the point of earthing of the d.c. system. The d.c. system shall not be earthed elsewhere.
3. The d.c. supply source shall be located within the same premises as this equipment.
4. Switching or disconnecting devices shall not be in the earthed circuit conductor between the d.c. source and the point of the connection of the earthing electrode conductor.

### Reliable earth-grounding

Always maintain reliable grounding of rack-mounted equipment.

#### Earth ground lug location



## Regulatory specifications



**警告 此为A级产品，在生活环境中，该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下，可能需要用户对干扰采取切实可行的措施。**

The platform meets the requirements of the following regulatory tests and standards:

#### Safety compliance



USA/Canada	This product is marked cCSAus.
Europe	This product complies with the Low Voltage Directive, 2014/35/EU and EN 62368-1.
International	This product has a CB report and certificate to IEC 62368-1.

#### Electromagnetic compatibility

USA/Canada	This product meets FCC Part 15/ICES-003 Class A. It is designed to meet GR-1089 and GR-63.
Europe	This product complies with the Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2014/30/EU and EN 300 386. The GPS version complies with Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU, EN 301 489-1 and EN 303 413.
International	This product complies with CISPR 32 Class A and CISPR 35.
Japan	This product complies with VCCI Class A. Note for Japan AC input rating is 90-130 VAC.

この装置は、クラスA機器です。この装置を住宅環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

**VCCI - A**

# Overview

# Specifications

Table of contents

- [ME1310 key hardware features](#)
- [ME1310 key software features](#)
- [ME1310 physical dimensions](#)
- [ME1310 packaging physical dimensions](#)
- [ME1310 shipping weights](#)
- [ME1310 environmental specifications](#)

## ME1310 key hardware features

Feature	Description
Hardware platform	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High-performance server for radio access network (RAN) and multi-access edge computing (MEC)</li> <li>• Rackmount, 1U height, 13.5 inches deep, 19 inches wide</li> <li>• Front access only (motherboard I/O, PSU, PCIe add-in card I/O)</li> </ul>
I/O	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two USB 3.0</li> <li>• One RJ45 10/100/1000Base-T management port</li> <li>• One RJ45 serial port</li> <li>• One RJ45 alarm input port</li> <li>• IO module options with:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ Integrated 12-port Ethernet switch module ( 4x SFP28 , 8x SFP+)</li> <li>◦ Pass-through module with four 25 GbE SFP+ (This option is planned for development. Please contact <a href="#">Kontron sales.</a>)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Timing	With Ethernet switch IO module option: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One SMA GNSS antenna input</li> <li>• One SMA PPS Sync Signal Output</li> </ul>
PCIe add-in card	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two optional FHHL or FH<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>L PCIe x16 add-in card supported (power and thermal restrictions may apply)</li> <li>• Maximum power consumption supported is 75 W per card</li> <li>• PCIe 4.0 (16GT/s)</li> </ul> Refer to the <a href="#">Hardware compatibility list</a>
CPU	Intel® Xeon® D-2700 family processors are supported, including the following processors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Xeon® D-2796NT, 20 Cores @ 2.00GHz with QAT, 120 W</li> <li>• Xeon® D-2776NT, 16 Cores @ 2.10GHz with QAT, 117 W</li> <li>• Xeon® D-2776NT, 14 Cores @ 2.00GHz with QAT, 97 W</li> </ul>
Storage	Two M.2 SSDs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PCIe 3.0 x4 NVMe</li> <li>• Supported types: 2230 and 2280</li> </ul> Two M.2 SSDs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PCIe 3.0 x2 NVMe</li> <li>• Supported types: 2230</li> </ul> Refer to the <a href="#">Hardware compatibility list</a>
Memory	DDR4 DIMM with ECC <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bandwidth up to 3200 MT/s (minimum supported memory speed is 2400 MT/s)</li> <li>• Four memory channels</li> <li>• Two DIMM socket per channel</li> </ul> Refer to the <a href="#">Hardware compatibility list</a>
Power inlet	One -57 VDC to -40 VDC dual input feed or 90 VAC to 264 VAC 47/63 Hz single input
Power consumption	Refer to <a href="#">Power consumption and power budget</a>
Fans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Eight fans in N+1 configuration</li> <li>• Automatic fan speed control</li> </ul>
Rack mounting brackets	Front mount in a 19-in wide rack

## ME1310 key software features

Feature	Description
Platform management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BMC powered by OpenBMC</li> <li>UEFI based on AMI AptioV</li> </ul>
Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dedicated or shared (NC-SI) LAN interface</li> <li>USB LAN host interface (for Redfish)</li> <li>IPMI host interface (thru KCS)</li> <li>Remote management <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Redfish 1.9 + 2020.1 Schema</li> <li>IPMI 2.0 RMCP+</li> <li>Web UI</li> </ul> </li> <li>Remote Access <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>KVM/VM</li> <li>Serial interface over IPMI and SSH</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Monitoring and power control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Power control <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Power control</li> <li>Status</li> <li>Boot device override</li> <li>Cooling and heating</li> </ul> </li> <li>Monitoring <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Thermal</li> <li>Power</li> <li>Humidity</li> <li>Board/device monitoring</li> <li>Telco alarm</li> </ul> </li> <li>Logging and alerting (logs and events)</li> </ul>
Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>User management (internal, LDAP)</li> <li>Firmware management <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Version</li> <li>Update</li> <li>Signature validation</li> <li>Failsafe thru dual bank (available thru Redfish and Web UI)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Network management (DHCP and static, VLAN)</li> </ul>
Security	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Encryption (password encryption, TLS, IPMI Cipher 17)</li> <li>Authentication (LDAP / Active Directory)</li> <li>Firmware signature</li> <li>Secure boot</li> <li>CSM/legacy (available, but disabled by default)</li> </ul>
Kontron Secure Edge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Management Redfish/Web UI enabled</li> <li>Agent pre-provisioned</li> </ul>
Operating system	Refer to the <a href="#">Validated operating systems</a>
Thermal management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Platform Environment Control Interface (PECI) for thermal management support</li> <li>Memory and CPU thermal management</li> </ul>

## ME1310 physical dimensions

Chassis	Measurements (mm [in])	Notes
Depth	343 [13.5]	Body
Width	449 [17.6] max.	Body
	483 [19] max.	Overall width: front mounting brackets included (2 times 17.2 mm [0.7 in])
	465 [18.3]	Between rack mounting points
Height	43.5 [1.7] max.	Body
Side clearance	None	
Front clearance	100 [4]	Recommended
Rear clearance	70 [2.8]	

## ME1310 packaging physical dimensions

Depth (mm [in])	Width (mm [in])	Height (mm [in])
489 [19.25]	571.5 [22.5]	190.5 [7.5]

## ME1310 shipping weights

Component	Weight (kg [lb])
AC PSU system weight – with four DIMMs and one M.2-2280 SSD	6.93 [15.3]
DC PSU system weight – with four DIMMs and one M.2-2280 SSD	6.79 [15.0]
Packaging (box + foam + bag)	1.59 [3.5]

## ME1310 environmental specifications

Environment	Specification
Temperature, operating	<p><b>DC power supply:</b> -40°C to +65°C (-40°F to +149°F)</p> <p><b>AC power supply :</b> -5°C to +50°C (23°F to +122°F)</p> <p>The failure of one fan will not impact operation for at least 4 hours at 65 °C.</p> <p>Certain limitations may apply. These limitations could be the result of the operating temperature range of installed configurable components (e.g., SFP+ module, SSD and PCIe add-in card). Kontron only supports using SFP+ and SSD modules rated for an industrial operating temperature range (-40 °C to +85 °C).</p>
Temperature, non-operating	-40°C to +70°C (-40°F to +158°F)
Humidity, operating	5% to 95%, non-condensing
Altitude/pressure, operating	-60 m to 1,800 m altitude without temperature de-rating Up to 4,000 m altitude with temperature de-rating of 1 degree Celsius per 300 m above 1,800 m
Altitude/pressure, non-operating	Up to 4,570 m
Vibration, operating	<p>This product meets operational random vibration standards.</p> <p>Test profile based on ETSI EN 300 019-2-3 class 3.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 Hz to 10 Hz at +12 dB/octave (slope up)</li> <li>• 10 Hz to 50 Hz at 0.02 m2/s3 (0.0002 g<sup>2</sup>/Hz) (flat)</li> <li>• 50 Hz to 100 Hz at -12 dB/octave (slope down)</li> <li>• 30 minutes for each of the three axes</li> </ul>
Vibration, non-operating	<p>This product meets transportation and storage random vibration standards.</p> <p>Test profile based on GR-63 clause 5.4.3, and ETSI EN 300 019-2-2 class 2.3</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 Hz to 20 Hz at 1 m2/s3 (0.01 g<sup>2</sup>/Hz) (flat)</li> <li>• 20 Hz to 200 Hz at -3 dB/octave (slope down)</li> <li>• 30 minutes for each of the three axes</li> </ul>
Shock, operating	<p>This product meets operational shock standards.</p> <p>Test profile based on ETSI EN 300 019-2-3 class 3.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 11 ms half sine, 3 g, three shocks in each direction</li> </ul>
Drop/free fall	<p>This product meets Bellcore GR-63 section 5.3.</p> <p>Packaged = 1,000 mm, six surfaces, three edges and four corners</p> <p>Unpackaged = 100 mm, two sides and two bottom corners</p>
Electrostatic discharge	This product meets 8 kV contact, 15 kV air discharge using IEC 61000-4-2 test method.
RoHS and WEEE	<p>This product is designed to meet China RoHS Phase 1 (self-declaration and labeling).</p> <p>This product complies with EU directive 2012/19/EU (WEEE).</p> <p>This product complies with RoHS directive 2011/65/EU as modified by EU 2015/863.</p>

# Platform components

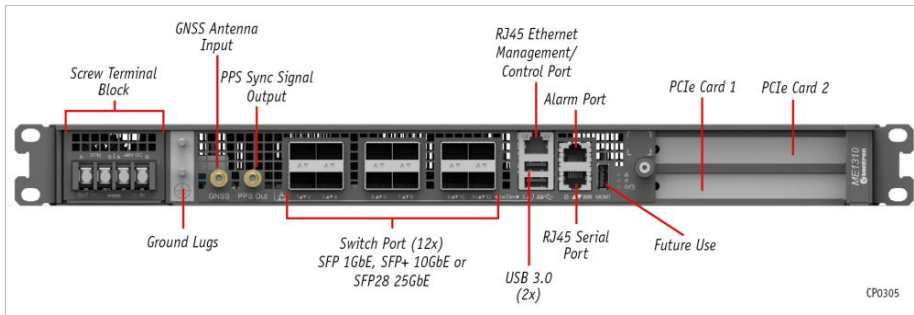
Table of contents

- [Platform front panel](#)
  - [Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
  - [Pass-through IO module option](#)
- [Platform LEDs](#)
  - [General platform LEDs](#)
  - [Network port Srv 5 LEDs](#)
  - [IO module network port LEDs](#)
    - [Ethernet switch module](#)
    - [Pass-through module](#)
  - [Power supply LEDs](#)
    - [DC power supply](#)
    - [AC power supply](#)
- [Platform fans](#)
- [Platform label](#)

## Platform front panel

The ME1310 platform is available with a DC or AC power supply. To simplify documentation, only the DC version is shown here. For information on component pinouts, refer to [Connector pinouts and electrical characteristics](#). For information on cabling, refer to [Cabling](#).

### Ethernet switch IO module option

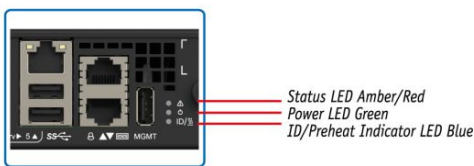


### Pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

## Platform LEDs

### General platform LEDs



Status (amber/red)	State
Off	No active error notification (normal operation)
Amber On	Major alarm active
Red On	Critical alarm active (service/maintenance is required)

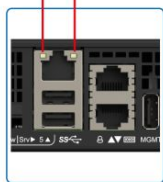
ID/preheat Indicator (blue)	Power (green)	State
Off	Off	Both power inputs DOWN or out of range for normal operation
On	Off	One or both power inputs UP – ACPI Software off state (S5)
Slow blink	Off	Platform preheating prior to server activation
Normal blink	Any	BMC is executing an identification request
Off	Rapid blink	Server processor activation complete and executing – ACPI Working state (S0)
Off	Normal blink	UEFI/BIOS started POST
Off	Normal blink or On <sup>1</sup>	UEFI/BIOS hand over to OS boot loader
Off	On <sup>1</sup>	Application started/running OK

<sup>1</sup> By default, the Power LED will "normal blink" until customer application confirms it is running by setting an I/O register bit. Via a UEFI/BIOS setting, the Power LED can be set to steady on after POST (before starting the OS/application), but the default UEFI/BIOS setting leaves that task to the application. Refer to Configuring option Application Ready LED in section [Configuring UEFI/BIOS options](#) to configure the appropriate UEFI/BIOS option and to [Platform resources for customer application](#) to view an example of a script to integrate into the application.

- Slow blink: 1 short pulse every 2 seconds
- Normal blink: 1 pulse every second
- Rapid blink: 2 pulses every second

## Network port Srv 5 LEDs

Link LED Green/Yellow Activity LED Green

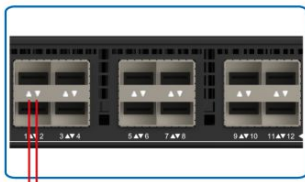


CP0301

Link (left – green/yellow)	Activity (right – green)	State
Off	Off	No link
Off	On (no activity) Blinking (activity)	10Base-T link established
Yellow On	On (no activity) Blinking (activity)	100Base-TX link established
Green On	On (no activity) Blinking (activity)	1000Base-T link established

## IO module network port LEDs

### Ethernet switch module



Network Link/Activity LED (Port 2) Green/Amber  
 Network Link/Activity LED (Port 1) Green/Amber

CP0299

Network link/activity (green/amber)	State
Green On	Link established at maximum port speed (10 or 25Gbps), no activity
Amber On	Link established at below maximum port speed (e.g. link is at 1Gbps on a 10Gbps port) , no activity
Blinking (green or amber based on port speed)	Activity
Off	No link

### Pass-through module

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

### Power supply LEDs

#### DC power supply



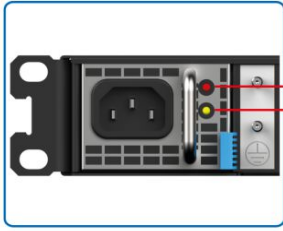
Output Status/Operation Amber/Green  
 Input Status/Operation Amber/Green

CP0298

Output status/operation (amber/green)	State
Off	Hot-swap controller Off or FPGA not loaded
Amber On	Hold-up not ready or voltage too low for start-up
Green On	Hold-up ready
Input status/operation (amber/green)	State
Off	No 48V
Amber On	Hot-swap controller Off (low input voltage or fault)
Green On	Hot-swap controller On

#### AC power supply





Input Status/Operation Green  
Output Status/Operation Amber/Green

CP0302

Input status/operation (green)	State
On	Input voltage operating within normal specified range
Blinking	Input voltage operating in: 1) overvoltage warning, or 2) undervoltage warning
Off	Input voltage operating: 1) above overvoltage range, or 2) below undervoltage range, or 3) not present
Output status/operation (amber/green)	State
Green On	Power good mode: Main output and standby output enabled with no power supply warning or fault detected
Blinking Green	Standby mode: Standby output enabled with no power supply warning or fault detected
Blinking Amber	Warning mode: Power supply warning detected as per PMBus STATUS_X reporting bytes
Amber On	Fault mode: Power supply fault detected as per PMBus STATUS_X reporting

## Platform fans

There are 8 fans inside the platform.

Refer to [Components installation and assembly](#) for instructions on how to replace a fan.

## Platform label

The platform has a manufacturing label and a QR code label.

The manufacturing label provides:

- The part number
- A description of the product including configurable options
- The manufacturing batch number

Here is an example of the information that could be displayed:

Kontron part # = 1069-1291

Kontron product name = ME1210BX-BCDDBXX

ZZXX1234HH (XX) = 01A0001100



Kontron part #  
Kontron product name  
ZZXX1234HH (XX)

Relevant section:

[MAC addresses](#) (for QR code results, which include the serial number)

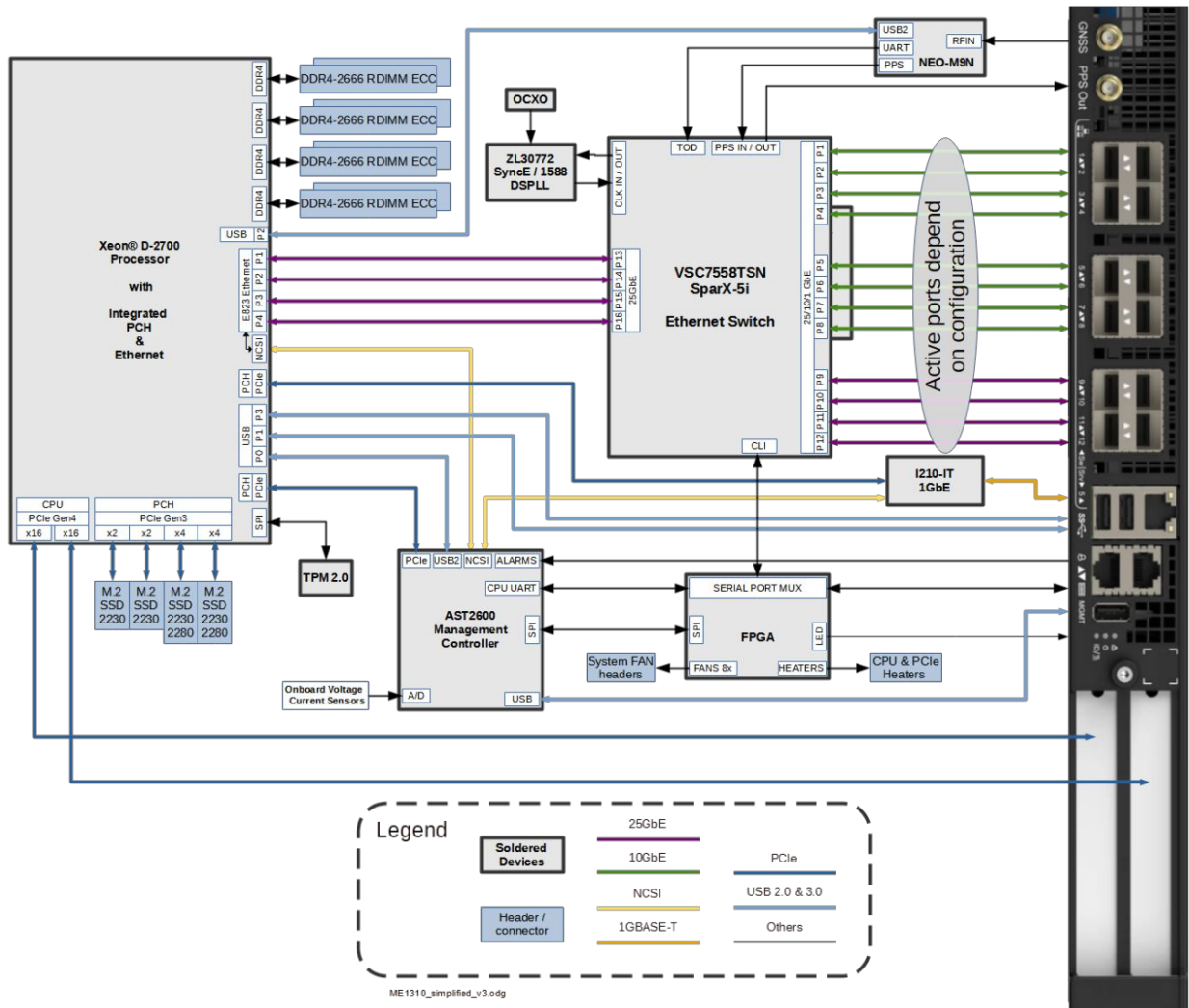
# Product architecture

Table of contents

- [Block diagram](#)
  - [Block diagram with the Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
  - [Block diagram with the pass-through IO module option](#)
- [Network planes](#)
- [Internal connections](#)
  - [Internal connections with the Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
  - [Internal connections with the pass-through IO module option](#)

## Block diagram

### Block diagram with the Ethernet switch IO module option



### Block diagram with the pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

## Network planes

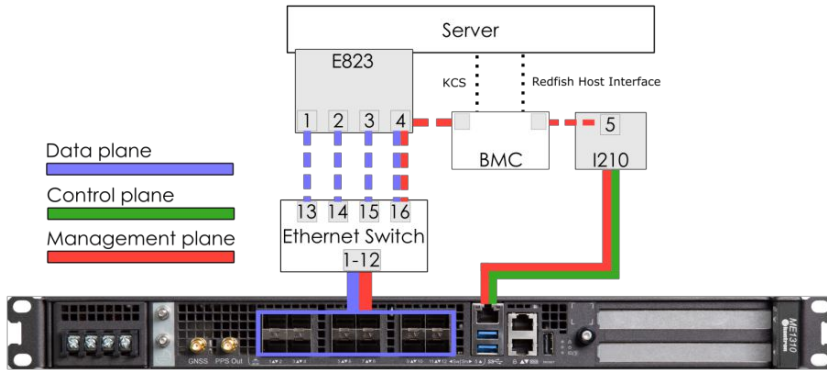
The ME1310 platform provides:

- 3 network planes (management plane, control plane, data plane)

Network planes	Description	Speed (GbE)	Component access
Management plane	The management plane carries platform administrative traffic. This plane is used to support hardware management, configuration and health/thermal/power monitoring.	1	BMC
Control plane	The control plane carries customer application signaling traffic. This plane is used to control customer applications.	1	Server
Data plane	The data plane carries customer data application traffic. This plane is used to deliver service to end users.	1/10/25	Server, BMC, switch NOS

## Internal connections

### Internal connections with the Ethernet switch IO module option



### Internal connections with the pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](mailto:kontron@kontron.com).

# Description of system access methods

Table of contents

- [Paths to the management interface \(BMC\)](#)
- [Paths to the operating system](#)
- [Paths to the UEFI/BIOS options](#)
- [Paths to the switch network operating system \(NOS\)](#)

To configure, monitor and troubleshoot the ME1310 platform and its components, several interfaces can be used:

- **Management interface (BMC)** – through the management plane and the data plane of the platform
- **Operating system** – through the management plane, control plane, data plane or the serial port of the platform
- **UEFI/BIOS** – through the management plane or the serial port of the platform
- **Switch network operating system (NOS)** (on platforms equipped with the Ethernet switch IO module) – through the management plane and the data plane

## Paths to the management interface (BMC)

To access the management interface (BMC) through one of the paths, refer to [Accessing a BMC](#).

Paths to the management interface (BMC)	
Path description	Main reasons for use
<b>BMC Web UI</b> <i>This is the recommended path for first time out-of-the-box system configuration. Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remote server control and monitoring</li> <li>• OS video access</li> <li>• Firmware upgrades</li> </ul>
<b>Redfish</b> <i>This is the ideal path for automated monitoring/control script once the platform has been configured for the first time. Accessible from the BMC management plane, and locally from the server operating system via the Redfish host interface.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remote server monitoring</li> <li>• Remote server control</li> <li>• Firmware upgrades</li> </ul>
<b>IPMI over LAN (IOL)</b> <i>This is a good path for automated monitoring/control script once the platform has been configured for the first time. Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remote server control and monitoring</li> </ul>
<b>IPMI via KCS</b> <i>Accessible locally from the server operating system.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Local access to the BMC from the operating system for server monitoring</li> <li>• Initial BMC configuration</li> </ul>

## Paths to the operating system

To access the operating system through one of the paths, refer to [Accessing the operating system of a server](#).

Paths to the operating system	
Path description	Main reasons for use
<b>KVM</b> <i>This is the recommended path for first time out-of-the-box system configuration. Fail-safe* path to access the server if any elements (OS, UEFI/BIOS, etc.) get misconfigured. Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Initial OS installation</li> <li>• OS network interface configuration</li> <li>• OS video access</li> <li>• Remote access to the OS</li> <li>• Unable to establish a network session to the OS</li> </ul>
<b>Serial over LAN using the Web UI</b> <i>Fail-safe* path to access the server if any elements (OS, UEFI/BIOS, etc.) get misconfigured. Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OS network interface configuration</li> <li>• Unable to establish a network session to the OS</li> <li>• OS serial console access</li> </ul>
<b>Serial over LAN using SSH from a remote computer</b> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OS network interface configuration</li> <li>• Unable to establish a network session to the OS</li> <li>• OS serial console access</li> </ul>
<b>Serial over LAN using IPMI from a remote computer</b> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OS network interface configuration</li> <li>• Unable to establish a network session to the OS</li> <li>• OS serial console access</li> </ul>
<b>SSH/RDP/Customer application protocols</b> <i>Ideal path once OS installation and OS network interface configurations have been performed. Accessible from the control plane and the data plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operating the platform under normal operation</li> <li>• Remote access to the OS</li> </ul>
<b>Serial console (physical connection)</b> <i>Fail-safe path to access all server components when elements (OS, BMC, UEFI/BIOS, etc.)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Initial OS network interface configuration</li> <li>• No configuration performed on BMC</li> <li>• Troubleshooting</li> </ul>

*get misconfigured.  
Accessible from the physical port.*

\*Note that communication with the BMC management plane via the integrated switch can be lost because of configurations applied in the NOS.

## Paths to the UEFI/BIOS options

To access the UEFI/BIOS options through one of the paths, refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#).

Paths to the UEFI/BIOS options	
Path description	Main reasons for use
<b>Serial over LAN using the Web UI</b> <i>This is the recommended path for first time out-of-the-box system configuration.</i> <i>Fail-safe* path to access the server if any elements (OS, UEFI/BIOS, etc.) get misconfigured.</i> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial UEFI/BIOS configuration</li> <li>UEFI/BIOS video access</li> </ul>
<b>KVM</b> <i>Fail-safe* path to access the server if any elements (OS, UEFI/BIOS, etc.) get misconfigured.</i> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial UEFI/BIOS configuration</li> <li>UEFI/BIOS video access</li> </ul>
<b>Serial over LAN using SSH from a remote computer</b> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial UEFI/BIOS configuration</li> <li>UEFI/BIOS serial console access</li> <li>OS network interfaces not configured, but BMC network access is available</li> </ul>
<b>Serial over LAN using IPMI from a remote computer</b> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial UEFI/BIOS configuration</li> <li>UEFI/BIOS serial console access</li> <li>OS network interfaces not configured, but BMC network access is available</li> </ul>
<b>Redfish</b> <i>This is the ideal path for automated monitoring/control script once the platform has been configured for the first time.</i> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane, and locally from the server operating system via the Redfish host interface.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Basic UEFI/BIOS configuration</li> </ul>
<b>Serial console (physical connection)</b> <i>Fail-safe path to access all server components when elements (OS, BMC, UEFI/BIOS, etc.) get misconfigured.</i> <i>Accessible from the physical port.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initial UEFI/BIOS configuration</li> <li>No configuration performed on BMC</li> <li>Troubleshooting</li> </ul>

\*Note that communication with the BMC management plane via the integrated switch can be lost because of configurations applied in the NOS.

## Paths to the switch network operating system (NOS)

To access the switch network operating system through one of the paths, refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#).

Paths to the switch network operating system (NOS)	
Path description	Main reasons for use
<b>Switch NOS Web UI</b> <i>This is the recommended path for first time out-of-the-box system configuration.</i> <i>Accessible from the data plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switch NOS control and monitoring</li> <li>Firmware upgrades</li> </ul>
<b>Serial over LAN using the BMC Web UI</b> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NOS network interface configuration</li> <li>Initial switch NOS configuration</li> </ul>
<b>Serial over LAN using SSH from a remote computer</b> <i>Accessible from the BMC management plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NOS network interface configuration</li> <li>Initial switch NOS configuration</li> </ul>
<b>SSH from a remote computer</b> <i>This is a good path for automated monitoring/control script once the platform has been configured for the first time.</i> <i>Accessible from the data plane.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switch NOS control and monitoring</li> <li>Firmware upgrades</li> </ul>
<b>SSH from the integrated server</b> <i>Accessible locally from the server operating system.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local access to the switch NOS for control and monitoring</li> </ul>

## Recommended technical expertise

Platforms are networking devices.

It is recommended that you identify the appropriate upstream topology with the help of the IT/network personnel managing the upstream network hardware and configuration. This will facilitate the process down the road.

IP addresses will also need to be assigned based on known MAC addresses, so appropriate IT expertise is required.

# Planning

## Environmental considerations

The ME1310 platform has been designed to work over the extended temperature range of -40°C to +65°C (-40°F to +149°F) when using a DC power supply or -5°C to +50°C (23°F to +122°F) when using an AC power supply and to withstand non-condensing humidity levels up to 95%. This equipment should not be exposed directly to the elements (sun, rain, wind, dust). For installations in outdoor or other harsh, uncontrolled environments, an appropriate housing must be used.

If components that do not support the ME1310 temperature range are installed, the customer is responsible to configure sensor thresholds and thermal management accordingly. Refer to [Configuring sensors and thermal parameters](#) and [Platform cooling and thermal management](#).

When powering up the ME1310 at the lower end of the extended temperature range, it is normal for the system to take some time for preheating before completing the initial boot sequence. Once powered up and in operation, the system will dissipate enough power to stay warm. The warm-up delay of the deep cold start is a rare event that could occur only at the initial power up or after a power outage in a cold environment.

Special considerations must be taken if you are exposing the ME1310 to a temperature shock, such as taking the equipment out of a service truck left outside for the night in sub zero temperatures and taking it inside for installation in a heated facility. In such situations, it is recommended to allow at least 4 hours for the equipment to be acclimated to the new ambient temperature before powering it up, in order to prevent condensation.

If you are installing the ME1310 in a hot environment, it is recommended to take additional measures to maximize the cooling and air circulation as a constant exposure to high temperatures reduces the life expectancy of electronic equipment.

The ME1310 meets operational random vibration, operational shock, transportation and storage random vibration standards. Tests are based on ETSI EN 300 019-2-3 class 3.2, ETSI EN 300 019-2-2 class 2.3 and GR-63 clause 5.4.3 and section 5.3.



# Power consumption and power budget

Table of contents

- [DC power supply input voltage and current requirements](#)
- [AC power supply input voltage and current requirements](#)
- [Power consumption examples](#)
  - [System power consumption](#)
  - [Component power consumption examples](#)

## DC power supply input voltage and current requirements

Relevant section:

[Cabling](#)



**Mating connector:** Refer to the Cabling section to build appropriate cables.

### Description:

The DC power input is designed in accordance with Telcordia GR-1089 and ATIS-0600315 and has the following characteristics:

- Redundant feeds (using active OR-ing diodes)
- -40.0 V to -56.7 V continuous operating voltage
- Internal fuses (30 A on RTN\_A and RTN\_B; 25 A on -48V\_A, -48V\_B)
- Inrush and over-current protection with active hot-swap controller
- Includes surge protection (IEC 61000-4-5 class 2, 1kV)

**NOTICE** The DC power interface is surge protected and cable length is not restricted to 6 meters. This interface is adequate for connection to local DC power systems (GR-1089 type B) and intra-cell site DC power limited outdoor exposure (type 8b).

## AC power supply input voltage and current requirements

AC input voltage	
Nominal	115/230 VAC
Minimum	90 VAC
Maximum	264 VAC
AC input current	
Maximum	8.5 Arms at 90 VAC
Power input	
Maximum	700 W

## Power consumption examples

**i** This section provides power consumption values obtained in a test environment. Actual values highly depend on the application that will be used. The values provided must therefore only be used as a general reference and tests need to be performed with the actual hardware configuration and application that will be used.

### System power consumption

The following ME1310 configuration was used to obtain the typical power consumption values shown in the table below:

- Xeon® D-2796NT processor
- Ethernet switch IO module with standard OCXO
- Eight 64 GB LRDIMM
- One 128 GB M.2 SATA module
- Two 25GBASE-LR SFP28 modules
- Two 10GBASE-SR SFP+ modules
- Two PCIe add-in cards: 75 W power test jigs

- DC PSU
- Standard 8 fans

Status	Typical consumption (W)	Notes
Idle	78	Idle power consumption was measured in CentOS 7 once it had finished booting
Maximum application	342	Maximum power was measured in CentOS 7 running "mprime -t" as a stress application
Maximum application and fan	500	Maximum power was measured in CentOS 7 running "mprime -t" as a stress application with fans at maximum speed

**NOTE:**

- DC power supply input is at 48 VDC.
- Test was performed at ambient temperature.
- Power consumption varied during the test.
- Power consumption was measured at the DC power supply input.

**Component power consumption examples**

Power figures given per component in the table were measured at the DC power supply output (12 V side). They therefore do not include the PSU efficiency. Power at the DC power supply input (48 V side) is typically 5% higher.

Components	Typical consumption (W)	Notes
Intel® Xeon® D-2796NT	120	TDP
Intel® Xeon® D-2776NT	117	TDP
Intel® Xeon® D-2766NT	97	TDP
Ethernet switch IO module with standard OCXO	23	Ethernet switch has 4 SFP interfaces with link up
Fans	23	At maximum speed
64 GB LRDIMM	6	Under active use
16 GB RDIMM	3.5	Under active use
NVMe 128GB, 512GB, 1TB or 2TB M.2 SSD	7	Under active use. Idle power is 1 W.
25GBASE -LR SFP28	1	Connection is link up with partner device
10GBASE-SR SFP+	1	Connection is link up with partner device

**NOTICE**

If all the optional components are used and operate at maximum power, the system could exceed its maximum power consumption.

# MAC addresses

Table of contents

- [MAC addresses](#)
  - [Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
  - [Pass-through IO module option](#)
- [Discovering the platform MAC addresses](#)
  - [Discovering a MAC address using the QR code](#)
  - [Discovering a MAC address using the UEFI/BIOS](#)

Relevant section:

[Product architecture](#)

# MAC addresses

## Ethernet switch IO module option

MAC address	Interface description	Device	Note
MAC_BASE	Front panel Srv 5	BMC	Shared connector with server.
MAC_BASE + 1	Server internal port 4	BMC	Internal to switch interface 1/16 . Shared connection with server.
MAC_BASE + 2	Server Redfish host interface	Server	Internal to BMC via integrated USB-LAN .
MAC_BASE + 3	Server internal port 1	Server	Internal to switch interface 1/13.
MAC_BASE + 4	Server internal port 2	Server	Internal to switch interface 1/14.
MAC_BASE + 5	Server internal port 3	Server	Internal to switch interface 1/15.
MAC_BASE + 6	Server internal port 4	Server	Internal to switch interface 1/16 . Shared connection with BMC .
MAC_BASE + 7	Front panel Srv 5	Server	Server control plane. Shared connection with BMC.
SW_MAC_BASE	Any switch interface	Switch NOS	MAC used by the switch network operating system for configuration/monitoring access.
SW_MAC_BASE + 1 to SW_MAC_BASE + 17	Reserved	Switch NOS	Reserved MAC for switch network operating system.

## Pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

# Discovering the platform MAC addresses

The platform MAC addresses can be discovered:

- Using the [QR code](#)
- Using the [UEFI/BIOS](#)

## Discovering a MAC address using the QR code

Step_1	<p>Using a QR code application, scan the QR code of the platform. Record the information obtained in your device (e.g. by taking a screen shot).</p> <p>S/N:9017020001 = Platform serial number            P/N:1065-2823 = Platform part number            BATCH:0A00000001 = Platform production lot number            MAC:            00A0A5D6402A = First MAC address attributed to the BMC/server. Value to be used to replace MAC_BASE.            00A0A5E1B934 = First MAC address attributed to the integrated Ethernet switch. Value to be used to replace SW_MAC_BASE. This is only present for a platform configured with the IO Ethernet switch module.</p>	<p>S/N:9017020001            P/N:1065-2823            BATCH:0A00000001            MAC:            00A0A5D6402A            00A0A5E1B934</p>
--------	--	--

## Discovering a MAC address using the UEFI/BIOS

### Prerequisites

1	<p>A physical connection to the device is required.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The serial console port is compatible with Cisco 72 3383 01 cable.</p>
---	--

NOTE: The serial console port is compatible with CISCO /Z-3583-01 cable.

2	<p>A serial console tool is installed on the remote computer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Speed (Baud): 115200</li> <li>• Data bits: 8</li> <li>• Stop bits: 1</li> <li>• Parity: None</li> <li>• Flow Control: None</li> <li>• Recommended emulation mode: VT100+</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: PuTTY is recommended.</p>
---	---

## Accessing the BMC network configuration menu

Refer to [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS menu, navigate to tab Server Mgmt .	 <p>The screenshot shows the Aptio Setup Utility interface with the 'Server Mgmt' tab selected. The main menu includes BIOS Information, Memory Information, System Language, System Date, and System Time. Navigation instructions are listed on the right side of the screen.</p>
Step_2	Select BMC network configuration .	 <p>The screenshot shows the BMC network configuration menu. Options include BHC Interface(s), Wait For BMC, FRB-2 Timer, OS Watchdog Timer, OS Wtd Timer, Serial Mux, System Event Log, View FRU information, BMC network configuration (highlighted), View System Event Log, BMC User Settings, and BMC Warm Reset. Navigation instructions are listed on the right side of the screen.</p>
Step_3	<p>The BMC network configuration menu is displayed.</p> <p>NOTE: When the platform is powered up after being shut off, the UEFI/BIOS may load before the BMC has received its IP address. In this case, the UEFI/BIOS menu information will need to be refreshed by restarting the server and re-entering the UEFI/BIOS .</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the BMC network configuration menu with 'Lan channel 1' selected. It displays configuration details for LAN channel 1, including Configuration Address, Source, Current Configuration, Address source, Station IP address, Subnet mask, Station MAC address, Router IP address, and Router MAC address. Navigation instructions are listed on the right side of the screen.</p>

# PCI mapping

Table of contents

- [Platform PCI mapping](#)

To obtain the platform PCI mapping, use command `lspci -nn`. The lspci description database may have to be updated with command `update-pciids`.

## Platform PCI mapping

Bus: Device. Function	Vendor ID	Device ID	Component	Description
00:00.0	8086	09a2	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:00.1	8086	09a4	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:00.2	8086	09a3	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:00.3	8086	09a5	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:00.4	8086	0998	Host bridge	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.0	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.1	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.2	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.3	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.4	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.5	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.6	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:01.7	8086	0b00	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:02.0	8086	09a6	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:02.1	8086	09a7	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:02.4	8086	3456	Non-Essential Instrumentation	Intel Corporation Device
00:09.0	8086	18a4	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
00:0b.0	8086	18a6	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
00:0f.0	8086	18ac	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
00:16.0	8086	18af	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
00:17.0	8086	18a2	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
00:18.0	8086	18d3	Communication controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:18.1	8086	18d4	Communication controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:18.4	8086	18d6	Communication controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:1a.0	8086	18d8	Serial controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:1a.1	8086	18d8	Serial controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:1a.2	8086	18d8	Serial controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:1a.3	8086	18d9	Unassigned class	Intel Corporation Device
00:1d.0	8086	0998	Host bridge	Intel Corporation Device
00:1e.0	8086	18d0	USB controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:1f.0	8086	18dc	ISA bridge	Intel Corporation Device
00:1f.4	8086	18df	SMBus	Intel Corporation Device
00:1f.5	8086	18e0	Serial bus controller	Intel Corporation Device
00:1f.7	8086	18e1	Non-Essential Instrumentation	Intel Corporation Device
01:00.0	1d79	2263	Non-Volatile memory controller	Transcend Information, Inc. Device

02:00.0	1a03	1150	PCI bridge	ASPEED Technology, Inc. AST1150 PCI-to-PCI Bridge
03:00.0	1344	6001	Non-Volatile memory controller	Micron Technology Inc Device
04:00.0	8086	1533	Ethernet controller	Intel Corporation I210 Gigabit Network Connection
05:00.0	1a03	2000	VGA compatible controller	ASPEED Technology, Inc. ASPEED Graphics Family
15:00.0	8086	09a2	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
15:00.1	8086	09a4	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
15:00.2	8086	09a3	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
15:00.3	8086	09a5	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
15:00.4	8086	0998	Host bridge	Intel Corporation Device
15:02.0	8086	347a	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
16:00.0	8086	0d5c	Processing accelerators	Intel Corporation Device
80:00.0	8086	09a2	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
80:00.1	8086	09a4	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
80:00.2	8086	09a3	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
80:00.3	8086	09a5	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
80:00.4	8086	0998	Host bridge	Intel Corporation Device
80:05.0	8086	18da	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
81:00.0	8086	18a0	Co-processor	Intel Corporation C4xxx Series QAT
88:00.0	8086	09a2	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
88:00.1	8086	09a4	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
88:00.2	8086	09a3	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
88:00.3	8086	09a5	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
88:00.4	8086	0998	Host bridge	Intel Corporation Device
88:04.0	8086	18d1	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
89:00.0	8086	188a	Ethernet controller	Intel Corporation Ethernet Connection E823-C for backplane
89:00.1	8086	188a	Ethernet controller	Intel Corporation Ethernet Connection E823-C for backplane
89:00.2	8086	188a	Ethernet controller	Intel Corporation Ethernet Connection E823-C for backplane
89:00.3	8086	188a	Ethernet controller	Intel Corporation Ethernet Connection E823-C for backplane
90:00.0	8086	09a2	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
90:00.1	8086	09a4	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
90:00.2	8086	09a3	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
90:00.3	8086	09a5	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
90:00.4	8086	0998	Host bridge	Intel Corporation Device
90:02.0	8086	347a	PCI bridge	Intel Corporation Device
fe:00.0	8086	3450	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
fe:00.1	8086	3451	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
fe:00.2	8086	3452	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
fe:00.3	8086	0998	Host bridge	Intel Corporation Device
fe:00.5	8086	3455	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
fe:0b.0	8086	3448	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
fe:0b.1	8086	3448	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
fe:0b.2	8086	344b	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
fe:0c.0	8086	344a	Performance counters	Intel Corporation Device
fe:0d.0	8086	344a	Performance counters	Intel Corporation Device
fe:1a.0	8086	2880	Performance	Intel Corporation Device

			counters	
fe:1b.0	8086	2880	Performance counters	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.0	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.1	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.2	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.3	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.4	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.5	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.6	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:00.7	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:01.0	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:01.1	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:01.2	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:01.3	8086	344c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.0	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.1	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.2	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.3	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.4	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.5	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.6	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0a.7	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0b.0	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0b.1	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0b.2	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:0b.3	8086	344d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1d.0	8086	344f	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1d.1	8086	3457	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.0	8086	3458	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.1	8086	3459	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.2	8086	345a	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.3	8086	345b	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.4	8086	345c	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.5	8086	345d	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.6	8086	345e	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device
ff:1e.7	8086	345f	System peripheral	Intel Corporation Device

# Connector pinouts and electrical characteristics

Table of contents

- [Platform external connectors](#)
  - [Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
  - [Pass-through IO module option](#)
- [Description, pinout and electrical characteristics of external connectors](#)
  - [SMA GNSS RF input](#)
  - [SMA PPS output](#)
  - [RJ45 alarm port](#)
  - [RJ45 serial port](#)
  - [SFP+ and SFP28](#)
    - [Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
    - [Pass-through IO module option](#)
  - [RJ45 Ethernet management port](#)
  - [USB interfaces](#)
  -
- [DC power supply input connector](#)
- [AC power supply input connector](#)

Customers can build custom cables based on the information provided in this section.

Relevant sections:

[Platform components](#)

[Cabling](#)



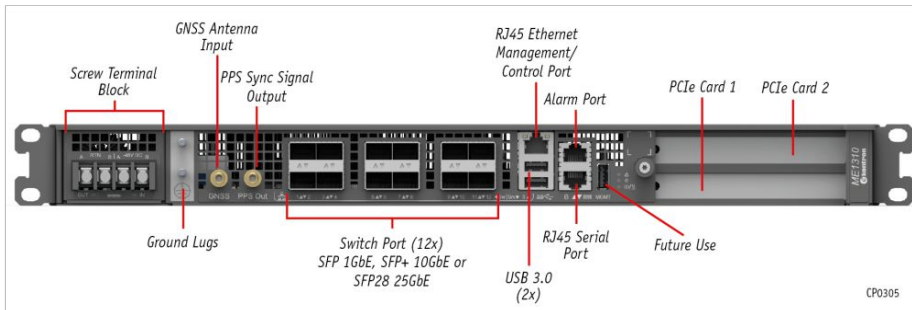
All connectors and interfaces are ESD protected (IEC 61000-4-2, 15kV (air), 8kV (discharge)), unless otherwise specified.

## NOTICE

All connectors and interfaces are intended for a short connection (less 6 meters) within the same cabinet, unless otherwise specified.

## Platform external connectors

### Ethernet switch IO module option



### Pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

## Description, pinout and electrical characteristics of external connectors

This section describes the following connectors and lists their pinouts and electrical characteristics:

- SMA GNSS RF input – available only on platforms with the Ethernet switch IO module
- SMA PPS output – available only on platforms with the Ethernet switch IO module
- RJ45 alarm port
- RJ45 serial port
- SFP+ and SFP28 ports
- RJ45 Ethernet management port
- USB interfaces
- DC power supply input connector
- AC power supply input connector



## SMA GNSS RF input



Mating connector: SMA Male

### Description:

- Integrated NEO-M9N GNSS receiver antenna input
- Can be used with passive and active antennas (the antenna must be matched to the requisite 50 ohms)
- Suitable for connection to external outdoor antennas
- RF input
  - Maximum input power is  $< 0$  dBm
  - Good antenna with  $> 4$  dBic gain recommended
  - Good low noise amplifier (LNA) with a noise figure of less than 2 dB recommended
  - Active antenna gain of 15 dB to 35 dB (maximum) recommended
- DC bias output
  - $5\text{ V} \pm 5\%$
  - Up to 150 mA
  - Over-current protected ( $< 350$  mA)
  - Thermally protected
- Includes surge protection (IEC 61000-4-5 class 2, 1 kV)

### Relevant section:

[Cabling](#)

## SMA PPS output

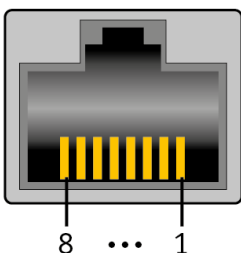


Mating connector: SMA Male

### Description:

- Compliant with ITU-G.703, section 19.2
- Output is 3.3 V source terminated (50 ohms)
- Output duty cycle is 10% (100 ms)
- Suitable for use with unterminated loads:
  - $V_{OH} > 2.6\text{ V}$  at  $I_{OH} = -12\text{ mA}$
  - $V_{OL} < 0.7\text{ V}$  at  $I_{OH} = 12\text{ mA}$
- Suitable for use with 50 ohms to ground terminated loads:
  - $V_{OH} > 1.2\text{ V}$
  - $V_{OL} < 0.3\text{ V}$
- PPS rising edge (at SMA) aligned within  $\pm 5\text{ ns}$  from internal time of day (ToD) counter

## RJ45 alarm port



### Description:

The alarm port is intended for use with normally closed dry contacts only. It uses an RS-232 buffer for its electrical interface and is therefore fully protected against shorts.



Open circuit voltage:

- ALARM\_CM: 5 V to 7 V, current limited to < 60 mA
- ALARM\_IN[7:1]: -7 V to -5 V, 10 kilohms impedance

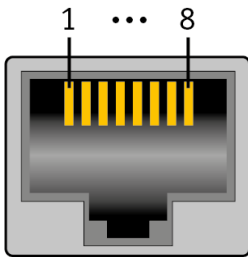
External connector pinout

Pin	Signal description	Pin	Signal description
1	ALARM_IN[1]	5	ALARM_IN[5]
2	ALARM_IN[2]	6	ALARM_IN[6]
3	ALARM_IN[3]	7	ALARM_IN[7]
4	ALARM_IN[4]	8	ALARM_CM

Relevant sections:

- [Discrete sensor monitoring procedure](#)
- [Interpreting sensor data](#)

### RJ45 serial port



Description:

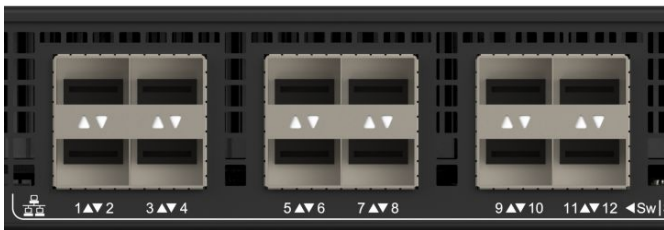
The serial port is electrically compatible to standard RS-232.

External connector pinout:

Pin	Signal description	Pin	Signal description
1	RTS	5	GND
2	DTR	6	RX#
3	TX#	7	DSR
4	GND	8	CTS

### SFP+ and SFP28

#### Ethernet switch IO module option



The port map will determine whether the port is an SFP+ or SFP28 port. Refer to [Configuring the switch](#) for information on how to configure the port map.

Mating connector: SFP+ or SFP28 modules

#### Pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

Description:

The SFP+ and SFP28 interfaces are standardized and are compliant to the following (non exhaustive):

- SFF-8431, SFF-8432 (SFP+)
- SFF-8402 (SFP28)

- 1000BASE-LX/SX, SFP-MSA, SFF INF-8074i (all IO module options)
- 10GBASE-CR/LR/SR, IEEE802.3 clause 52 (all IO module options)
- 25GBASE-CR/LR/SR, IEEE802.3 clause 110 and 112 (Ethernet switch IO module)

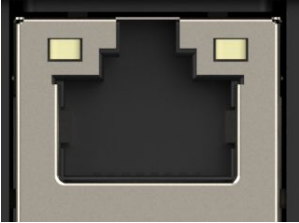
**NOTICE**

Always use optical modules with optical fiber for long (> 6 meters) or outdoor connections.

Relevant section:

[Hardware compatibility list](#)

**RJ45 Ethernet management port**



Description:

This interface is a standard 10/100/1000 Base-T port and is compliant to the following (non exhaustive):

- IEEE 802.3 clause 40

**NOTICE**

A cable length up to 100 meters is acceptable for intra-building connections if the installation conforms to Telcordia GR-1089 issue 6 for type 2 port with longitudinal lightning surge test exemption (section 4.5.3.1).

**USB interfaces**



Mating connector: USB

Description:

The USB interfaces are standard type A host connectors and comply with USB 3.1 and USB 2.0 specifications, available from the [USB Implementers Forum](#).

**DC power supply input connector**



Mating connector: Refer to the Cabling section to build appropriate cables.

Description:

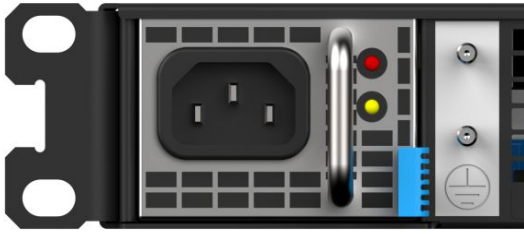
The DC power input is designed in accordance with Telcordia GR-1089 and ATIS-0600315 and has the following characteristics:

- Redundant feeds (using active OR-ing diodes)
- -40.0 V to -56.7 V continuous operating voltage
- Internal fuses (30 A on RTN\_A and RTN\_B; 25 A on -48V\_A, -48V\_B)
- Inrush and over-current protection with active hot-swap controller
- Includes surge protection (IEC 61000-4-5 class 2, 1kV)

**NOTICE**

The DC power interface is surge protected and cable length is not restricted to 6 meters. This interface is adequate for connection to local DC power systems (GR-1089 type B) and intra-cell site DC power limited outdoor exposure (type 8b).

## AC power supply input connector



Mating connector: IEC C13

**Description:**

The AC power input has the following basic characteristics (refer to Murata documentation for component D1U54P-W-650-12-HB4C for more details):

- 90 to 264 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz
- Inrush limited (25 Apk)
- 80 plus platinum efficiency
- Includes surge protection (IEC 61000-4-5 class 3, 2kV)

# Material, information and software required

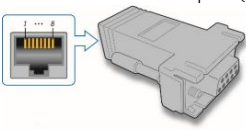
Table of contents

- [Material and information required](#)
  - [Optional adapter](#)
  - [Component installation and assembly](#)
    - [PCIe add-in card](#)
  - [Power cables and tooling](#)
    - [For a DC PSU](#)
    - [For an AC PSU](#)
  - [Rack installation material](#)
  - [Network cables and modules](#)
    - [Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
    - [Pass-through IO module option](#)
- [Software required](#)

## Material and information required

For a list of compatible components, refer to the [Hardware compatibility list](#).

### Optional adapter

Item_1	RJ45 to DB9 serial adapter (Kontron P/N: 1015-9404)  <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="4">Pinout</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>1</td><td>RTS</td><td>5</td><td>GND</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>DTR</td><td>6</td><td>RX#</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>TX#</td><td>7</td><td>DSR</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>GND</td><td>8</td><td>CTS</td></tr></tbody></table>	Pinout				1	RTS	5	GND	2	DTR	6	RX#	3	TX#	7	DSR	4	GND	8	CTS
Pinout																					
1	RTS	5	GND																		
2	DTR	6	RX#																		
3	TX#	7	DSR																		
4	GND	8	CTS																		

### Component installation and assembly

#### PCIe add-in card

Refer to [Platform resources for customer application](#) to view examples of script to integrate into the application to manage customer-specific temperature sensors.

Item_1	One T10 Torx screwdriver
Item_2	(Optional) One thermal probe for temperature monitoring (if physical temperature monitoring is chosen)
Item_3	(Optional) Glue that can withstand the temperature generated by the PCIe add-in card and that has appropriate properties for the application (e.g. Loctite adhesive 444 and Loctite activator SF 7452)

### Power cables and tooling

#### For a DC PSU

Item_1	<p>Crimp lugs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two or four Molex insulated spade crimp lugs for 14-16 wire gauge (19131-0023)</li> </ul> <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two or four Panduit insulated ring crimp lugs for 10-12 wire gauge (EV10-6RB-Q)</li> </ul>
Item_2	<p>Black stranded wire to build the power cable based on the length required:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper wire gauge for application based on cable specification and local electrical code</li> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter: 4.40 mm [0.175 in] for Molex crimp lugs</li> </ul> <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 5.8 mm [0.23 in] for Panduit crimp lugs</li> </ul>
Item_3	<p>Red stranded wire to build the power cable based on the length required:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper wire gauge for application based on cable specification and local electrical code</li> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 4.40 mm [0.175 in] for Molex crimp lug</li> </ul> <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 5.8 mm [0.23 in] for Panduit crimp lug</li> </ul>
Item_4	<p>One hand crimp tool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Molex Premium Grade Hand Crimp Tool (640010100)</li> </ul> <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Panduit Hand Crimp Tool (638130400)</li> </ul>
Item_5	One 8 AWG ground cable based on the length required
Item_6	One ground lug right angle, 8 AWG (Kontron P/N 1064-4226)
Item_7	One hand crimp tool, Panduit CT-1700
Item_8	7 mm wrench or equivalent tool

### For an AC PSU

Item_1	<p>C13 to CEE 7/7 European AC power cord, 10A/250 VAC, 1.8 m long</p> <p>OR</p> <p>C13 to NEMA 5-15P AC power cord, 10A/125 VAC, 2 m long</p>
--------	---

### Rack installation material

Item_1	Racking fasteners (rack specific)
--------	-----------------------------------

### Network cables and modules

#### Ethernet switch IO module option

Item_1	One SFP optical module (SX, LX, SR, LR) with compatible optical cable
Item_2	One RJ45 Ethernet management/control plane cable
Item_3	One RJ45 serial connection cable

#### Pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

## Software required

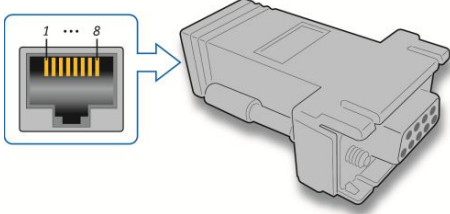
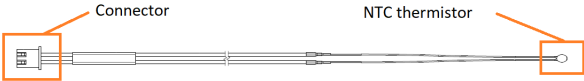
Item_1	An HTTP client such as <b>cURL</b> or <b>Postman</b> is recommended for using the platform Redfish interface. Throughout the documentation, <b>cURL</b> will be used.
Item_2	A terminal emulator such as <b>PuTTY</b> is installed on a remote computer.
Item_3	A hardware detection tool such as <b>pciutils</b> is installed on the local server to view information about devices connected to the server PCI buses .
Item_4	A community version of <b>ipmitool</b> is installed on a remote computer and on the local server to enable remote monitoring —it is recommended to use ipmitool version 1.8.18.

# Platform, modules and accessories

Relevant section:

[Components installation and assembly](#)

This section provides the complete list of compatible parts and components that can be ordered from Kontron.

Description	Kontron P/N	Illustration
RJ45 to DB9 serial adapter	1015-9404	
C13 to CEE 7/7 European AC power cord, 10A/250 VAC, 1.8 m long	1061-0410	
C13 to NEMA 5-15P AC power cord, 10A/125 VAC, 2 m long	1-340000-0	
Ground lug right angle, 8 AWG	1064-4226	
Thermal probe for PCIe add-in card	1065-9296	

# Hardware compatibility list

Table of contents

- [M.2 industrial SSDs \(-40°C to 85°C\)](#)
- [Memory RDIMM ECC industrial modules \(-40°C to 85°C\)](#)
- [SFP, SFP+ and SFP28 industrial modules \(-40°C to 85°C\)](#)

## M.2 industrial SSDs (-40°C to 85°C)

Type	Size	Dimension	Vendor	Vendor P/N	Status	Kontron P/N
NVMe	128GB	2280	Transcend	TS128GMTE652TI	Active	1068-6586
NVMe	512GB	2280	Transcend	TS512GMTE652TI-KCI	Active	1068-1170
			Western Digital	SDBPNPZ-512G-XI	Active	
NVMe	1TB	2280	Transcend	TS1TMTE662TI-KCI	Active	1068-1161
			Western Digital	SDBPNPZ-1T00-XI	Active	
NVMe	2TB	2280	Transcend	TS2TMTE662TI-KCI	Active	1068-1158
			Western Digital	SDBPNPZ-2T00-XI	Active	

## Memory RDIMM ECC industrial modules (-40°C to 85°C)

Size	Type	Vendor	Vendor P/N	Status	Kontron P/N
16GB	DDR4-3200*	Micron Technology	MTA18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	Active	1067-0181
32GB	DDR4-3200*	Micron Technology	MTA36ASF4G72PBZ-3G2E1	Active	1068-6284
64GB	DDR4-3200*	Smart Modular Technology	STI8197RD440425-SA	Active	1068-6291

\*ME1310 platforms support DDR4 speeds of up to 2933

## SFP, SFP+ and SFP28 industrial modules (-40°C to 85°C)

Modules shall be tested:

- With the Ethernet switch IO module in ports configured to support the module speed grade

Type	Vendor	Vendor P/N	Description	Status	Kontron P/N
1000BASE-SX	II-VI (Finisar)	FTLF8519P3BTL	500m, 850nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP optical transceiver	Active	1064-5770
10GBASE-SR	II-VI (Finisar)	FTLX8573D3BTL	400m, 850nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP+ optical transceiver	EOL	1064-5765
	II-VI (Finisar)	FTLX8574D3BTL	400m, 850nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP+ optical transceiver	Active	
	FormericaOE	TAS-A2NH1-P11	300m, 850nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP+ optical transceiver	Active	
25GBASE-SR	FS	SFP28-25GSR-85-I	100m, 850nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP28 optical transceiver	Active	1068-5031
	II-VI (Finisar)	FTLF8536W4BTV	100m, 850nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP28 optical transceiver	Active	
1000BASE-LX	FormericaOE	TSD-S2CA1-F11	10Km, 1310nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP optical transceiver	Active	1065-3758
	II-VI (Finisar)	FTLF1318P3BTL	10Km, 1310nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP optical transceiver	Active	
	Avago	AFCT-5715ALZ	10Km, 1310nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP optical transceiver	Active	
10GBASE-LR	FS	SFP-10GLR-31-I	10Km, 1310nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP+ optical transceiver	Active	1065-6804
	II-VI (Finisar)	FTLX1475D3BTL	10Km, 1310nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP+ optical transceiver	Active	
25GBASE-LR	FS	SFP28-25GLR-31-I	10Km, 1310nm, -40°C to 85°C, SFP28 optical transceiver	Active	1068-5037



# Validated operating systems

Table of contents

- [Status description](#)
- [OS certification status](#)

## Status description

Status legend	Description
<b>CERTIFIED</b>	The product is certified by the OS vendor as compliant hardware.
<b>VALIDATED</b>	The product was internally tested.
<b>TESTED CERT</b>	The unit passed the certification tests, but the official OS vendor certificate was not published.
<b>PLANNED</b>	Certification is planned.
<b>IN PROCESS</b>	Certification has started.

## OS certification status

NOTE: Contact [Customer support](#) for additional operating system certification or validation.

Operating system	Status
CentOS 7.8	<b>PLANNED</b>
RHEL 7.8	<b>PLANNED</b>
RHEL 8.2	<b>PLANNED</b>
SUSE EL 15 SP2	<b>PLANNED</b>
Ubuntu 18.04	<b>PLANNED</b>
Ubuntu 20.04	<b>PLANNED</b>
VMWare ESXi 6.7	<b>PLANNED</b>

## Security

- Establish a plan to change default user names and password. Refer to [Configuring and managing users](#).
- Determine the access paths that are to be closed or open. Refer to the children sections of [Configuring networking](#).
- The BMC SNMP service is enabled by default. Minimally set the community string to a unique value or disable the service. Refer to [Configuring BMC SNMP](#).
- The platform supports Secure Boot. Refer to [Configuring UEFI/BIOS options](#).
- The platform features a Trusted Platform Module (TPM). Determine your requirement with regards to hardware-based, security-related functions. Refer to Configuring the TPM in section [Configuring UEFI/BIOS options](#).

For more information on security features, contact Kontron.

## Getting started

# Getting started – Application installation and performance benchmarking

## Table of contents

- [Safety and regulatory information](#)
- [Introduction](#)
- [Unboxing the platform](#)
  - [What's in the box](#)
- [Planning](#)
  - [Material and information required](#)
  - [Software required](#)
- [Installing one or two PCIe add-in cards and thermal probes in an ME1310](#)
  - [Opening the chassis](#)
  - [Installing one or two thermal probes for the PCIe add-in cards](#)
  - [Connecting one or two PCIe add-in cards](#)
  - [Closing the chassis](#)
- [Racking the platform](#)
- [Connecting the network cables](#)
  - [Procedure](#)
- [Discovering the BMC IP address](#)
  - [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS using a serial console \(physical connection\)](#)
  - [Accessing the BMC network configuration menu](#)
- [Discovering the switch NOS IP address](#)
  - [Discovering the switch NOS IP address through the switch NOS serial console CLI](#)
- [Preparing for operating system installation](#)
- [Installing an operating system using the KVM](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Connecting to the Web UI of the BMC](#)
  - [Launching the KVM](#)
  - [Mounting the operating system image via virtual media](#)
  - [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
  - [Selecting the boot order from boot override](#)
  - [Completing operating system installation](#)
- [Verifying operating system installation](#)
- [Benchmarking an application](#)
- [Monitoring platform sensors](#)
  - [Monitoring platform sensors using the Web UI](#)

## Safety and regulatory information

### NOTICE

Before working with this product or performing instructions described in the getting started section or in other sections, read the Safety and regulatory information section pertaining to the product. Assembly instructions in this documentation must be followed to ensure and maintain compliance with existing product certifications and approvals. Use only the described, regulated components specified in this documentation. Use of other products/components will void the CSA certification and other regulatory approvals of the product and will most likely result in non-compliance with product regulations in the region(s) in which the product is sold.

## Introduction

This getting started section describes the network integration, platform access and operating system installation steps required to start operating an ME1310 platform equipped with one or two PCIe add-in cards provided by the customer and one 128GB M.2 SATA drive, and used to leverage two segregated network links (one for the management/control plane and one for the data plane).

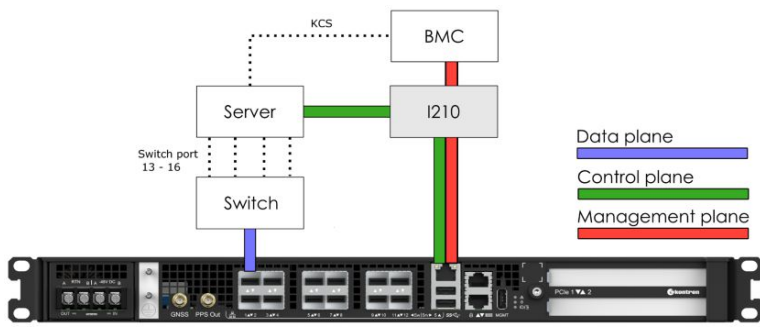
This use case is based on a simplified architecture with one management plane, one control plane and one data plane.

### Assumptions

The scenario described in this getting started section is based on the following assumptions:

- The network connections of the system are as follows:
  - One management plane (red line) and one control plane (green line) via the RJ45 management port 5 ( **Srv 5** )
  - One data plane (purple line) via SFP switch port 1 ( **Sw 1** )
  - One serial connection via the RJ45 serial port of the platform
- The IPv4 scheme is DHCP for the management plane
- The preferred method to obtain or configure the BMC IP address is through the DHCP server
- The preferred method to obtain or configure the switch NOS IP address is through the DHCP server
- The preferred access method for the BMC and the operating system is through the Web UI
- PCIe add-in card temperature is monitored using a thermal probe installed in the platform

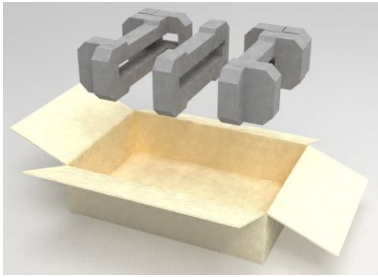
### Network integration summary



## Unboxing the platform

### What's in the box

The box includes one ME1310 multi-access edge computing 1U platform .



Step_1	Carefully remove the platform from its packaging.
Step_2	Remove the plastic film from the platform. Failure to do so may affect platform airflow efficiency, thus resulting in poor cooling capabilities.

NOTE: Additional material may be required to proceed with installation and configuration (refer to [Material and information required](#) for more information).

## Planning

### Material and information required

For a list of compatible components, refer to the [Hardware compatibility list](#).

### PCIe add-in card

NOTE: One thermal probe is required per PCIe add-in card.

Item_1	One T10 Torx screwdriver
Item_2	(Optional) One thermal probe for temperature monitoring (if physical temperature monitoring is chosen)
Item_3	(Optional) Glue that can withstand the temperature generated by the PCIe add-in card and that has appropriate properties for the application (e.g. Loctite adhesive 444 and Loctite activator SF 7452)

### Power cables and tooling

Item_1	<p>Crimp lugs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two or four Molex insulated spade crimp lugs for 14-16 wire gauge (19131-0023)</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Two or four Panduit insulated ring crimp lugs for 10-12 wire gauge (EV10-6RB-Q)</li> </ul>
Item_2	<p>Black stranded wire to build the power cable based on the length required:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper wire gauge for application based on cable specification and local electrical code</li> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter: 4.40 mm [0.175 in] for Molex crimp lugs</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 5.8 mm [0.23 in] for Panduit crimp lugs</li> </ul>
Item_3	<p>Red stranded wire to build the power cable based on the length required:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Proper wire gauge for application based on cable specification and local electrical code</li> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 4.40 mm [0.175 in] for Molex crimp lug</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 5.8 mm [0.23 in] for Panduit crimp lug</li> </ul>
Item_4	<p>One hand crimp tool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Molex Premium Grade Hand Crimp Tool (640010100)</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Panduit Hand Crimp Tool (638130400)</li> </ul>
Item_5	One 8 AWG ground cable based on the length required
Item_6	One ground lug right angle, 8 AWG (Kontron P/N 1064-4226)
Item_7	One hand crimp tool, Panduit CT-1700
Item_8	7 mm wrench or equivalent tool

### Rack installation material

Item_1	Racking fasteners (rack specific)
--------	-----------------------------------

### Network cables and modules

Item_1	One SFP optical module (SX, LX, SR, LR) with compatible optical cable
Item_2	One RJ45 Ethernet management/control plane cable
Item_3	One RJ45 serial connection cable

### Network infrastructure

- The following IP addresses may be required:
  - One management/control plane IP address for the BMC
  - Control plane and data plane IP addresses for the server
  - One data plane IP address for the switch NOS

### Software required

Relevant section:

[Common software installation](#)

Item_1	An HTTP client such as <b>cURL</b> or <b>Postman</b> is recommended for using the platform Redfish interface. Throughout the documentation, <b>cURL</b> will be used.
Item_2	A terminal emulator such as <b>PuTTY</b> is installed on a remote computer.
Item_3	A hardware detection tool such as <b>pciutils</b> is installed on the local server to view information about devices connected to the server PCI buses .
Item_4	A community version of <b>ipmitool</b> is installed on a remote computer and on the local server to enable remote monitoring —it is recommended to use ipmitool version 1.8.18.

> You now have the material and software required. Proceed with the installation of the PCIe add-in card(s).

## Installing one or two PCIe add-in cards and thermal probes in an ME1310

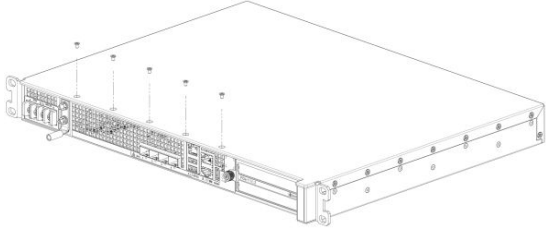
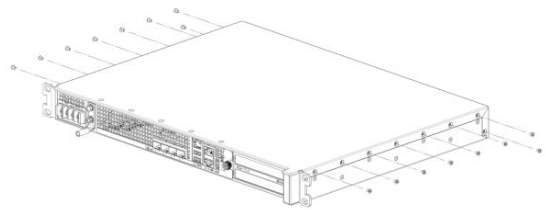
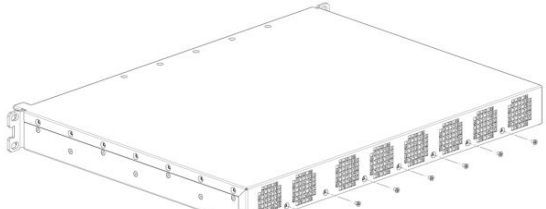
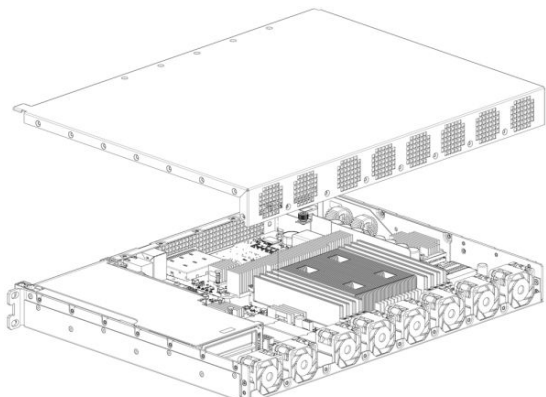
**ESD sensitive device!**

This equipment is sensitive to static electricity. Care must therefore be taken during all handling operations and inspections of this product in order to ensure product integrity at all times.



Disconnect the power supply cord before servicing the product to avoid electric shock. If the product has more than one power supply cord, disconnect them all.

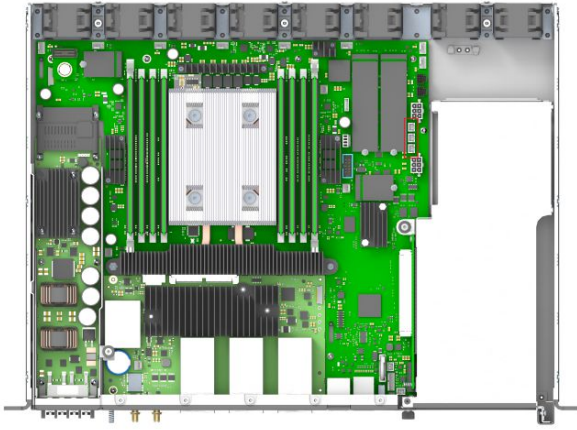
**Opening the chassis**

Step_1	Remove the 5 screws from the top using a T10 Torx screwdriver.	
Step_2	Remove the 16 screws from the sides (8 per side) using a T10 Torx screwdriver.	
Step_3	Remove the 7 screws from the back using a T10 Torx screwdriver .	
Step_4	Lift the cover up to remove it.	

**Installing one or two thermal probes for the PCIe add-in cards****Locating the thermal probe connections**

There are three thermal probe connectors on an ME1310.

Location	Reference designator	Connector
Back	J20	PCIe slot 1
Middle	J21	PCIe slot 2
Front	J23	Chassis



## Installing the thermal probes



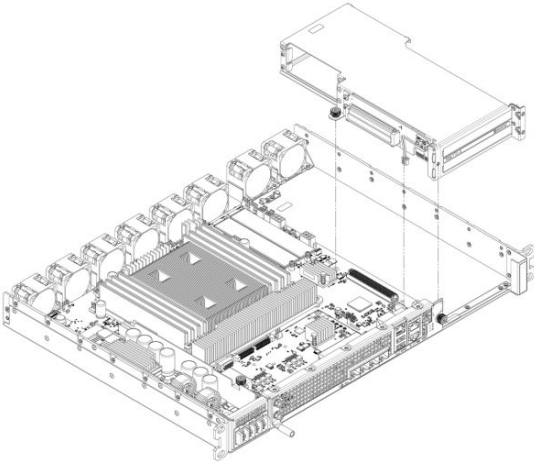
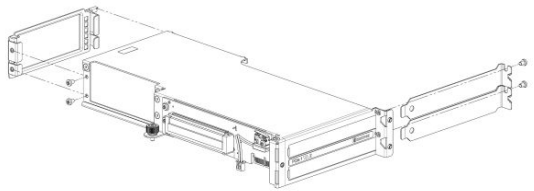
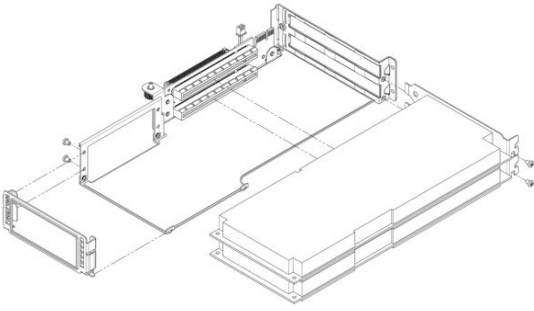
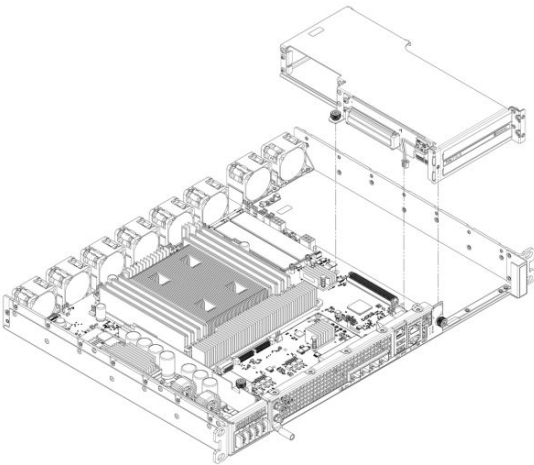
Step_1	Install the thermal probe in the connector as prescribed in the thermal probe specifications. Use the proper connector based on the PCIe add-in card location in the assembly.
Step_2	Affix the NTC thermistor to the PCIe card. Please ensure the thermistor is located as close as possible to the heat generating components to obtain a relevant temperature reading. Any non-thermally conductive elements should be avoided. Typically, thermistors are installed between the fins of the PCIe card heatsink. Do not forget to use glue that can withstand the temperature and that has appropriate properties for the application. Examples of glues that could be used include: Loctite adhesive 444 and Loctite activator SF 7452. <b>NOTE:</b> Configuration will be performed once the platform is operational (thresholds, specific software configurations, etc.).
Step_3	Repeat steps 1 and 2 if two thermal probes must be installed.

Refer to [Configuring sensors and thermal parameters](#) to configure thermal parameters.

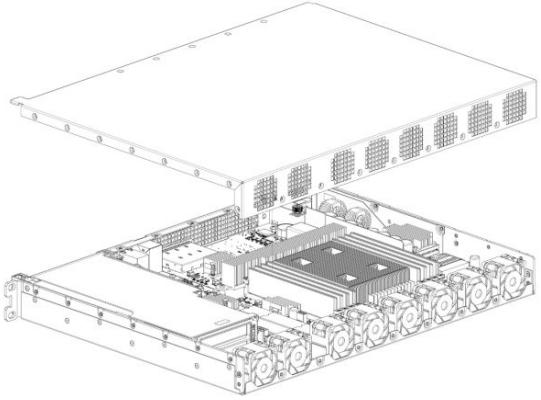
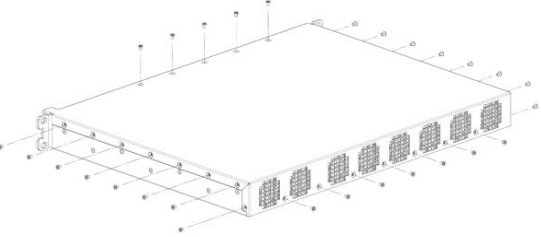
## Connecting one or two PCIe add-in cards

The maximum form factor of the optional PCIe add-in cards is full-height, three-quarter length (FH3/4L).



Step_1	<p>Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, unfasten the two thumbscrews located in the front of the chassis and on the main board. Disconnect the intrusion detection switch wire near the front of the chassis. Lift the PCIe assembly out of the chassis.</p>	
Step_2	<p>Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, remove one PCIe blank L-bracket if you are installing one PCIe add-in card or remove the two PCIe blank L-brackets if you are installing two PCIe add-in cards. Using the T10 Torx screwdriver, remove the PCIe rear holder from the assembly.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If you are installing only one PCIe add-in card, it can be installed in slot 1 or slot 2. The system has no electrical preference.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> PCIe slot 1 is the lower slot and PCIe slot 2 is the upper slot.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Install the PCIe add-in card(s) onto the PCIe riser(s). Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, fasten the blank L-bracket(s) to the PCIe holder (6 lbf-in torque). Mount the PCIe rear holder onto the assembly and tighten the M3 screws with a T10 Torx screwdriver (6 lbf-in torque).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the PCIe add-in cards do not comply with PCIe Electromechanical Specifications for rear keepouts, discard the PCIe rear holder.</p>	
Step_4	<p>Carefully insert the PCIe assembly into the unit and fasten the two thumbscrews (6 lbf-in torque). Connect the intrusion detection switch wire near the front of the chassis.</p>	

## Closing the chassis

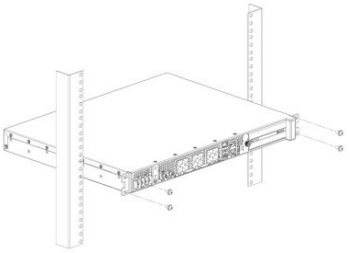
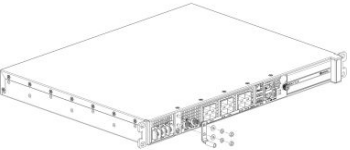

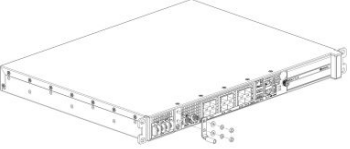
Step_1	Place the cover onto the chassis.	
Step_2	Loosely fit all M3 flat head screws: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 on top</li> <li>• 8 per side (16 total)</li> <li>• 7 in the back</li> </ul> Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, tighten all the screws (6 lbs-in torque).	

## Racking the platform

Relevant section:

[Airflow](#)

Ensure there is no physical obstruction that would hinder proper airflow when choosing a location for the platform in the rack.

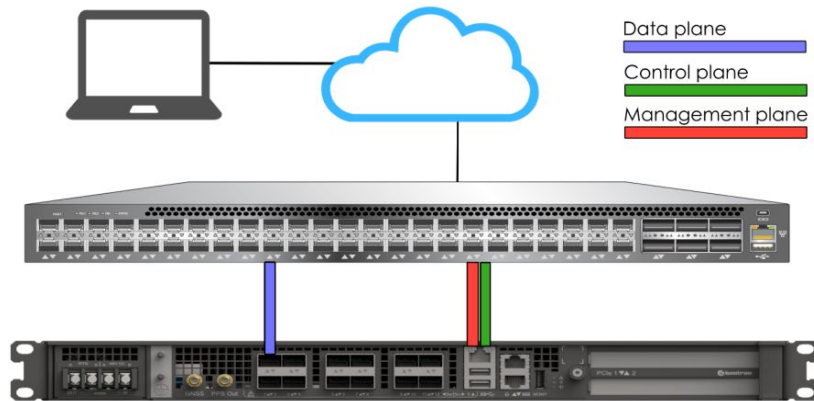
Step_1	Choose a location for the platform in the rack.	
Step_2	Insert the platform in the rack.	
Step_3	Fasten the platform to the rack using the appropriate fasteners.	
Step_4	If a ground lug is installed, remove the 2 nuts and washers from the ground lug studs. Take out the ground lug.	
Step_5	Strip 19 mm (0.75 in) of the 8 AWG ground cable.	
Step_6	Insert the 8 AWG ground cable in the ground lug. Crimp the lug on the cable using an appropriate hand crimp tool (e.g. Panduit CT-1700 crimp tool set at: Color Code = Red; Die Index No. = P21).	
Step_7	Install the ground lug on the studs, fastening with the 2 nuts and washers. <b>NOTE:</b> The thread of the two chassis ground lugs is M4x0.7.	

> You are now ready to connect the network and power cables and start platform configuration.

## Connecting the network cables

Connect the network cables according to the image below.

Step_1	Connect one RJ45 cable to port 5 for the management and the control planes ( <b>Srv 5</b> ).
Step_2	Connect one SFP or SFP+ cable to switch port 1 for the data plane ( <b>Sw 1</b> ).



## Preparing and connecting the DC power supply cables

### NOTICE

Before working with this product or performing instructions described in the getting started section or in other sections, read the Safety and regulatory information section pertaining to the product. Assembly instructions in this documentation must be followed to ensure and maintain compliance with existing product certifications and approvals. Use only the described, regulated components specified in this documentation. Use of other products/components will void the CSA certification and other regulatory approvals of the product and will most likely result in non-compliance with product regulations in the region(s) in which the product is sold.

### WARNING

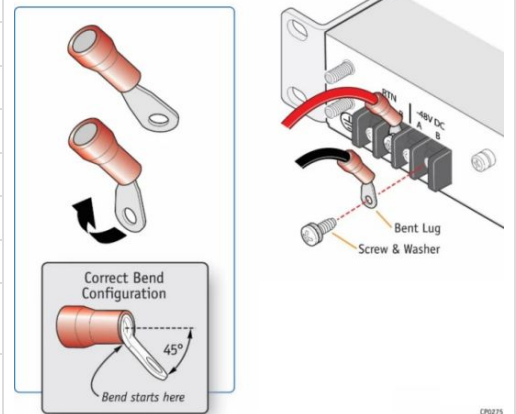
Installation of this product must be performed in accordance with national wiring codes and conform to local regulations.



Pliers may be used to bend the crimp lugs.

## Procedure

Step_1	Strip 6 mm [0.236 in] from the end of a black stranded 14 AWG wire (for Molex crimp lug 19131-0023) or 8 mm [0.315 in] from the end of a black stranded 12 AWG wire (for Panduit crimp lug EV10-6RB-Q).
Step_2	Strip 6 mm [0.236 in] from the end of a red stranded 14 AWG wire (for Molex crimp lug 19131-0023) or 8 mm [0.315 in] from the end of a red stranded 12 AWG wire (for Panduit crimp lug EV10-6RB-Q).
Step_3	Insert each wire in a crimp lug. Follow the crimp lug manufacturer's procedure, using the appropriate hand crimp tool as specified in the Application tooling specification sheet of the tool.
Step_4	Bend the crimp lugs to a 45° angle as shown in the image.
Step_5	Remove the screw from the terminal block RTN "B" location.
Step_6	Insert the crimped red wire in the RTN "B" location as shown in the image.
Step_7	Screw the crimp lug in place.
Step_8	Remove the screw from the terminal block -48V DC "B" location.
Step_9	Insert the crimped black wire in the -48V DC "B" location as shown in the image.
Step_10	Screw the crimp lug in place.
Step_11	(Optional) If redundancy is required, repeat steps 1 to 10 for a second set of cables. They are to be installed in the -48V DC and RTN "A" locations.
Step_12	The power supply is reverse polarity protected. The unit will power on as soon as external power is applied (green power LED).



> You are now ready to discover IP addresses.

## Discovering the BMC IP address

The BMC IP address is the minimum required to access the Web UI and the monitoring interface.  
 The BMC IP address can be discovered using various methods. The **UEFI/BIOS method** will be used in this getting started section.

Relevant section:  
[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

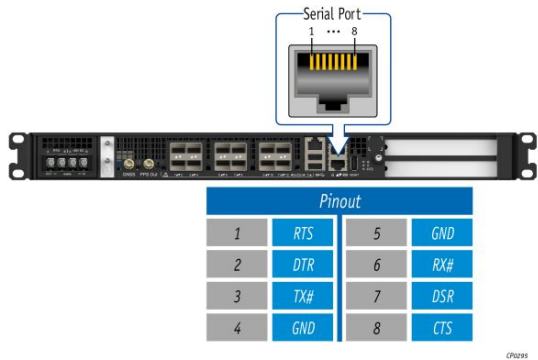
## Accessing the UEFI/BIOS using a serial console (physical connection)

### Prerequisites


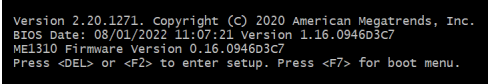
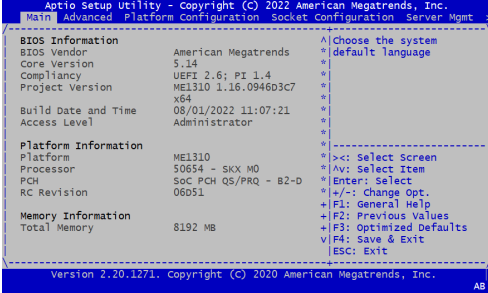
1	A physical connection to the device is required. <b>NOTE:</b> The serial console port is compatible with Cisco 72-3383-01 cable.
2	A serial console tool is installed on the remote computer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Speed (Baud): 115200</li> <li>• Data bits: 8</li> <li>• Stop bits: 1</li> <li>• Parity: None</li> <li>• Flow Control: None</li> <li>• Recommended emulation mode: VT100+</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended.

Relevant sections:  
[Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#)  
[Sending a BREAK signal over a serial connection](#)

### Port location

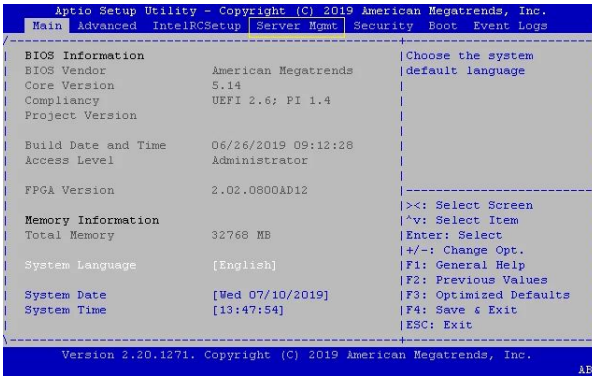
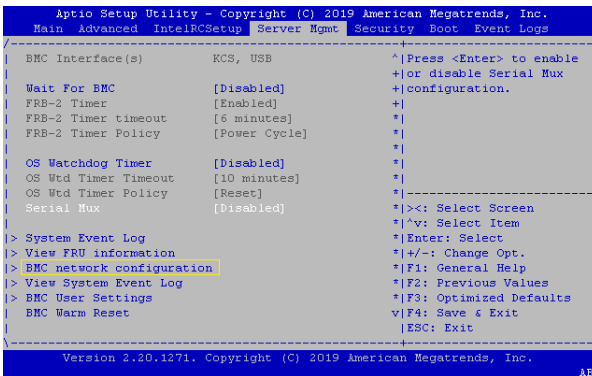
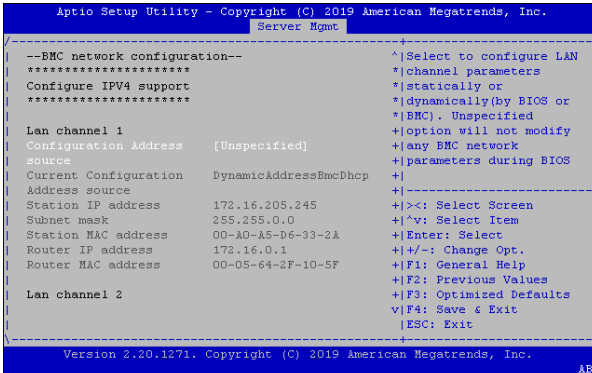


### Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu

Step_1	From a computer with a physical connection to the serial port, open a serial console tool and start the communication between the console and the port to which the device is connected.	
Step_2	<p>Perform a server reset using one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the server is currently running an installed operating system, log in and issue the appropriate reboot command.</li> <li>• If the server is currently running the integrated UEFI shell, issue the "reset" command.</li> <li>• Send a "BREAK" signal over the serial connection using the method provided in the terminal emulator.</li> <li>• Disconnect all the input power connections for 30 seconds and reconnect them.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If an operating system is installed on the device, a method based on a hotkey might not work properly. If this is the case, reset the server as recommended for the operating system.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When a server reset command is sent, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display.</p>	
Step_3	<p>When the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display confirmation message "Entering Setup...".</p>	
Step_4	<p>The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen displays "Entering Setup...".</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It will take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p>	
Step_5	The UEFI/BIOS setup menu is displayed.	

### Accessing the BMC network configuration menu

**NOTE:** In an ME1310 platform, LAN channel 1 corresponds to port Srv 5, the RJ45 connector.

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS menu, navigate to tab Server Mgmt .	
Step_2	Select BMC network configuration .	
Step_3	<p>The BMC network configuration menu is displayed.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the platform is powered up after being shut off, the UEFI/BIOS may load before the BMC has received its IP address. In this case, the UEFI/BIOS menu information will need to be refreshed by restarting the server and re-entering the UEFI/BIOS .</p>	

## Discovering the switch NOS IP address

The switch NOS IP address is the minimum required to access the switch NOS Web UI and the monitoring interface.

### Discovering the switch NOS IP address through the switch NOS serial console CLI

#### Prerequisites

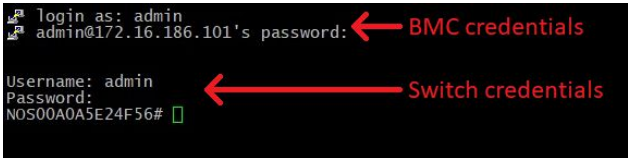
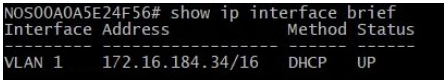
1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	An SSH client tool is installed on the remote computer. <b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended for Windows environments and SSH is recommended for Linux environments.
3	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.

#### Relevant sections:

- [Default user names and passwords](#)
- [Accessing the switch NOS](#)

#### Procedure

**NOTE:** When using Serial over SSH, to quit the session press **Enter** followed by **~** .

Step_1	Using an SSH client tool, open an SSH session with the following parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BMC IP address</li> <li>Port number: 2201 (after login, the BMC will automatically redirect communication to the switch NOS serial console)</li> </ul>	
Step_2	Log in the BMC using the appropriate BMC credentials. Upon successful login, press <b>Enter</b> to get a response from the switch NOS CLI. If a NOS serial console session is not already active, another set of credentials will be requested. Use the appropriate switch credentials to complete the login into the NOS.	 <pre> login as: admin admin@172.16.186.101's password: Username: admin Password: NOS00A0A5E24F56# </pre>
Step_3	Use the following command to discover the switch NOS IP address. LocalSwitchNOS_0SPrompt:~# <b>show ip interface brief</b>	 <pre> NOS00A0A5E24F56# show ip interface brief Interface Address Method Status ----- VLAN 1 172.16.184.34/16 DHCP UP </pre>

> With the IP addresses, you are now ready to start the OS installation.

## Preparing for operating system installation

Step_1	Choose the operating system needed based on the requirements of your application. It is recommended to choose one from the list of validated operating systems.
Step_2	Confirm the OS version to be installed includes or has divers supporting the platform components listed in the PCI mapping.
Step_3	If applicable, download the ISO file of the OS to be installed.

## Installing an operating system using the KVM

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

### Prerequisites

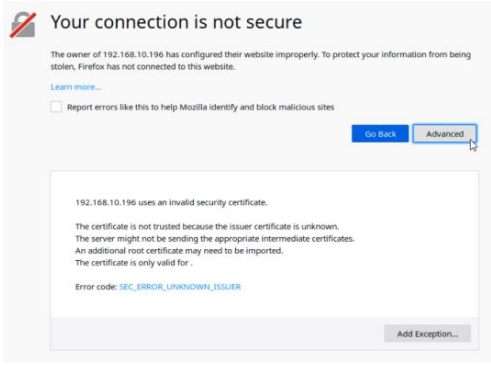
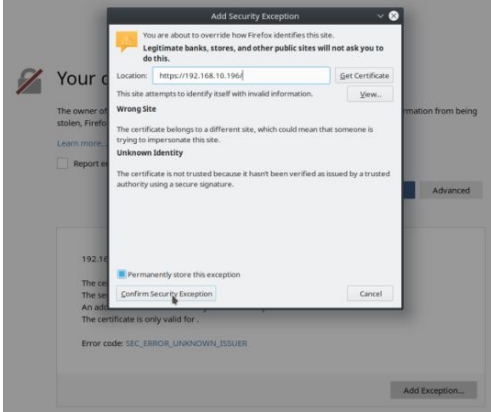
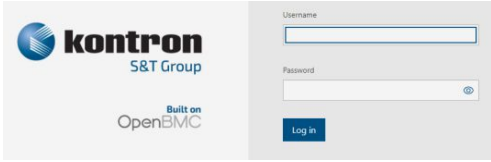
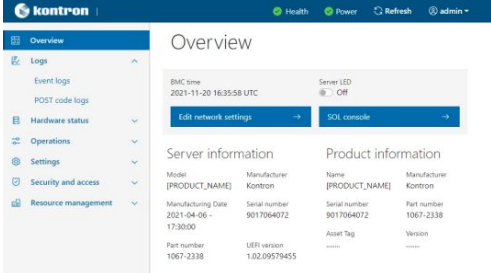
1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.


### Browser considerations

HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

NOTE: The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

### Connecting to the Web UI of the BMC

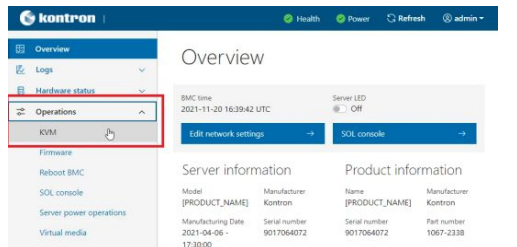
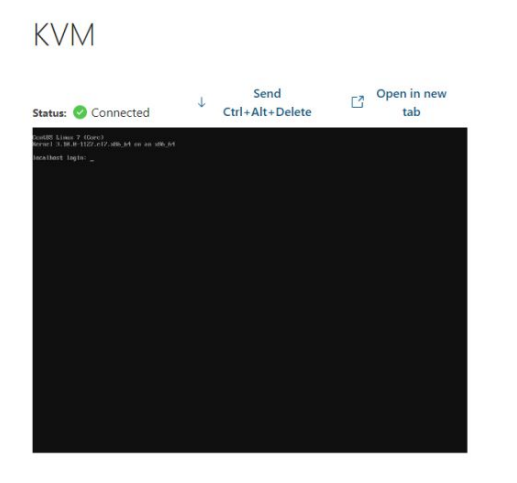
Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the BMC.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The HTTPS prefix is mandatory.</b>  <a href="https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]">https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]</a></p>	
Step_2	<p>Click on <b>Advanced</b> in order to start the HTTPS self-signed certificate acceptance process. Information on the error message will be displayed.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Click on <b>Add Exception...</b> The Add Security Exception pop-up window will be displayed. Click on <b>Confirm Security Exception</b> to allow the browser to access the management Web UI of this interface.</p>	
Step_4	<p>Log in to the BMC Web UI using the appropriate credentials.</p>	
Step_5	<p>You now have access to the management Web UI of the BMC. You can use the interface.</p>	

 It is recommended to change the administrator password immediately after accessing the Web UI.

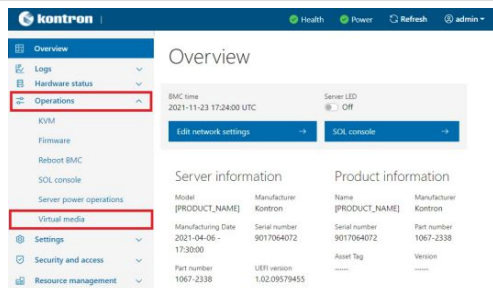
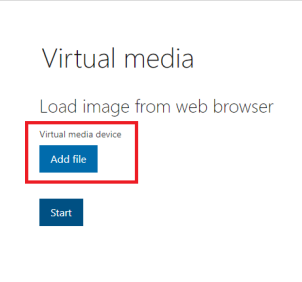
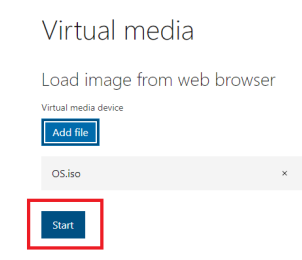
## Launching the KVM

The Web UI allows remote control of the server through a KVM (Keyboard, Video, Mouse) interface.

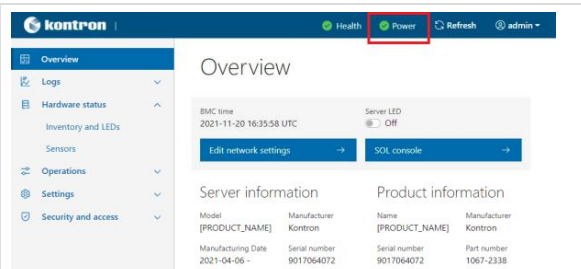



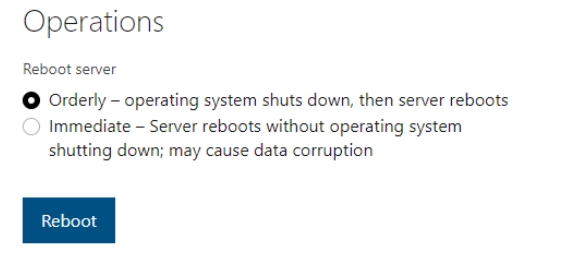
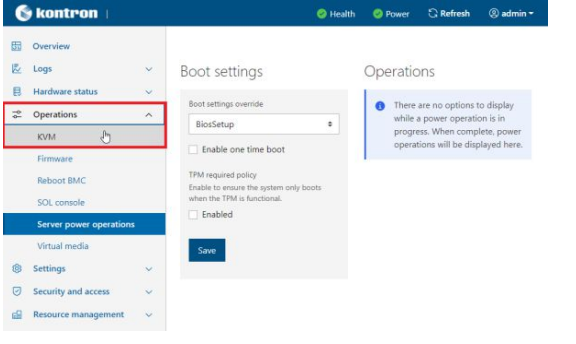
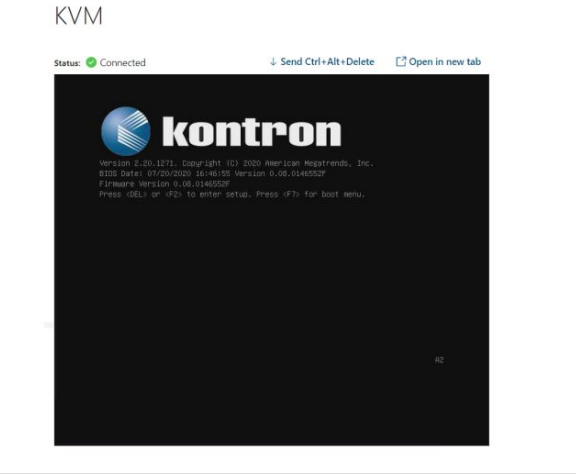
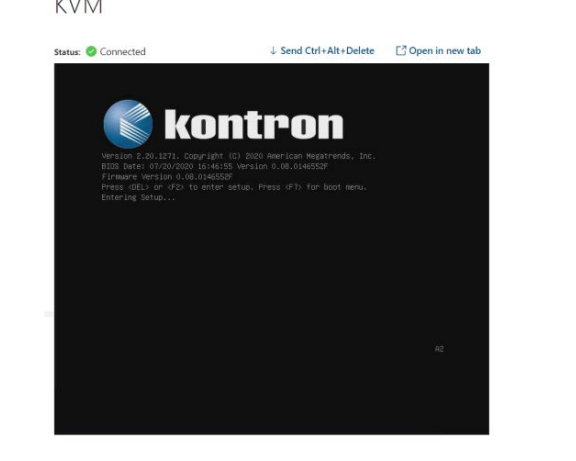
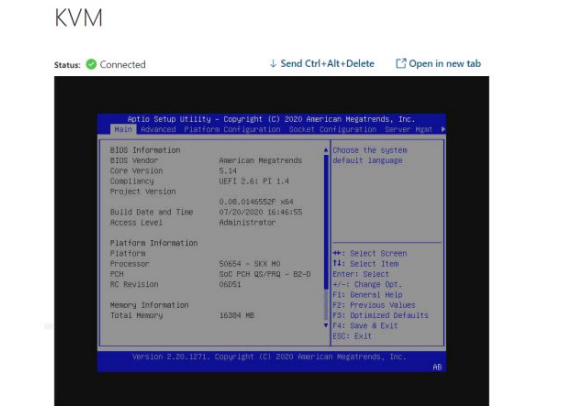
Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, click on <b>Operations</b> and then on KVM .	
Step_2	A new browser window opens and displays the virtual server screen.	

### Mounting the operating system image via virtual media


Step_1	From the Operations menu, select Virtual media .	
Step_2	Click on <b>Add file</b> to browse for the ISO file.	
Step_3	Click on <b>Start</b> to access virtual media from the OS.	

### Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu

Step_1	From the BMC Web UI, click on the <b>Power</b> button.	
--------	--	--

		
Step_2	From the Reboot server section, select Orderly and then click on Reboot .	
Step_3	From the Operations menu, click on KVM.	
Step_4	<p>When the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When a reset server command is launched, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display the confirmation message "Entering Setup...".</p>	
Step_5	<p>The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen displays "Entering Setup...".</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p>	
Step_6	The UEFI/BIOS setup menu will be displayed.	

## Selecting the boot order from boot override

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu and using the keyboard arrows, select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu. In the <b>Boot Override</b> section, select <b>UEFI: Linux File-Stor Gadgetxxxx</b> and press <b>Enter</b> . The server will reboot and the media installation process will start.	
--------	---	--

> You are now ready to complete operating system installation according to your application requirements.

## Completing operating system installation

Step_1	Complete the installation by following the on-screen prompts of the specific OS installed.
--------	--

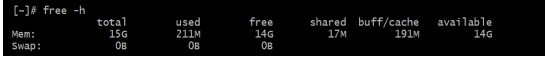
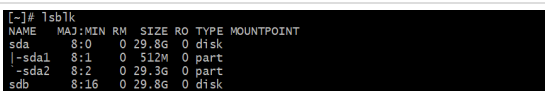
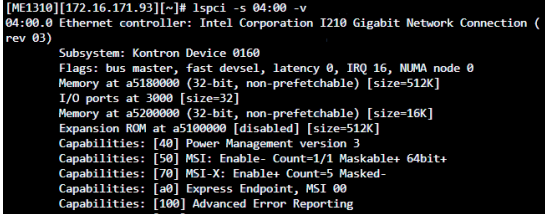
## Verifying operating system installation

Refer to the Introduction section to review the architecture used in this getting started section.

Relevant section:

[Common software installation](#)

All the results and commands may vary depending on the operating system and the devices added.

Step_1	Reboot the OS as recommended, then access the OS command prompt.	
Step_2	Install <b>ethtool</b> , <b>ipmitool</b> and <b>pciutils</b> using the package manager, and update the operating system packages. The ipmitool version recommended is 1.8.18. Example for CentOS: LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>yum update</b> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>yum install pciutils</b> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>yum install ethtool</b> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>yum install ipmitool</b>  <b>NOTE:</b> Updating the packages may take a few minutes.	
Step_3	Verify that no error messages or warnings are displayed in <b>dmesg</b> using the following commands. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>dmesg   grep -i fail</b> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>dmesg   grep -i Error</b> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>dmesg   grep -i Warning</b> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>dmesg   grep -i "Call trace"</b> <b>NOTE:</b> If there are any messages or warnings displayed, refer to the operating system's documentation to fix them.	
Step_4	Verify that the DIMMs are detected. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>free -h</b>	
Step_5	Verify that all the storage devices are detected. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>lsblk</b>	
Step_6	Confirm the control plane network interface controller is loaded by the <b>igb</b> driver. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <b>lspci -s 04:00 -v</b>  <b>NOTE:</b> You should discover one 1GbE NIC.	

		<pre>Capabilities: [1a0] Transaction Processing Hints Kernel driver in use: igb Kernel modules: igb</pre>
Step_7	<p>Confirm the data plane network interface controllers are loaded by the ice driver.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# lspci -s 89:00 -v</p> <p>NOTE: You should discover up to four 25GbE NIC.</p>	<pre>[~]# lspci -s 89:00 -v 89:00.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation Ethernet Connection E823-C for backplane Subsystem: Intel Corporation Device 0000 Flags: bus master, fast devsel, latency 0, IRQ 16, NUMA node 0 Memory at 23ff000000 (64-bit, prefetchable) [size=128M] Memory at 23ffc00000 (64-bit, prefetchable) [size=64K] Expansion ROM at e6600000 (disabled) [size=1M] Capabilities: [40] Power Management version 3 Capabilities: [50] MSI: Enable+ Count=1/1 Maskable+ 64bit+ Capabilities: [70] MSI-X: Enable+ Count=512 Masked- Capabilities: [a0] Express Endpoint, MSI 00 Capabilities: [e0] Vital Product Data Capabilities: [100] Advanced Error Reporting Capabilities: [148] Alternative Routing-ID Interpretation (ARI) Capabilities: [160] Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) Capabilities: [180] Transaction Processing Hints Capabilities: [190] Access Control Services Kernel driver in use: ice Kernel modules: ice</pre>
Step_8	<p>Confirm that all the network interfaces are detected and get the list of device names. The following script requires Bash shell.</p> <p>Enter the following block of commands at the LocalServer_OSPrompt:~#</p> <pre>ETH_NAMES=\$(grep PCI_SLOT_NAME /sys/class/net/*/device/uevent   cut -d '/' -f 5) for ETH_NAME in \$ETH_NAMES; \ do echo -e "\$ETH_NAME: \$(ethtool -i \$ETH_NAME   grep -E 'driver bus- info')\n"; \ done</pre> <p>NOTE: You should discover one 1GbE NIC and up to four 25GbE NIC.</p>	<pre>[~]# ETH_NAMES=\$(grep PCI_SLOT_NAME /sys/class/net/*/device/uevent   cut -d '/' -f 5) [~]# for ETH_NAME in \$ETH_NAMES; \ [~]# do echo -e "\$ETH_NAME: \$(ethtool -i \$ETH_NAME   grep -E 'driver bus-info')\n"; \ [~]# done eno1: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.3 eno2: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.2 eno3: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.1 eno4: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.0 eno5: driver: igb bus-info: 0000:04:00.0 [~]#</pre>
Step_9	<p>Configure network interface controllers based on your requirements and network topology.</p> <p>NOTE: Interface names may change depending on the OS installed. However, parameters <b>Bus:Device.Function</b> stay the same for the interface regardless of the operating system.</p>	
Step_10	<p>(Optional) If one or two PCIe add-in cards are installed, verify that the cards are detected.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# lspci</p>	<pre>lspci 0000:00:00.0 Host bridge: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D DMI2 (rev 03) 0000:00:01.0 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D PCI Express Root Port 1 (rev 03) 0000:00:02.0 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D PCI Express Root Port 2 (rev 03) 0000:00:03.0 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D PCI Express Root Port 3 (rev 03) 0000:00:04.0 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D PCI Express Root Port 4 (rev 03) 0000:00:05.0 System peripheral: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D Host PCI/PCIe Management (rev 03) 0000:00:06.1 System peripheral: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D IIO SAS/Control Status/IO/0x041 Error (rev 03) 0000:00:06.4 PCI: Intel Corporation Xeon E7 v4/Xeon E5 v4/Xeon E3 v4/Xeon D I/O APIC (rev 03) 0000:00:07.0 Communication controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family ME Controller #1 (rev 04) 0000:00:07.1 Communication controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family ME Controller #2 (rev 04) 0000:00:07.2 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family PCI Express Root Port #1 (rev 03) 0000:00:07.3 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family PCI Express Root Port #2 (rev 03) 0000:00:07.4 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family PCI Express Root Port #3 (rev 03) 0000:00:07.5 PCI bridge: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family PCI Express Root Port #4 (rev 03) 0000:00:07.6 IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC #1 (rev 04) 0000:00:07.7 IIO bridge: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.8 IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.9 IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.a IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.b IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.c IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.d IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.e IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04) 0000:00:07.f IIO controller: Intel Corporation 8 Series/C200 Series Chipset Family IIO BMC controller (rev 04)</pre>
Step_11	<p>Verify communication between the operating system and the BMC.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool mc info</p>	<pre>[~]# ipmitool mc info Device ID          : 0 Device Revision    : 0 Firmware Revision  : 0.00 IPMI Version       : 2.0 Manufacturer ID    : 15000 Manufacturer Name  : Kontron Product ID         : 10027 (0x272b) Product Name       : Unknown (0x272b) Device Available   : yes Provides Device SDRs : yes Additional Device Support :   Sensor Device   SEL Device   FRU Inventory Device   Chassis Device Aux Firmware Rev Info : 0x01 0x46 0x94 0xfb</pre>

## Benchmarking an application

Install your application and proceed with benchmarking.

## Monitoring platform sensors

Platform sensors can be monitored using various methods, including the BMC Web UI.

The key sensors to look at are the following:

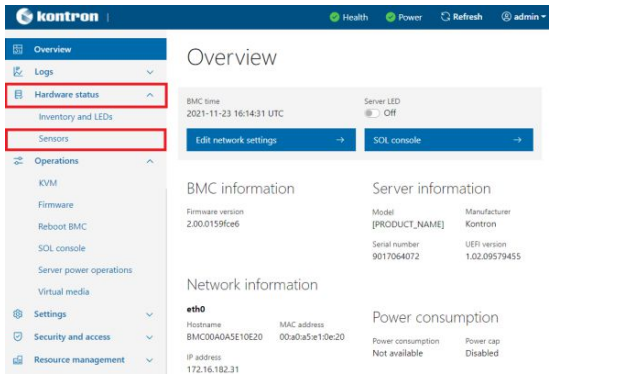
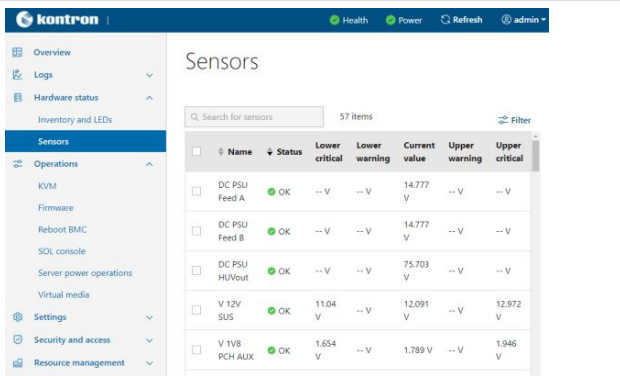
- Temperature sensors
- Power sensors

Relevant sections:

[Accessing a BMC](#)

[Monitoring sensors](#)

## Monitoring platform sensors using the Web UI

Step_1	Access the BMC Web UI.																																																	
Step_2	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Hardware status</b> and then <b>Sensors</b> .																																																	
Step_3	The sensor list will be displayed. Scroll down to see the list of sensors or use the dedicated search bar to filter the sensors.	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><input type="checkbox"/></th> <th>Name</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Lower critical</th> <th>Lower warning</th> <th>Current value</th> <th>Upper warning</th> <th>Upper critical</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>DC PSU Feed A</td> <td>OK</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>14.777 V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>-- V</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>DC PSU Feed B</td> <td>OK</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>14.777 V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>-- V</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>DC PSU HUVout</td> <td>OK</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>75.703 V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>-- V</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>V 12V SUS</td> <td>OK</td> <td>11.04 V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>12.091 V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>12.972 V</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>V 1V8 PCH AUX</td> <td>OK</td> <td>1.654 V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>1.789 V</td> <td>-- V</td> <td>1.946 V</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Status	Lower critical	Lower warning	Current value	Upper warning	Upper critical	<input type="checkbox"/>	DC PSU Feed A	OK	-- V	-- V	14.777 V	-- V	-- V	<input type="checkbox"/>	DC PSU Feed B	OK	-- V	-- V	14.777 V	-- V	-- V	<input type="checkbox"/>	DC PSU HUVout	OK	-- V	-- V	75.703 V	-- V	-- V	<input type="checkbox"/>	V 12V SUS	OK	11.04 V	-- V	12.091 V	-- V	12.972 V	<input type="checkbox"/>	V 1V8 PCH AUX	OK	1.654 V	-- V	1.789 V	-- V	1.946 V
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Status	Lower critical	Lower warning	Current value	Upper warning	Upper critical																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC PSU Feed A	OK	-- V	-- V	14.777 V	-- V	-- V																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC PSU Feed B	OK	-- V	-- V	14.777 V	-- V	-- V																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	DC PSU HUVout	OK	-- V	-- V	75.703 V	-- V	-- V																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	V 12V SUS	OK	11.04 V	-- V	12.091 V	-- V	12.972 V																																											
<input type="checkbox"/>	V 1V8 PCH AUX	OK	1.654 V	-- V	1.789 V	-- V	1.946 V																																											

## **Mechanical installation and precautions**

## ESD protections

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage electronic components (e.g. disk drives and boards).

Look for this warning in the documentation as it indicates that the device is ESD sensitive and that precautions must be taken.



### ESD sensitive device!

This equipment is sensitive to static electricity. Care must therefore be taken during all handling operations and inspections of this product in order to ensure product integrity at all times.

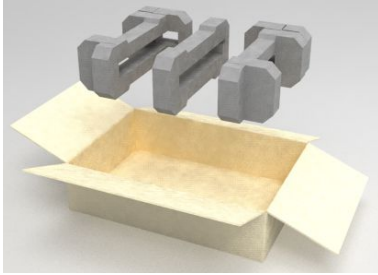
We recommend that you perform all the installation procedures described in the documentation at an ESD workstation. If this is not possible, apply ESD protections such as the following:

- Wear an antistatic wrist strap attached to a chassis ground (any unpainted metal surface) on the equipment when handling parts.
- Touch the metal chassis before touching an electronic component (e.g. a DIMM or board).
- Keep a part of your body (e.g. a hand) in contact with the metal chassis to dissipate the static charge while handling the electronic component.
- Avoid moving around unnecessarily.
- Use a ground strap attached to the front panel (with the bezel removed).
- Read and follow the safety precautions provided for a specific component by the manufacturer.

# Unboxing

## What's in the box

The box includes one ME1310 multi-access edge computing 1U platform .



Step_1	Carefully remove the platform from its packaging.
Step_2	Remove the plastic film from the platform. <b>Failure to do so may affect platform airflow efficiency, thus resulting in poor cooling capabilities.</b>



# Components installation and assembly

## Table of contents

- [Opening the enclosure](#)
- [Connecting one or two PCIe add-in cards](#)
  - [\(Optional\) Installing a thermal probe for the PCIe add-in card](#)
  - [Installing a PCIe add-in card](#)
  - [\(Optional\) Software installation instructions](#)
- [Installing an M.2 storage](#)
  - [Locating the M.2 storage](#)
  - [Installing the M.2 storage](#)
- [Installing DIMMs](#)
  - [Locating the DIMMs](#)
  - [DIMM population guidelines for optimal performance](#)
  - [Installing a DIMM](#)
- [Replacing fans](#)
  - [Locating the fans](#)
  - [Replacing a fan](#)
- [Replacing the RTC battery](#)
  - [Locating the RTC battery](#)
  - [Replacing the battery](#)
- [Closing the enclosure](#)



### ESD sensitive device!

This equipment is sensitive to static electricity. Care must therefore be taken during all handling operations and inspections of this product in order to ensure product integrity at all times.

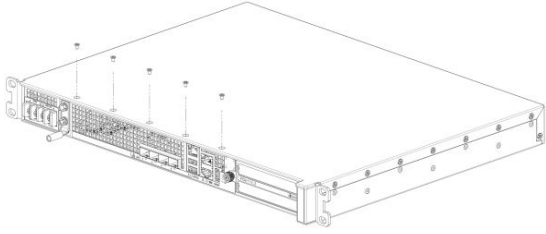
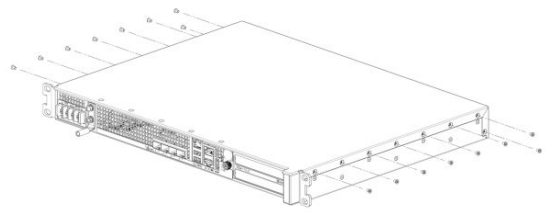
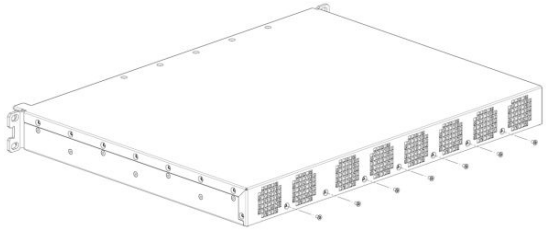
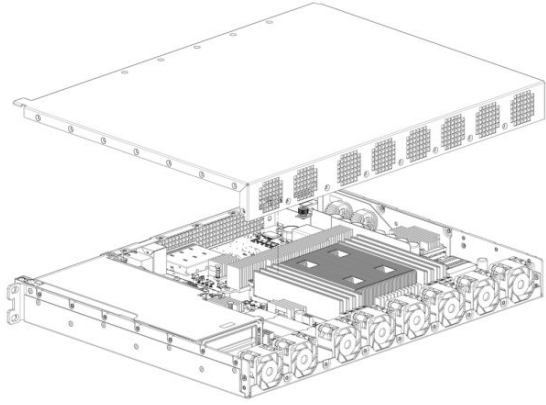


When handling components, follow the precautions described in section [ESD protections](#).



Disconnect the power supply cord before servicing the product to avoid electric shock. If the product has more than one power supply cord, disconnect them all.

## Opening the enclosure

Step_1	Remove the 5 screws from the top using a T10 Torx screwdriver.	
Step_2	Remove the 16 screws from the sides (8 per side) using a T10 Torx screwdriver.	
Step_3	Remove the 7 screws from the back using a T10 Torx screwdriver .	
Step_4	Lift the cover up to remove it.	

## Connecting one or two PCIe add-in cards

The maximum form factor of the optional PCIe add-in card is full-height, three-quarter length (FH3/4L).

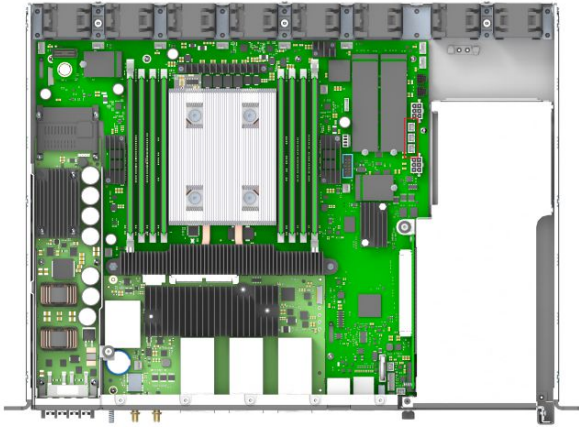
### (Optional) Installing a thermal probe for the PCIe add-in card

For the thermal probe part number, refer to [Platform, modules and accessories](#).

### (Optional) Locating the thermal probe connection

There are three thermal probe connectors on an ME1310.

Location	Reference designator	Connector
Back	J20	PCIe slot 1
Middle	J21	PCIe slot 2
Front	J23	Chassis



### (Optional) Building a thermal probe

Component	P/N	Description
NTC thermistor	GA10K3A11A	NTC thermistor 10 Kohm, 3976K Bead
Connector	XHP-2	Connector housing 2.5 mm, 2 position
Pins	SXH-001-P0.6	Socket contact, 22-28 awg, crimp stamped

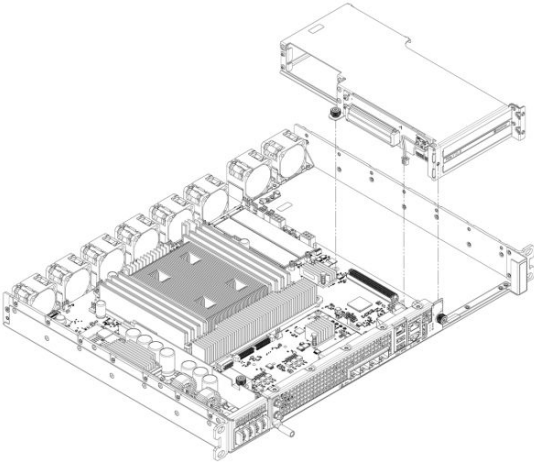
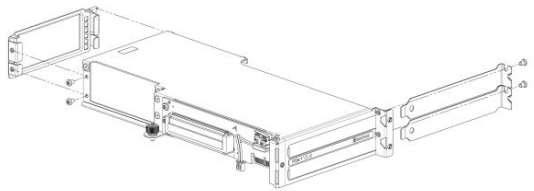
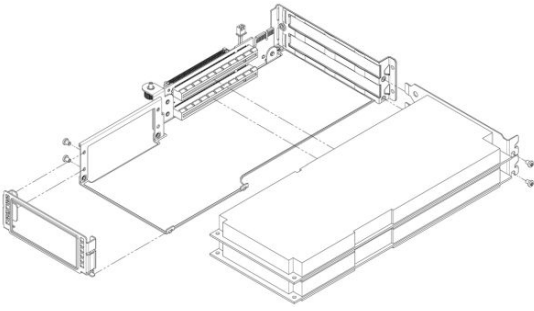
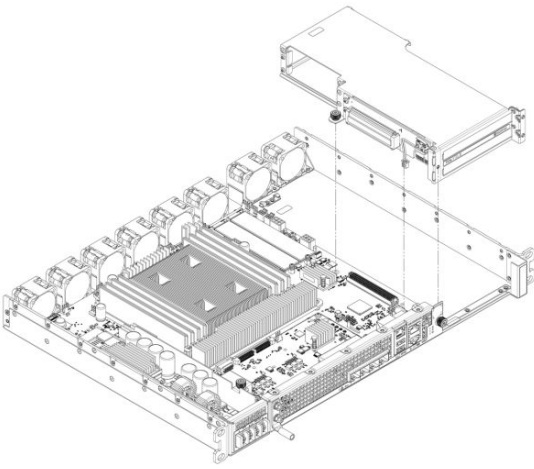
Step_1	Using the components described in the table above, build a thermal probe.
--------	---

### (Optional) Installing the thermal probe



Step_1	Install the thermal probe in the connector as prescribed in the thermal probe specifications. Use the proper connector based on the PCIe add-in card location in the assembly.
Step_2	Affix the NTC thermistor to the PCIe card. Please ensure the thermistor is located as close as possible to the heat generating components to obtain a relevant temperature reading. Any non-thermally conductive elements should be avoided. Typically, thermistors are installed between the fins of the PCIe card heatsink. Do not forget to use glue that can withstand the temperature and that has appropriate properties for the application. Examples of glues that could be used include: Loctite adhesive 444 and Loctite activator SF 7452. <b>NOTE:</b> Configuration will be performed once the platform is operational (thresholds, specific software configurations, etc.).
Step_3	Repeat steps 1 and 2 if two thermal probes must be installed.

### Installing a PCIe add-in card

Step_1	<p>Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, unfasten the two thumbscrews located in the front of the chassis and on the main board. Disconnect the intrusion detection switch wire near the front of the chassis. Lift the PCIe assembly out of the chassis.</p>	
Step_2	<p>Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, remove one PCIe blank L-bracket if you are installing one PCIe add-in card or remove the two PCIe blank L-brackets if you are installing two PCIe add-in cards. Using the T10 Torx screwdriver, remove the PCIe rear holder from the assembly.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If you are installing only one PCIe add-in card, it can be installed in slot 1 or slot 2. The system has no electrical preference.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> PCIe slot 1 is the lower slot and PCIe slot 2 is the upper slot.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Install the PCIe add-in card(s) onto the PCIe riser(s). Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, fasten the blank L-bracket(s) to the PCIe holder (6 lbf-in torque). Mount the PCIe rear holder onto the assembly and tighten the M3 screws with a T10 Torx screwdriver (6 lbf-in torque).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the PCIe add-in cards do not comply with PCIe Electromechanical Specifications for rear keepouts, discard the PCIe rear holder.</p>	
Step_4	<p>Carefully insert the PCIe assembly into the unit and fasten the two thumbscrews (6 lbf-in torque). Connect the intrusion detection switch wire near the front of the chassis.</p>	

### (Optional) Software installation instructions

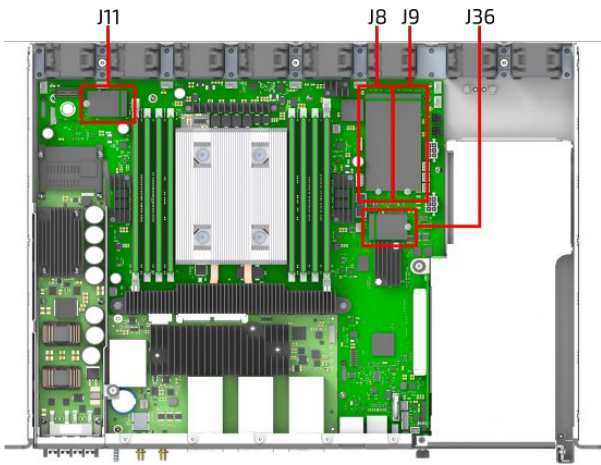
Refer to [Hardware compatibility list](#) for specific supported PCIe add-in card software installation instructions.

## Installing an M.2 storage

Up to four M.2 storage drives can be installed in an ME1310.

For the list of tested M.2 storages, refer to [Hardware compatibility list](#).

### Locating the M.2 storage



## Installing the M.2 storage

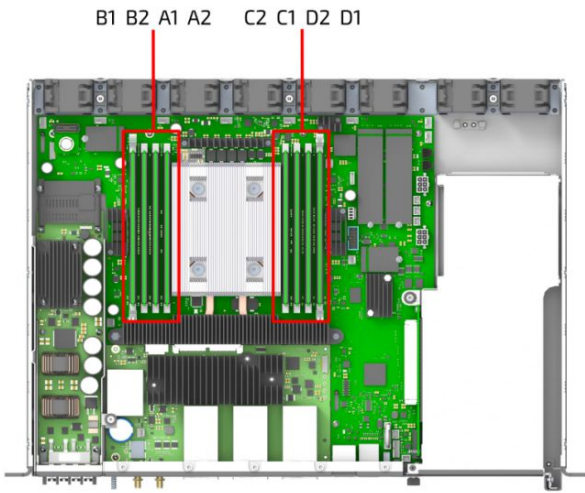
Step_1	Remove the screw and washer from the bottom section with a T6 Torx screwdriver.	
Step_2	Insert the M.2 storage into the connector as prescribed in the M.2 specifications.	
Step_3	Put the screw and washer back in place and tighten (2 lbf-in torque).	

## Installing DIMMs

Up to eight DIMMs can be installed in an ME1310.

For the list of tested DIMMs, refer to [Hardware compatibility list](#).

### Locating the DIMMs



## DIMM population guidelines for optimal performance

There are 8 DIMM slots, but only 4 channels – B1 and B2 are on the same channel, A1 and A2 are on the same channel, C1 and C2 are on the same channel, and D1 and D2 are on the same channel.

Therefore, do not populate A2, B2, C2 and D2 unless you have already populated all other DIMM slots.

Populate DIMMs in accordance with the following guidelines to ensure optimal performance.

- For configurations with 1 DIMM – populate slot C1.
- For configurations with 2 DIMMs – populate slots A1 and C1.
- For configurations with 4 DIMMs – populate slots A1, B1, C1 and D1
- For configurations with 8 DIMMs – populate all DIMM slots.
- Other DIMM configurations are not recommended, as they may be unbalanced and will produce a less optimal performance.

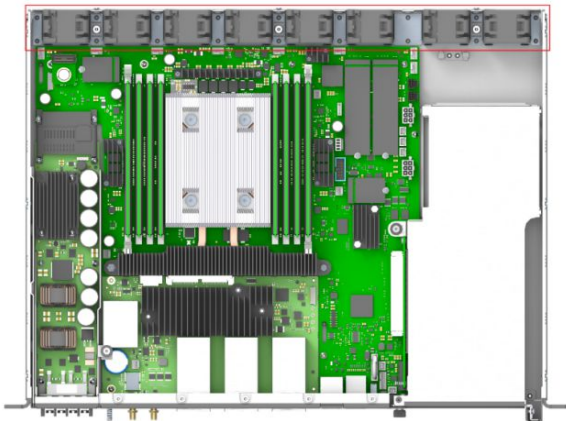
## Installing a DIMM

Step_1	Open the levers of the DIMM slot. (A)	
Step_2	Note the location of the alignment notch on the DIMM edge. (B)	
Step_3	Insert the DIMM, making sure the connector edge of the DIMM aligns correctly with the slot. (E)	
Step_4	Using both hands, push down firmly and evenly on both sides of the DIMM until it snaps into place and the levers close. (C and D)	
Step_5	Visually inspect each lever to ensure they are fully closed and correctly engaged with the notches on the DIMM edge. (E)	

## Replacing fans

There are eight fans in this platform.

### Locating the fans



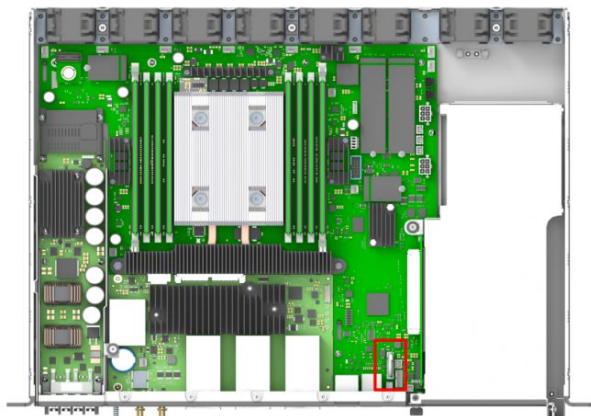
### Replacing a fan

Step_1	Disconnect the fan connector.
Step_2	Lift the fan up to take it out of the platform.
Step_3	Insert a new fan and connect the fan connector.

## Replacing the RTC battery

<b>CAUTION</b>	Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type. Dispose of used batteries according to the instructions.
----------------	--

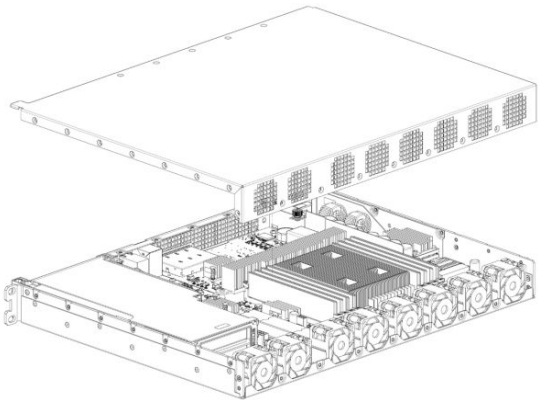
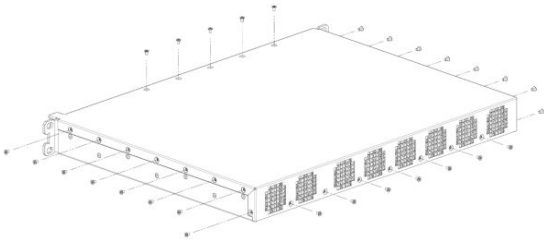
### Locating the RTC battery



### Replacing the battery

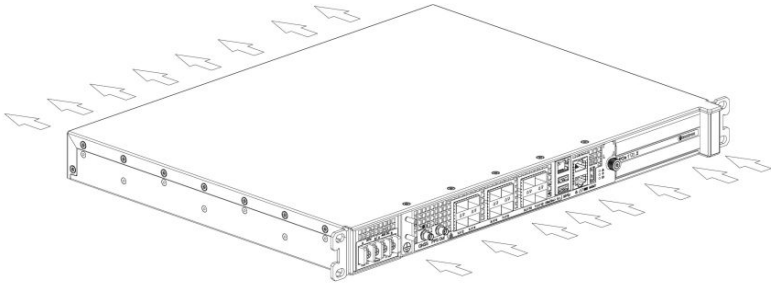
Step_1	A latch pin secures the battery in place. With one hand, gently push the latch to release the battery. While holding the latch, use the other hand to remove the battery.
Step_2	Safely dispose of the battery.
Step_3	With one hand, gently push the latch and insert a new battery with the other hand. Respect the appropriate orientation and polarity.

## Closing the enclosure

Step_1	Place the cover onto the chassis.	
Step_2	Loosely fit all M3 flat head screws: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5 on top</li> <li>• 8 per side (16 total)</li> <li>• 7 in the back</li> </ul> Using a T10 Torx screwdriver, tighten all the screws (6 lbs-in torque).	

## Airflow

The ME1310 platform features a front to back air flow system. To optimize heat transfer, refer to the [Specifications](#) section for the ideal clearances.

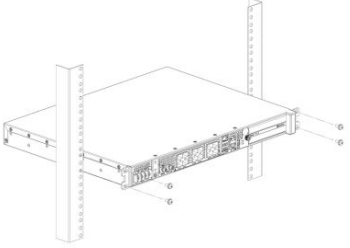
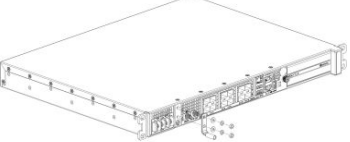

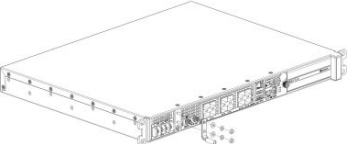




# Rack installation

## Installing an ME1310 platform in a 19-in rack

Ensure there is no physical obstruction that would hinder proper airflow when choosing a location for the platform in the rack.

Step_1	Choose a location for the platform in the rack.	
Step_2	Insert the platform in the rack.	
Step_3	Fasten the platform to the rack using the appropriate fasteners.	
Step_4	If a ground lug is installed, remove the 2 nuts and washers from the ground lug studs. Take out the ground lug.	
Step_5	Strip 19 mm (0.75 in) of the 8 AWG ground cable.	
Step_6	Insert the 8 AWG ground cable in the ground lug. Crimp the lug on the cable using an appropriate hand crimp tool (e.g. Panduit CT-1700 crimp tool set at: Color Code = Red; Die Index No. = P21).	
Step_7	Install the ground lug on the studs, fastening with the 2 nuts and washers. <b>NOTE:</b> The thread of the two chassis ground lugs is M4x0.7.	

# Cabling

## Table of contents

- [DC power supply inlet](#)
- [Preparing the DC power supply cables](#)
  - [Material required](#)
  - [Procedure](#)
- [AC power supply inlet](#)
  - [Power cord usage guidelines](#)
  - [AC power supply connection](#)
- [GNSS input](#)
  - [Connecting to an RF splitter](#)
  - [Connecting to an external antenna](#)


## DC power supply inlet

Description	Maximum input current	PSU receptacle model
600 W DC power supply module input connector	17 A	Amphenol (Anytek) YK6050423000G

## Preparing the DC power supply cables

NOTICE	Before working with this product or performing instructions described in the getting started section or in other sections, read the Safety and regulatory information section pertaining to the product. Assembly instructions in this documentation must be followed to ensure and maintain compliance with existing product certifications and approvals. Use only the described, regulated components specified in this documentation. Use of other products/components will void the CSA certification and other regulatory approvals of the product and will most likely result in non-compliance with product regulations in the region(s) in which the product is sold.
--------	--

WARNING	Installation of this product must be performed in accordance with national wiring codes and conform to local regulations.
---------	---

	Pliers may be used to bend the crimp lugs.
---	--

### Material required

Kontron suggests using crimp lugs (ring or spade crimp lug, straight, isolated, UL94V-0) on the power cables. Connect the appropriate cable to the appropriate polarity.

Use appropriate wire gauge for -48V DC and RTN based on cable specifications and local electrical code.

Description	Quantity	Manufacturer P/N	Link
Crimp lugs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Molex insulated spade crimp lugs for 14-16 wire gauge</li> <li>• Panduit insulated ring crimp lugs for 10-12 wire gauge</li> </ul>	2 (or 4 for redundancy)	19131-0023 or equivalent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Molex product catalog</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Part details</a></li> </ul>
		EV10-6RB-Q or equivalent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Panduit product catalog</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Part drawing</a></li> </ul>
Black stranded wire to build the power cable based on the length required: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter: 4.40 mm [0.175 in] for Molex crimp lugs</li> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 5.8 mm [0.23 in] for Panduit crimp lugs</li> </ul>	Length required		
Red stranded wire to build the power cable based on the length required: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter: 4.40 mm [0.175 in] for Molex crimp lugs</li> <li>• Maximum insulation diameter : 5.8 mm [0.23 in] for Panduit crimp lugs</li> </ul>	Length required		
Hand crimp tool: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Molex Premium Grade Hand Crimp Tool</li> <li>• Panduit Hand Crimp Tool</li> </ul>	1	640010100 or equivalent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Molex product catalog</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Application tooling specification sheet</a></li> </ul>
		CT-460 or equivalent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Panduit product catalog</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Application tooling specification sheet</a></li> </ul>

### Procedure

Step_1	Strip 6 mm [0.236 in] from the end of a black stranded 14 AWG wire (for Molex crimp lug 19131-0023) or 8 mm [0.315 in] from the end of a black stranded 12 AWG wire (for Panduit crimp lug EV10-6RB-Q).	
Step_2	Strip 6 mm [0.236 in] from the end of a red stranded 14 AWG wire (for Molex crimp lug 19131-0023) or 8 mm [0.315 in] from the end of a red stranded 12 AWG wire (for Panduit crimp lug EV10-6RB-Q).	
Step_3	Insert each wire in a crimp lug. Follow the crimp lug manufacturer's procedure, using the appropriate hand crimp tool as specified in the Application tooling specification sheet of the tool.	
Step_4	Bend the crimp lugs to a 45° angle as shown in the image.	
Step_5	Remove the screw from the terminal block RTN "B" location.	
Step_6	Insert the crimped red wire in the RTN "B" location as shown in the image.	
Step_7	Screw the crimp lug in place.	
Step_8	Remove the screw from the terminal block -48V DC "B" location.	
Step_9	Insert the crimped black wire in the -48V DC "B" location as shown in the image.	
Step_10	Screw the crimp lug in place.	
Step_11	(Optional) If redundancy is required, repeat steps 1 to 10 for a second set of cables. They are to be installed in the -48V DC and RTN "A" locations.	
Step_12	The power supply is reverse polarity protected. The unit will power on as soon as external power is applied (green power LED).	

## AC power supply inlet

If an AC power cord was not provided with your product, you can purchase one that is approved for use in your country.

### ▲WARNING

To avoid electrical shock or fire :

- Do not attempt to modify or use the AC power cord(s) if they are not the exact type required to fit into the grounded electrical outlets.
- The power cord must have an electrical rating that is greater than or equal to that of the electrical current rating marked on the product.
- The power cord must have a safety ground pin or contact that is suitable for the electrical outlet.
- The power supply cord(s) are the main disconnect device to AC power. The socket outlet(s) must be near the equipment and readily accessible for disconnection.
- The power supply cord(s) must be plugged into socket-outlet(s) that are provided with a suitable earth ground.

## Power cord usage guidelines

The following guidelines may assist in determining the correct cord set. The power cord set used must meet local country electrical codes.

For the U.S. and Canada, UL Listed and/or CSA Certified (UL is Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., CSA is Canadian Standards Association).

For outside of the U.S. and Canada, cords must be certified according to local country electrical codes, with three 0.75-mm conductors rated 250 VAC.

Wall outlet end connector:

- Cords must be terminated in a grounding-type male plug designed for use in your region.
- The connector must have certification marks showing certification by an agency acceptable in your region.

Platform end connectors are IEC 320 C13 type female connectors.

Maximum cord length is 2 m.

## AC power supply connection

Step_1	Connect an appropriately rated cable from an external power source to the power inlet in the front of the platform.	
Step_2	The unit will power on as soon as external power is applied (green power LED).	

For information on grounding, refer to [Rack installation](#).

For information on LED behavior, refer to [Platform components](#).

## GNSS input

### Connecting to an RF splitter

Step_1	Connect a 50-ohm coaxial cable from the splitter to the platform. <b>NOTE:</b> The platform requires the cable to be terminated with a female SMA connector. Cable type is not very critical if it is kept short between the splitter and the platform and as long as a good antenna with low noise LNA is used.
Step_2	Follow the RF splitter documentation to connect the antenna.

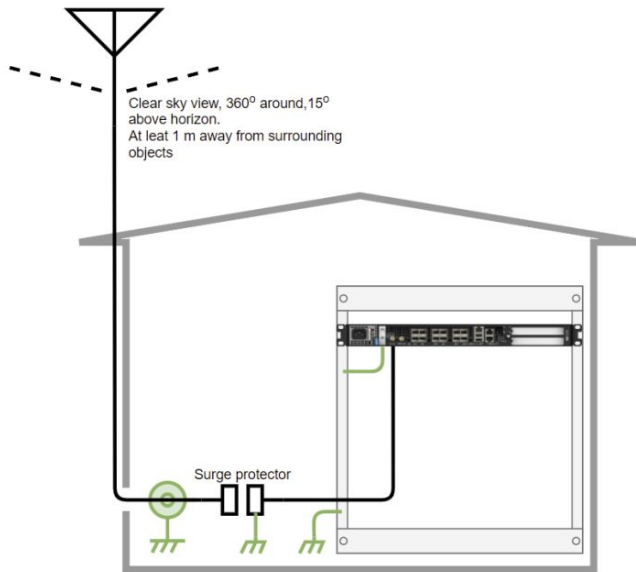
### Connecting to an external antenna

**WARNING**

When connecting an external antenna, proper grounding is required and additional surge protection may be required. Always refer to your local electrical code.



This is a general installation guideline and users are encouraged to read the GNSS antenna installation best practices of the antenna suppliers.



Step_1	Select a high quality antenna that includes a low noise amplifier with a 15 dB to 35 dB gain (depending on the distance from the antenna to the receiver).
Step_2	Install the antenna in a clear sky view area, ideally higher than any surrounding objects, buildings or trees. Use a sturdy support to minimize movement due to strong winds.
Step_3	Use a high quality, 50-ohm coaxial cable, such as LMR-400, to connect the antenna to the grounding bloc or surge protector. Type-N termination is a good choice for the antenna, cable and grounding bloc or surge protector.
Step_4	Install a grounding bloc and/or surge protector close to the coaxial cable entry in the building and connect to the building ground. <b>Always refer to your local electrical code</b> . The platform includes surge protection for up to 1 kV.
Step_5	Use a high quality, 50-ohm coaxial cable, such as LMR-400, from the grounding bloc and surge protector to the platform. This cable needs an SMA connection on the platform side.

## Accessing platform components

# Accessing a BMC

Table of contents

- [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#)
  - [Accessing a BMC using Redfish via an external network connection](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Creating the Redfish ROOT\\_URL](#)
    - [Access procedure](#)
  - [Accessing a BMC via the internal Redfish host interface](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Creating the Redfish ROOT\\_URL to use with the Redfish host interface](#)
    - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing a BMC using IPMI over LAN \(IOL\)](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)

A BMC can be accessed through various methods:

- Using the [Web UI](#) – this is the recommended path for first time out-of-the-box system configuration
- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using [IPMI over LAN \(IOL\)](#)
- Using [IPMI via KCS](#)

Refer to [Description of system access methods](#) for more information on the various paths.

## Accessing a BMC using the Web UI

### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.

Relevant sections:

- [Discovering platform IP addresses](#)
- [Configuring the BMC networking](#)

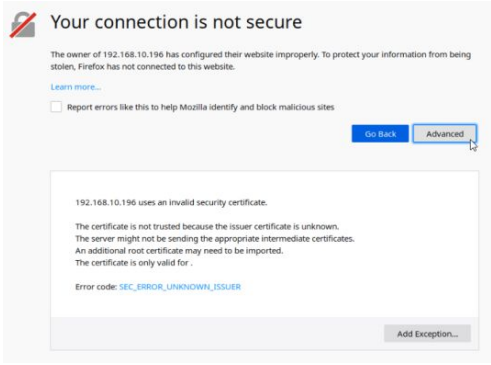
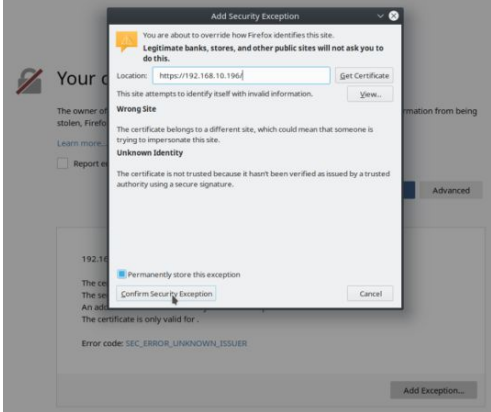
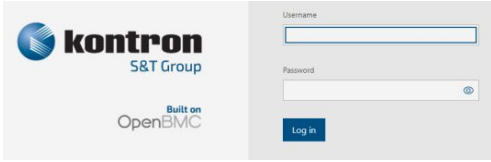
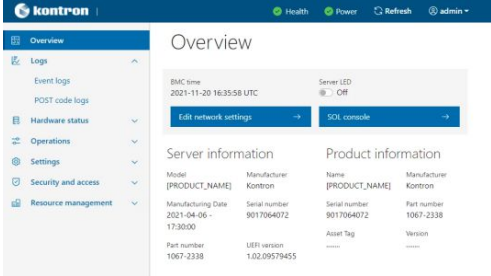
### Browser considerations

HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

NOTE: The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	From a remote computer that has access to the management network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the BMC. <b>NOTE: The HTTPS prefix is mandatory.</b> <i>https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]</i>	
Step_2	Click on <b>Advanced</b> in order to start the HTTPS self-signed certificate acceptance process. Information on the error message will be displayed.	
Step_3	Click on <b>Add Exception...</b> The Add Security Exception pop-up window will be displayed. Click on <b>Confirm Security Exception</b> to allow the browser to access the management Web UI of this interface.	
Step_4	Log in to the BMC Web UI using the appropriate credentials.	
Step_5	You now have access to the management Web UI of the BMC. You can use the interface.	

## Accessing a BMC using Redfish

There are two methods to access the BMC:

- Via an [external network connection](#)
- Via the [internal Redfish Host Interface](#)

### Accessing a BMC using Redfish via an external network connection

#### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	An HTTP client tool is installed on the remote computer.
3	A JSON parser command-line tool such as <code>jq</code> is installed.

Relevant sections:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

[Configuring and managing users](#) (if a password needs to be changed)

#### Creating the Redfish ROOT\_URL

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	Begin the URL with the <b>https</b> prefix.	<b>https://</b>
Step_2	Add the BMC user name and password separated by a colon.	<b>https:// [BMC_USERNAME] : [BMC_PASSWORD]</b>
Step_3	Add <b>@</b> to the URL followed by the BMC IP address.	<b>https:// [BMC_USERNAME] : [BMC_PASSWORD] @ [ BMC MNGMT_IP ]</b> In the documentation, this URL will be replaced by [ROOT_URL] in all Redfish commands.
Step_4	Access the API using an HTTP client and verify that the URL is valid.	RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# <b>curl -k -s [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/   jq</b>

### Access procedure

Step_1	Access Redfish. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# <b>curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/   jq</b>	
--------	--	--

### Accessing a BMC via the internal Redfish host interface

BMC Redfish resources can be accessed locally by the integrated server using the internal, private, Redfish Host Interface. In the ME1310, this is implemented using a USB-LAN interface. Most modern Linux operating systems should have built-in support for this USB-LAN device.

### Prerequisites

1	The IP address of the Redfish host interface is configured.
2	An HTTP client tool is installed on the remote computer.
3	A JSON parser command-line tool such as <b>jq</b> is installed.

#### Relevant sections:

[Configuring the Redfish host interface](#)

[Configuring and managing users](#) (if a password needs to be changed)

### Creating the Redfish ROOT\_URL to use with the Redfish host interface

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	Begin the URL with the <b>https</b> prefix.	<b>https://</b>
Step_2	Add the BMC user name and password separated by a colon.	<b>https:// [BMC_USERNAME] : [BMC_PASSWORD]</b>
Step_3	Add <b>@</b> to the URL followed by the configured Redfish host interface IP address.	<b>https:// [BMC_USERNAME] : [BMC_PASSWORD] @ 169.254.0.17</b> In the documentation, this URL will be replaced by [ROOT_URL] in all Redfish commands.
Step_4	Access the API using an HTTP client and verify that the URL is valid.	RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# <b>curl -k -s [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/   jq</b>

### Access procedure

Step_1	Access Redfish. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# <b>curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/   jq</b>	
--------	--	--

### Accessing a BMC using IPMI over LAN (IOL)

### Prerequisites



1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
3	A community version of ipmitool is installed on a remote computer to enable remote monitoring—it is recommended to use ipmitool version 1.8.18.

**Relevant sections:**

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

[Configuring the BMC networking](#)

**Access procedure**

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network subnet, enter the desired command.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 [IPMI command]</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool -I lanplus -H 172.16.182.31 -U admin -P ready2go -C 17 sensor list Fan 1   10282,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na Fan 2   10388,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na Fan 3   10706,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na Fan 4   10918,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na Fan 5   10609,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na Fan 6   10388,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na Fan 7   10600,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na Fan 8   10282,000   RPM   ok   na   na   na</pre>
--------	--	---

**Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS**

**Prerequisites**

1	An OS is installed.
2	The remote computer has access to the server OS (SSH/RDP/platform serial port).
3	A community version of ipmitool is installed on the local server to enable local monitoring—it is recommended to use ipmitool version 1.8.18.

**Access procedure**

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port, enter the desired command.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool [IPMI command]</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor Fan 1   7252,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 Fan 2   7252,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 Fan 3   7742,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 Fan 4   7448,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 Fan 5   7448,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 Fan 6   7644,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 Fan 7   7742,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 Fan 8   7938,000   RPM   ok   na   1666,000 DIMM E1 CPU1   28,000   degrees C   ok   na   0,000 Die CPU1   40,000   degrees C   ok   na   na Temp BMC   27,000   degrees C   ok   na   0,000 Temp CPU Area   39,000   degrees C   ok   na   0,000 Temp Chassis   0,000   degrees C   ok   na   na Temp FPGA   24,000   degrees C   ok   na   1,000</pre>
--------	--	--

# Accessing the operating system of a server

## Table of contents

- [Accessing an OS using the KVM](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC of the server for which you want to access the OS](#)
    - [Launching the KVM](#)
- [Accessing an OS using the Web UI Serial over LAN console](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC of the server for which you want to access the OS](#)
    - [Launching the Web UI SOL console](#)
- [Accessing an OS using Serial over SSH](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing an OS using IPMI Serial over LAN](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing an OS using SSH, RDP or customer application protocols](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing an OS using a serial console \(physical connection\)](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Port location](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)

An operating system can be accessed through various methods:

- Using the [KVM](#) – this is the recommended path for first time out-of-the-box system configuration
- Using the [Web UI Serial over LAN console](#)
- Using [Serial over LAN using SSH](#)
- Using [IPMI Serial over LAN](#)
- Using [SSH/RDP/Customer application protocols](#)
- Using a [serial console \(physical connection\)](#)

Refer to [Description of system access methods](#) for more information on the various paths.

NOTE: This platform does not include a physical display port.

## Accessing an OS using the KVM

NOTE: The KVM is not well suited for OS bootloader monitoring or configuration because of KVM boot time refresh issue. The KVM can still be used for operating system configuration. But, after the UEFI/BIOS execution, the KVM window will be resized, making bootloader output unavailable. Performing a full Web browser page refresh (use the browser refresh button or F5, which works in most browsers) may permit OS bootloader monitoring. An alternative method involves configuring the bootloader to output on the serial port. Refer to the documentation of the operating system to configure the output of the bootloader.

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed.
2	The BMC IP address is known.
3	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.

Relevant sections:

[Accessing a BMC](#)

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

[Platform power management](#)

### Browser considerations

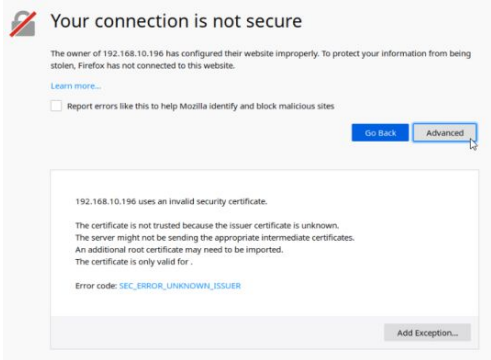
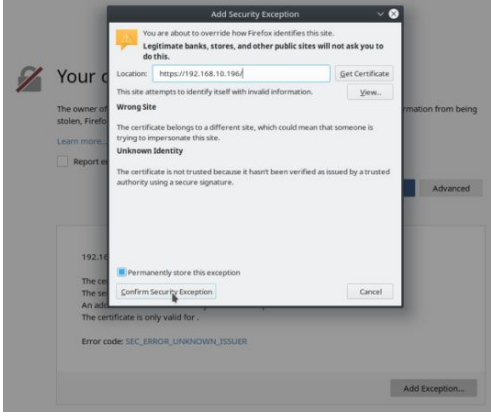
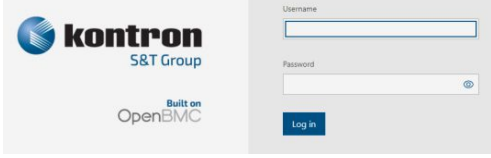
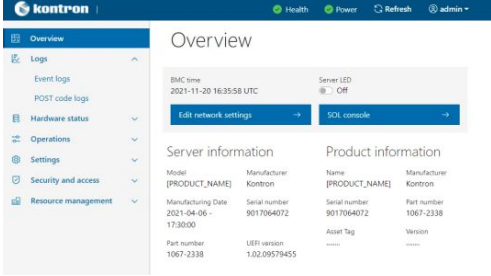
HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

NOTE: The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

### Access procedure

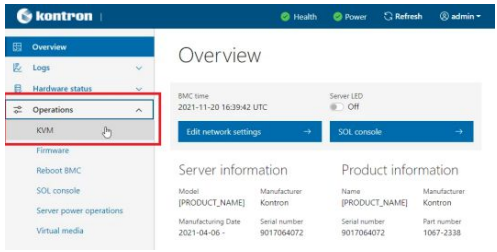
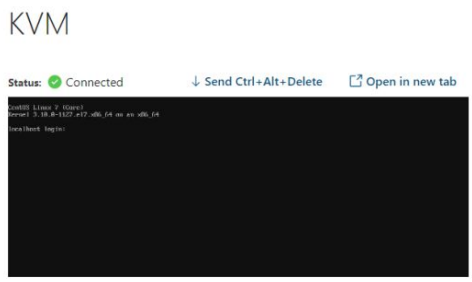
## Accessing the BMC of the server for which you want to access the OS

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the BMC.  <b>NOTE: The HTTPS prefix is mandatory.</b>  <i>https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]</i></p>	
Step_2	<p>Click on <b>Advanced</b> in order to start the HTTPS self-signed certificate acceptance process. Information on the error message will be displayed.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Click on <b>Add Exception...</b> The Add Security Exception pop-up window will be displayed. Click on <b>Confirm Security Exception</b> to allow the browser to access the management Web UI of this interface.</p>	
Step_4	<p>Log in to the BMC Web UI using the appropriate credentials.</p>	
Step_5	<p>You now have access to the management Web UI of the BMC. You can use the interface.</p>	

## Launching the KVM

**NOTE:** The KVM sometimes loses connection. Simply refresh the Web browser page to establish the connection.

Step_1	From the BMC Web UI, click on the <b>Operations</b> menu and then on the <b>KVM</b> button.	
Step_2	The OS screen should be displayed.	

NOTE: If the OS is not displayed, perform a server reset. Refer to [Platform power management](#).

## Accessing an OS using the Web UI Serial over LAN console

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed.
2	The BMC IP address is known.
3	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
4	Redirection to the serial port is configured in the OS. NOTE: If the OS was installed by Kontron, console redirection is enabled by default.

### Relevant sections:

- [Accessing a BMC](#)
- [Discovering platform IP addresses](#)
- [Platform power management](#)

### Browser considerations

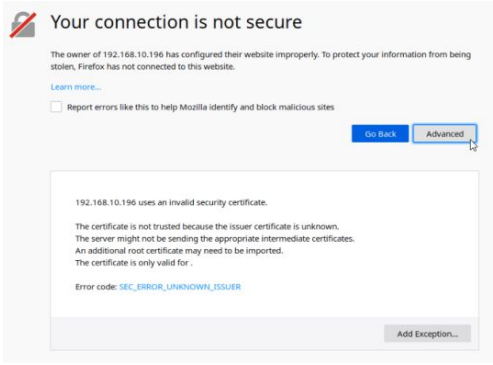
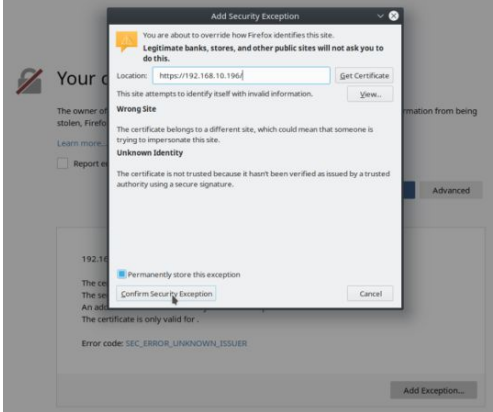
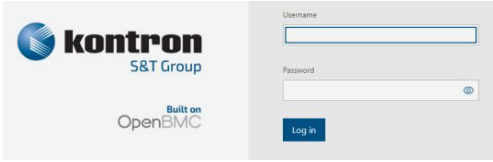
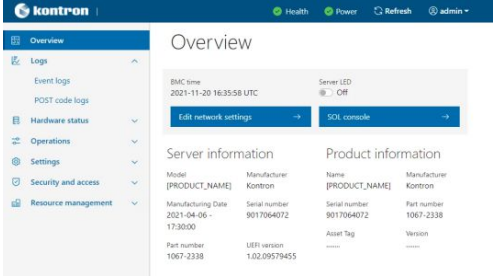
HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

NOTE: The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

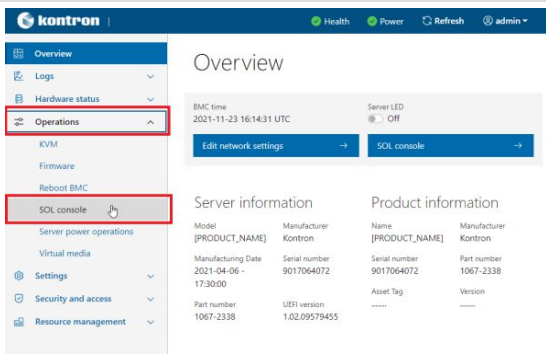
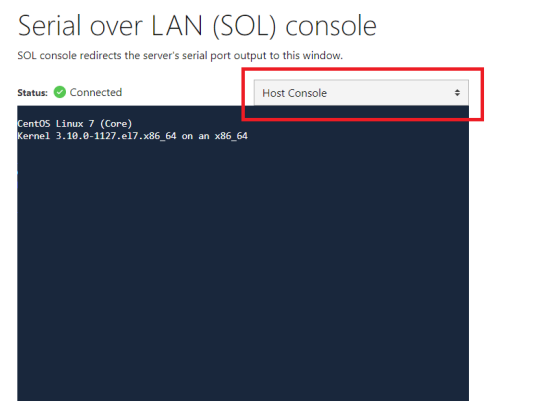
### Access procedure

#### Accessing the BMC of the server for which you want to access the OS

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the BMC.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The HTTPS prefix is mandatory.</b>  <a href="https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]">https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]</a></p>	
Step_2	<p>Click on <b>Advanced</b> in order to start the HTTPS self-signed certificate acceptance process. Information on the error message will be displayed.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Click on <b>Add Exception...</b> The Add Security Exception pop-up window will be displayed. Click on <b>Confirm Security Exception</b> to allow the browser to access the management Web UI of this interface.</p>	
Step_4	<p>Log in to the BMC Web UI using the appropriate credentials.</p>	
Step_5	<p>You now have access to the management Web UI of the BMC. You can use the interface.</p>	

### Launching the Web UI SOL console

Step_1	From the BMC Web UI, click on the Operations menu and then on the SOL console button.	
Step_2	The OS screen should be displayed. NOTE: If the screen is not displayed, make sure that the dropdown menu is set to Host Console .	

NOTE: If the OS is not displayed, perform a server reset. Refer to [Platform power management](#).

## Accessing an OS using Serial over SSH

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed.
2	The BMC IP address is known.
3	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
4	An SSH client tool is installed on the remote computer. NOTE: PuTTY is recommended for Windows environments and SSH is recommended for Linux environments.
5	Redirection to the serial port is configured in the OS. NOTE: If the OS was installed by Kontron, console redirection is enabled by default.

### Relevant sections:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

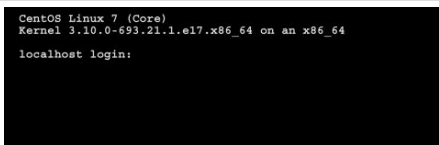
[Common software installation](#)

[Accessing a BMC](#)

### Access procedure

NOTE: When using Serial over SSH, to quit the session press **Enter** followed by **~ .**

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	Using an SSH client tool, open an SSH session with the following parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BMC IP address</li> <li>Server port number: 2200</li> </ul>	
Step_2	Log in the BMC using the appropriate credentials. Upon successful login, press <b>Enter</b> to get a response from the OS serial console.	

## Accessing an OS using IPMI Serial over LAN

## Prerequisites

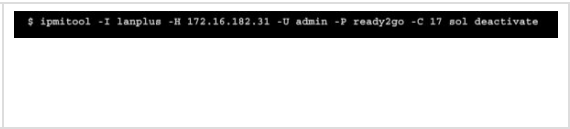
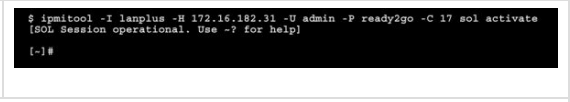
1	An OS is installed.
2	The BMC IP address is known.
3	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
4	A community version of ipmitool is installed on a remote computer to enable remote monitoring—it is recommended to use ipmitool version 1.8.18.

### Relevant sections:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)  
[Platform power management](#)

## Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	From a remote computer that has access to the management network subnet, open the OS command prompt and deactivate any previous SOL session. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name]-P [IPMI password] -C 17 sol deactivate	
Step_2	Activate an SOL session. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name]-P [IPMI password] -C 17 sol activate	
Step_3	The OS start screen will be displayed.	

NOTE : If the OS is not displayed, perform a server reset. Refer to [Platform power management](#).

## Accessing an OS using SSH, RDP or customer application protocols

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed.
2	The OS IP address is known.
3	The remote computer has access to the OS subnet.

### Relevant section:

[Platform power management](#)

## Access procedure

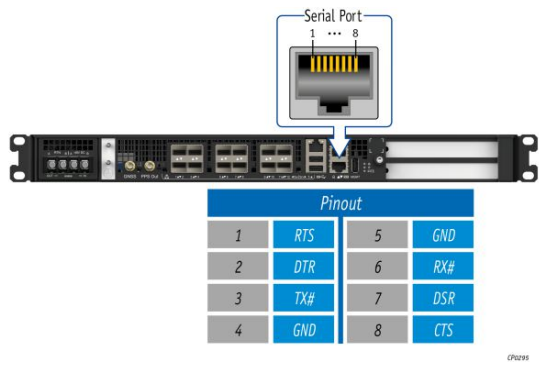
Step_1	Using the OS IP address, proceed with your preferred remote access method.
--------	--

## Accessing an OS using a serial console (physical connection)

### Prerequisites

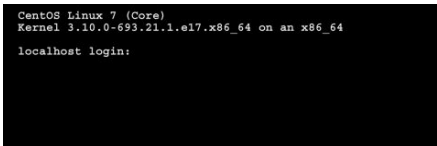
1	An OS is installed.
2	A physical connection to the device is required. NOTE: The serial console port is compatible with Cisco 72-3383-01 cable.
3	A serial console tool is installed on the remote computer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Speed (Baud): 115200</li> <li>• Data bits: 8</li> <li>• Stop bits: 1</li> <li>• Parity: None</li> <li>• Flow Control: None</li> <li>• Recommended emulation mode: VT100+</li> </ul> NOTE: PuTTY is recommended.
4	Redirection to the serial port is configured in the OS. NOTE: If the OS was installed by Kontron, console redirection is enabled by default.

## Port Location



## Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	Physically connect a computer to the platform serial port.	
Step_2	Using a serial console tool, establish communication using the parameters provided. Press <b>Enter</b> .	
Step_3	The OS start screen will be displayed.	

**NOTE:** If the OS is not displayed, perform a server reset. Refer to [Platform power management](#).



# Accessing the UEFI or BIOS

Table of contents

- [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using Serial over LAN using the Web UI](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu using SOL using the Web UI](#)
- [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using the KVM](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu using the KVM](#)
- [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using Serial over SSH](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using Serial over LAN using IPMI](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using a serial console through a physical connection](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Port location](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)

UEFI/BIOS can be accessed through various methods :

- [Serial over LAN \(SOL\) using the Web UI](#) – this is the recommended path for first time out-of-the-box system configuration
- [KVM](#)
- [Serial over SSH](#)
- [Serial over LAN \(SOL\) using IPMI](#)
- [Serial console \(physical connection\)](#)

Refer to [Description of system access methods](#) for more information on the various paths.

## Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using Serial over LAN using the Web UI

### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.

Relevant section:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

### Browser considerations

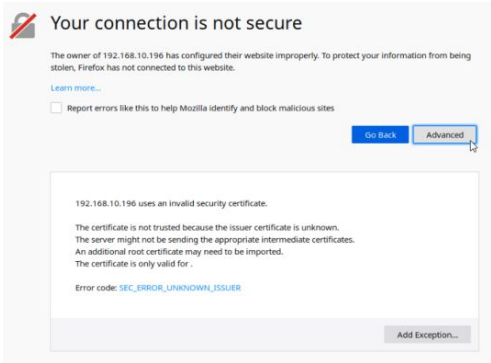
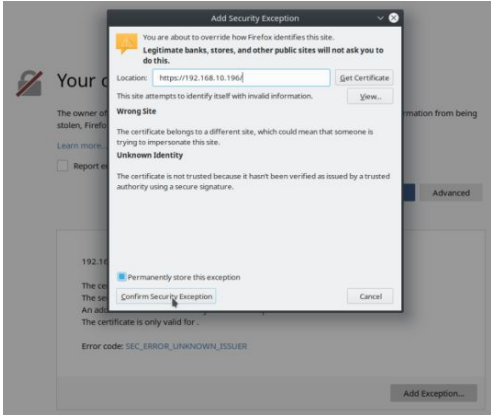
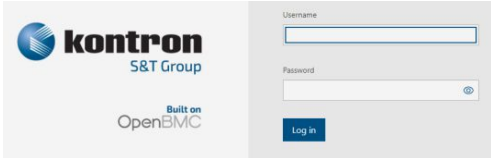
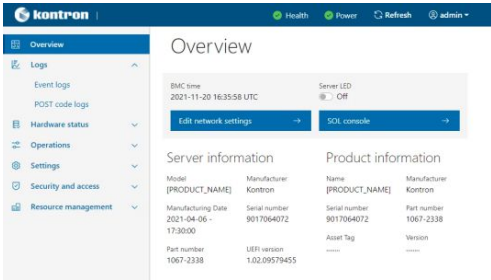
HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

NOTE: The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

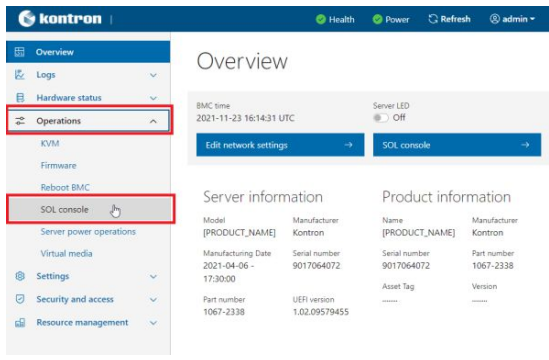
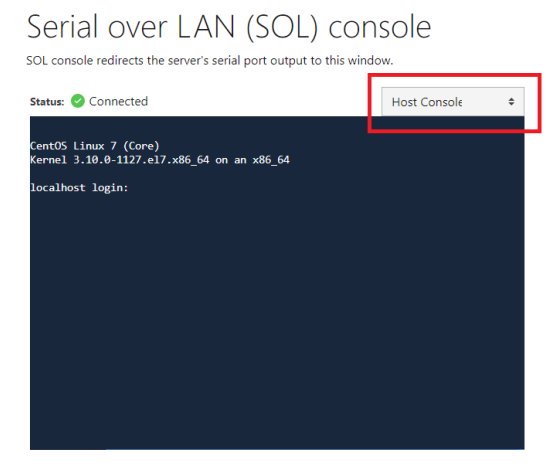
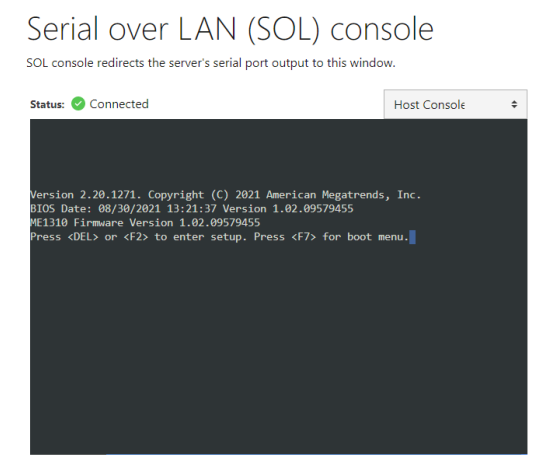
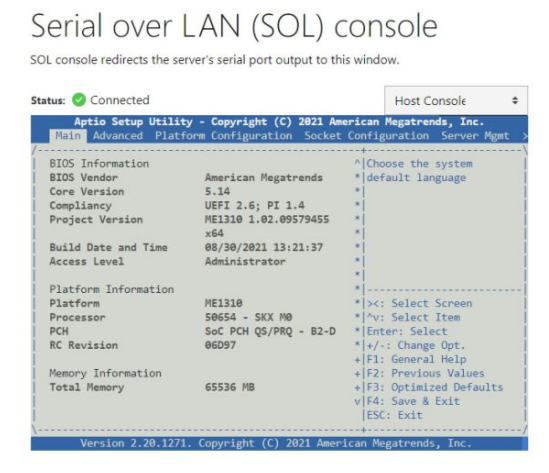
### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

## Accessing the BMC Web UI

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the BMC.  <b>NOTE: The HTTPS prefix is mandatory.</b>  <i>https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]</i></p>																													
Step_2	<p>Click on <b>Advanced</b> in order to start the HTTPS self-signed certificate acceptance process. Information on the error message will be displayed.</p>																													
Step_3	<p>Click on <b>Add Exception...</b> The Add Security Exception pop-up window will be displayed. Click on <b>Confirm Security Exception</b> to allow the browser to access the management Web UI of this interface.</p>																													
Step_4	<p>Log in to the BMC Web UI using the appropriate credentials.</p>																													
Step_5	<p>You now have access to the management Web UI of the BMC. You can use the interface.</p>	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Server information</th> <th colspan="2">Product information</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Model</th> <th>Manufacturer</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Manufacturer</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>[PRODUCT_NAME]</td> <td>Kontron</td> <td>[PRODUCT_NAME]</td> <td>Kontron</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Manufacturing Date</td> <td>Serial number</td> <td>Serial number</td> <td>Part number</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2021-04-06-17:30:00</td> <td>9017064072</td> <td>9017064072</td> <td>1067-2338</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Part number</td> <td>UEFI version</td> <td>Asset Tag</td> <td>Version</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1067-2338</td> <td>1.02.09579455</td> <td>-----</td> <td>-----</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Server information		Product information		Model	Manufacturer	Name	Manufacturer	[PRODUCT_NAME]	Kontron	[PRODUCT_NAME]	Kontron	Manufacturing Date	Serial number	Serial number	Part number	2021-04-06-17:30:00	9017064072	9017064072	1067-2338	Part number	UEFI version	Asset Tag	Version	1067-2338	1.02.09579455	-----	-----
Server information		Product information																												
Model	Manufacturer	Name	Manufacturer																											
[PRODUCT_NAME]	Kontron	[PRODUCT_NAME]	Kontron																											
Manufacturing Date	Serial number	Serial number	Part number																											
2021-04-06-17:30:00	9017064072	9017064072	1067-2338																											
Part number	UEFI version	Asset Tag	Version																											
1067-2338	1.02.09579455	-----	-----																											

## Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu using SOL using the Web UI

Step_1	From the BMC Web UI, click on the <b>Operations</b> menu and then on the <b>SOL console</b> button.	
Step_2	Press an arrow on the keyboard to refresh the console. The OS screen should be displayed. <b>NOTE:</b> If the screen is not displayed, make sure that the dropdown menu is set to <b>Host Console</b> .	<h3>Serial over LAN (SOL) console</h3> <p>SOL console redirects the server's serial port output to this window.</p> 
Step_3	If the system is already powered on, perform a server reset. Otherwise, power on the server.	
Step_4	When the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu. <b>NOTE:</b> When a reset server command is launched, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display. <b>NOTE:</b> It may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display the confirmation message "Entering Setup..."	<h3>Serial over LAN (SOL) console</h3> <p>SOL console redirects the server's serial port output to this window.</p> 
Step_5	The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen displays "Entering Setup...". <b>NOTE:</b> It may take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.	
Step_6	The UEFI/BIOS setup menu will be displayed.	<h3>Serial over LAN (SOL) console</h3> <p>SOL console redirects the server's serial port output to this window.</p> 

## ACCESSING THE UEFI OR BIOS USING THE KVM

**NOTE:** The KVM is not well suited for UEFI/BIOS configuration because of KVM refresh issues at UEFI/BIOS boot. The KVM can still be used for UEFI/BIOS configuration but, when the UEFI/BIOS is booting, the KVM window will be resized and rendered unusable until a full Web browser page refresh is performed (use the browser refresh button or F5, which works in most browsers). After the refresh, the KVM should remain stable and functional until the next UEFI/BIOS reboot.

### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.

Relevant section:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

### Browser considerations

HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

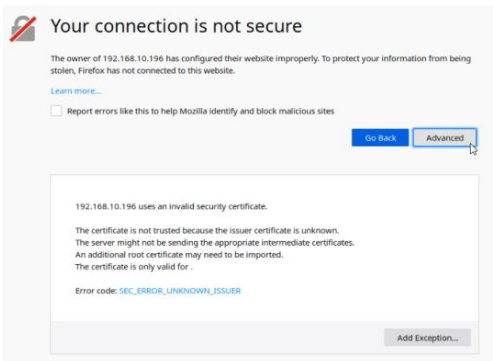
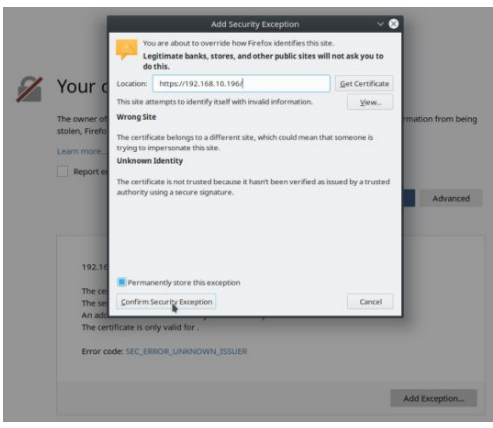
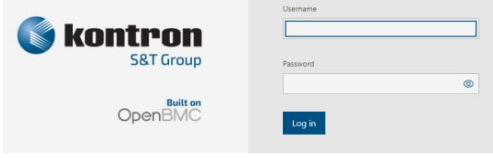
**NOTE:** The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

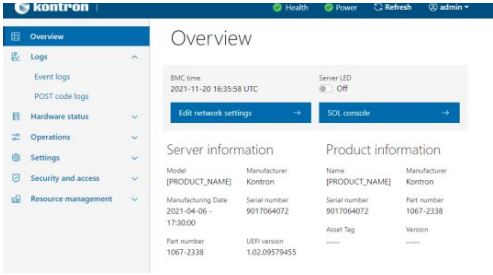
### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

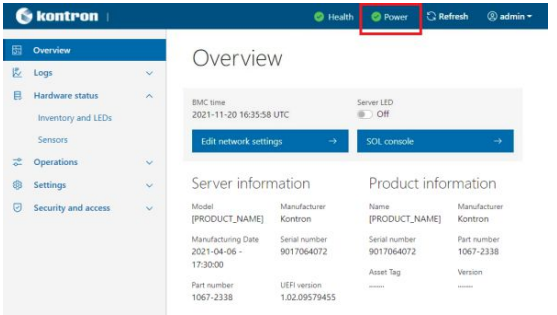
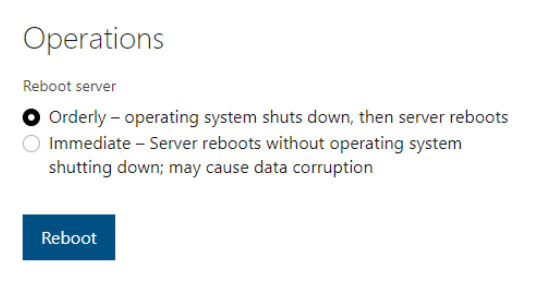
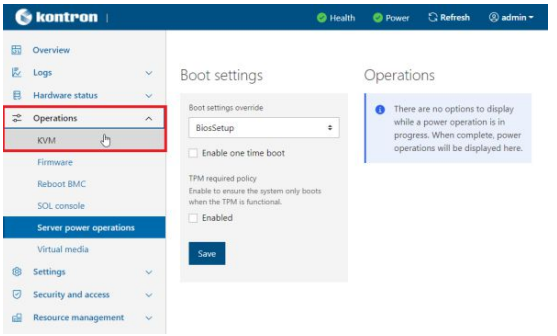

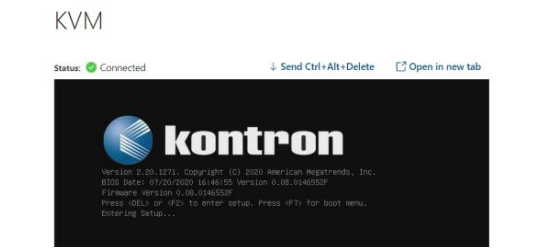
**NOTE:** The KVM sometimes loses connection. Simply refresh the Web browser page to establish the connection.

### Accessing the BMC Web UI

Step_1	From a remote computer that has access to the management network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the BMC. <b>NOTE: The HTTPS prefix is mandatory.</b> <i>https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]</i>	
Step_2	Click on <b>Advanced</b> in order to start the HTTPS self-signed certificate acceptance process. Information on the error message will be displayed.	
Step_3	Click on <b>Add Exception...</b> The Add Security Exception pop-up window will be displayed. Click on <b>Confirm Security Exception</b> to allow the browser to access the management Web UI of this interface.	
Step_4	Log in to the BMC Web UI using the appropriate credentials.	

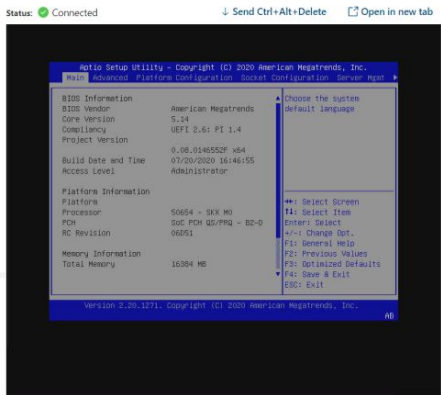
Step_5	You now have access to the management Web UI of the BMC. You can use the interface.	
--------	---	---

## Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu using the KVM

Step_1	From the BMC Web UI, click on the Power button.	
Step_2	From the Reboot server section, select Orderly and then click on Reboot .	
Step_3	From the Operations menu, click on KVM.	
Step_4	When the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu. <b>NOTE:</b> When a reset server command is launched, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display. <b>NOTE:</b> It may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display the confirmation message "Entering Setup...".	
Step_5	The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen displays "Entering Setup...". <b>NOTE:</b> It may take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.	



KVM



Step_6	The UEFI/BIOS setup menu will be displayed.
--------	---

## Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using Serial over SSH

### Prerequisites

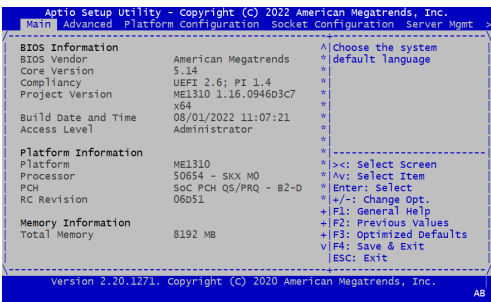
1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
3	An SSH client tool is installed on the remote computer. <b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended for Windows environments and SSH is recommended for Linux environments.

### Relevant sections:

- [Discovering platform IP addresses](#)
- [Common software installation](#)
- [Accessing a BMC](#)
- [Default user names and passwords](#)

## Access procedure

NOTE: When using Serial over SSH, to quit the session press **Enter** followed by ~ .

Step_1	<p>Using an SSH client tool, open an SSH session with the following parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BMC IP address</li> <li>BMC username and password.</li> <li>Server port number: 2200</li> </ul> <p>Once the password is entered, press on the <b>Enter</b> key to generate a response from the server software currently running .</p>	<pre>\$ ssh admin@172.16.182.31 -p 2200 admin@172.16.182.31's password:</pre>
Step_2	<p>Perform a server reboot using your preferred method. The following are examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Log into the BMC Web UI and perform the reboot.</li> <li>If the server is currently running an installed operating system, log in and issue the appropriate reboot command.</li> <li>If the server is currently running the integrated UEFI shell, issue the "reset" command.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: When a server reset command is sent, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display.</p>	<pre>[ME1310][172.16.220.79][~]# ipmi [ OK ] Started Show Plymouth Power Off Screen. [ OK ] Stopped Dynamic System Tuning Daemon.       Stopping D-Bus System Message Bus... [ OK ] Stopped D-Bus System Message Bus. [ OK ] Stopped target Basic System. [ OK ] Stopped target Slices.       Removed slice user and session slice. [ OK ] Stopped target Paths. [ OK ] Stopped target Sockets. [ OK ] Closed RCPidm Server Activation Socket. [ OK ] Closed D-Bus System Message Bus Socket. [ OK ] Stopped target System Initialization. [ OK ] Stopped Setup V[644205.346204] systemd-shutdown[1]: Sending SIGTERM to remaining processes...</pre>
Step_3	<p>The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen should display "Entering Setup...". P ress the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p> <p>NOTE: It will take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p>	<pre>Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (c) 2020 American Megatrends, Inc. BIOS Date: 08/01/2022 11:07:21 Version 1.16.0946D3C7 ME1310 Firmware Version 0.16.0946D3C7 Press &lt;DEL&gt; or &lt;F2&gt; to enter setup. Press &lt;F7&gt; for boot menu.</pre>
Step_4	<p>The UEFI/BIOS setup menu should be displayed.</p>	

## Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using Serial over LAN using IPMI

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed.
2	The BMC IP address is known.
3	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
4	A community version of ipmitool is installed on a remote computer to enable remote monitoring—it is recommended to use ipmitool version 1.8.18.

Relevant sections:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

[Common software installation](#)

### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network subnet, open the OS command prompt and deactivate any previous SOL session.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 sol deactivate</p>	
Step_2	<p>Activate an SOL session.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 sol activate</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may be required to press the <b>Enter</b> key for the operating system's screen to be displayed.</p>	
Step_3	<p>From another command-line window. Make the platform enter the UEFI/BIOS automatically on the next reboot using the following command.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 chassis bootdev bios</p>	
Step_4	<p>From the same command-line window, perform a server reset.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 chassis power reset</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When a reset server command is launched, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display.</p>	
Step_5	<p>The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen should display "Entering Setup...".</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It will take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p>	
Step_6	<p>The UEFI/BIOS setup menu should be displayed.</p>	

## Accessing the UEFI or BIOS using a serial console through a physical connection

### Prerequisites

1	<p>A physical connection to the device is required.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The serial console port is compatible with Cisco 72-3383-01 cable.</p>
2	<p>A serial console tool is installed on the remote computer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Speed (Baud): 115200</li> <li>• Data bits: 8</li> <li>• Stop bits: 1</li> <li>• Parity: None</li> <li>• Flow Control: None</li> <li>• Recommended emulation mode: VT100+</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended.</p>

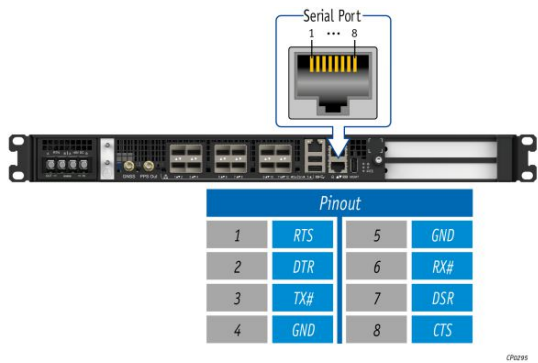
### Relevant sections:

[Common software installation](#)

[Sending a BREAK signal over a serial connection](#)

### Port location





## Access procedure

Step_1	From a computer with a physical connection to the serial port, open a serial console tool and start the communication between the console and the port to which the device is connected.	
Step_2	<p>Perform a server reset using one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the server is currently running an installed operating system, log in and issue the appropriate reboot command.</li> <li>• If the server is currently running the integrated UEFI shell, issue the "reset" command.</li> <li>• Send a "BREAK" signal over the serial connection using the method provided in the terminal emulator.</li> <li>• Disconnect all the input power connections for 30 seconds and reconnect them.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If an operating system is installed on the device, a method based on a hotkey might not work properly. If this is the case, reset the server as recommended for the operating system.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When a server reset command is sent, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display.</p>	<pre>ME1310 System starting... Ox19 : Pre-memory SB Initialization. System Information ME1310 System BIOS Version 1.08.0146552F Date: "08/01/2022" Intel RC Version 06D51, CPU Info: Intel(R) Xeon(R) D-218NT CPU @ 2.00GHz Processor: 1, Cores: 16, Stepping: M0 Memory Info: Memory Size: 16 GB, Memory Speed: 2666MHz, RAS Mode: Indep [...]</pre>
Step_3	<p>When the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display confirmation message "Entering Setup...".</p>	<pre>Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2020 American Megatrends, Inc. BIOS Date: 08/01/2022 11:07:21 Version 1.16.0946D3C7 ME1310 Firmware Version 0.16.0946D3C7 Press &lt;DEL&gt; or &lt;F2&gt; to enter setup. Press &lt;F7&gt; for boot menu.</pre>
Step_4	<p>The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen displays "Entering Setup...".</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It will take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p>	
Step_5	The UEFI/BIOS setup menu is displayed.	<pre>Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2022 American Megatrends, Inc. Main Advanced Platform Configuration Socket Configuration Server Mgmt &gt; ----- BIOS Information BIOS Vendor      American Megatrends  * Choose the system Core Version     5.14                * default language Compliance      UEFI 2.6; PI 1.4    * Project Version  ME1310 1.16.0946D3C7 * Build Date and Time 08/01/2022 11:07:21 * Access Level     Administrator       * ----- Platform Information Platform        ME1310              * &lt;&gt;: Select Screen Processor       30634 - SKX M0      * &lt;v&gt;: Select Item PCH             Soc PCH QS/PRQ - B2-D * RC Revision     06D51              * +/-: Change Opt. Memory Information Total Memory    8192 MB             * F1: General Help  * F2: Previous Values  * F3: Optimized Defaults  * F4: Save &amp; Exit  * ESC: Exit ----- Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2020 American Megatrends, Inc. AB</pre>

# Accessing the switch NOS

Table of contents

- [Accessing the switch NOS using the Web UI](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing the switch NOS CLI using the BMC Web UI Serial over LAN console](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Browser considerations](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC of the server for which you want to access the NOS](#)
    - [Launching the Web UI SOL console](#)
- [Accessing the switch NOS CLI using Serial over SSH from a remote computer](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing the switch NOS CLI using SSH from a remote computer](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)
- [Accessing the switch NOS CLI using SSH from the integrated server](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Access procedure](#)

The information presented in this section is only for platforms with the Ethernet switch IO module.

The switch NOS can be accessed through various methods:

- Using the [switch NOS Web UI](#)
- Using the [BMC Web UI SOL console](#)
- Using [Serial over SSH from a remote computer](#)
- Using [SSH from a remote computer](#)
- Using [SSH from the integrated server](#)

Refer to [Description of system access methods](#) for more information on the various paths.

## Accessing the switch NOS using the Web UI

### Prerequisites

1	One of the switch NOS IP addresses is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the switch NOS network subnet.

Relevant section:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

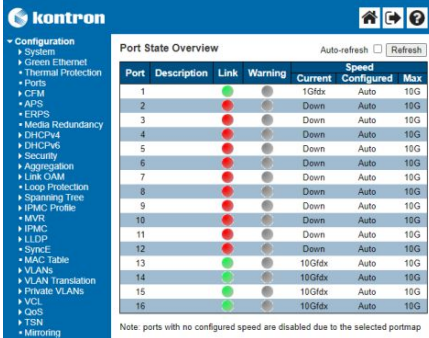
### Browser considerations

HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

NOTE: The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the switch NOS network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the switch NOS.</p> <p><i>http://[SWITCH_NOS_IP]</i></p>	
--------	---	---

## Accessing the switch NOS CLI using the BMC Web UI Serial over LAN console

### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.

Relevant sections:

[Accessing a BMC](#)

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

[Platform power management](#)

### Browser considerations

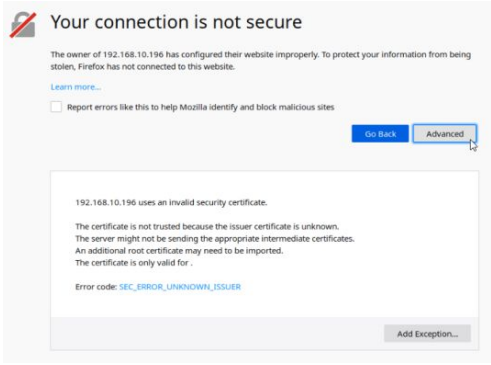
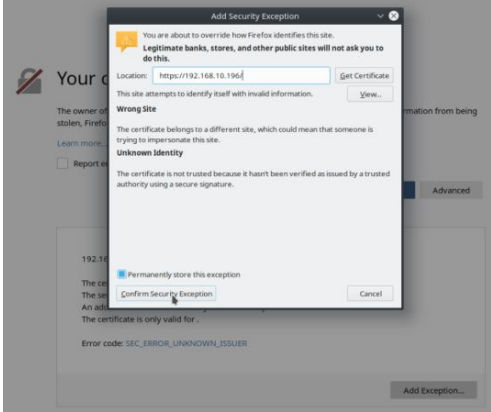
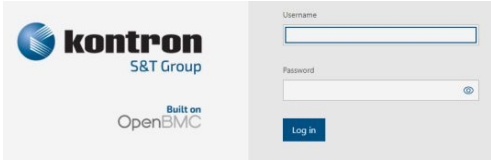
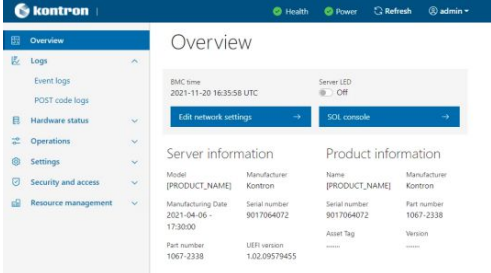
HTML5	To connect to the Web UI, a Web browser supporting HTML5 is required.
HTTPS self-signed certificate	Upon connection to the Web UI, it is mandatory to accept the HTTPS self-signed certificate. For further information about accepting HTTPS self-signed certificates, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
File download permission	File download from the site needs to be permitted. For further information about file download permission, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.
Cookies	Cookies must be enabled in order to access the website. For further information about enabling cookies, please refer to your Web browser's documentation.

NOTE: The procedure may vary depending on the browser used. Examples provided use Firefox.

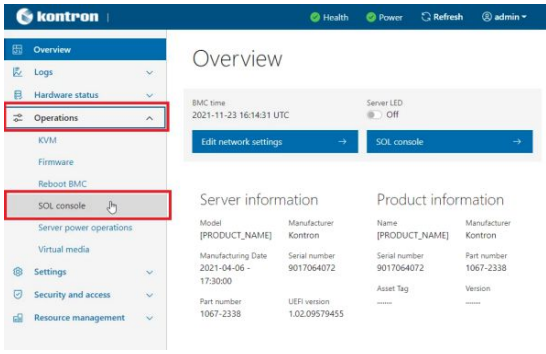
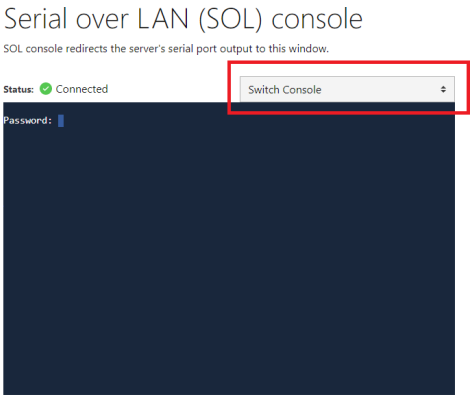
### Access procedure

#### Accessing the BMC of the server for which you want to access the NOS

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network, open a browser window and enter the IP address discovered for the BMC.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The HTTPS prefix is mandatory.</b>  <a href="https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]">https://[BMC MNGMT_IP]</a></p>	
Step_2	<p>Click on <b>Advanced</b> in order to start the HTTPS self-signed certificate acceptance process. Information on the error message will be displayed.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Click on <b>Add Exception...</b> The Add Security Exception pop-up window will be displayed. Click on <b>Confirm Security Exception</b> to allow the browser to access the management Web UI of this interface.</p>	
Step_4	<p>Log in to the BMC Web UI using the appropriate credentials.</p>	
Step_5	<p>You now have access to the management Web UI of the BMC. You can use the interface.</p>	

## Launching the Web UI SOL console

Step_1	From the BMC Web UI, click on the <b>Operations</b> menu and then on the <b>SOL console</b> button.	
Step_2	Change the dropdown menu value to <b>Switch Console</b> .	
Step_3	The NOS screen should be displayed.	

NOTE: If the OS is not displayed, perform a server reset. Refer to [Platform power management](#) .

## Accessing the switch NOS CLI using Serial over SSH from a remote computer

### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
3	An SSH client tool is installed on the remote computer. NOTE: PuTTY is recommended for Windows environments and SSH is recommended for Linux environments.

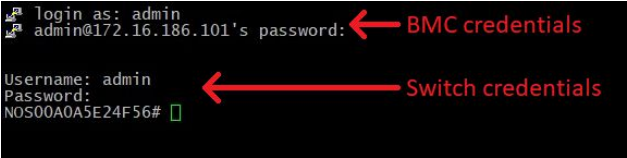
Relevant section:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#) .

NOTE: When using Serial over SSH, to quit the session press **Enter** followed by ~ .

Step_1	Using an SSH client tool, open an SSH session with the following parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BMC IP address</li> <li>Port number: 2201 (After login, the BMC will automatically redirect communication to the switch NOS serial console)</li> </ul>	
Step_2	Log in the BMC using the appropriate credentials for it. Upon successful login, press <b>Enter</b> to get a response from the switch NOS CLI. If a NOS serial console session is not already active, another set of credentials will then be requested. Use the appropriate credentials to complete login to the NOS.	

## Accessing the switch NOS CLI using SSH from a remote computer

### Prerequisites

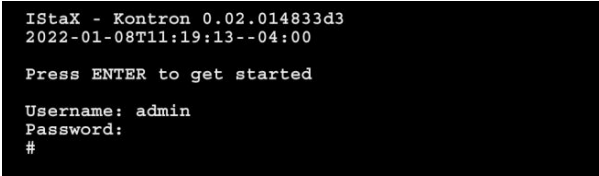
1	The network switch NOS IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the switch NOS network subnet.
3	An SSH client tool is installed on the remote computer. <b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended for Windows environments and SSH is recommended for Linux environments.

Relevant section:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	From a remote computer, open an SSH client tool and connect with the NOS IP address.	
Step_2	Log in the switch NOS CLI using the appropriate credentials.	 <pre>IStax - Kontron 0.02.014833d3 2022-01-08T11:19:13--04:00  Press ENTER to get started  Username: admin Password: #</pre>

## Accessing the switch NOS CLI using SSH from the integrated server

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed on the integrated server.
2	The remote computer has access to the integrated server OS.
3	One of the switch NOS IP addresses is known.
4	The integrated server has access to the switch NOS network subnet.
5	An SSH client tool is installed on the remote computer. <b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended for Windows environments and SSH is recommended for Linux environments.

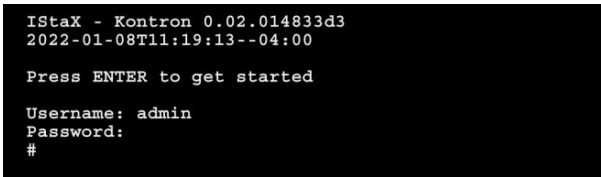
Relevant sections:

[Discovering platform IP addresses](#)

[Accessing the operating system of a server](#)

### Access procedure

To obtain the list of default user names and passwords, refer to [Default user names and passwords](#).

Step_1	Access the integrated server operating system using the preferred method.	
Step_2	Using an SSH client tool, open an SSH session with the following parameter: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switch NOS IP address</li> </ul> Log in the switch NOS CLI using the appropriate credentials.	 <pre>IStax - Kontron 0.02.014833d3 2022-01-08T11:19:13--04:00  Press ENTER to get started  Username: admin Password: #</pre>

# Discovering platform IP addresses

## Table of contents

- [Discovering the BMC IP address](#)
  - [Discovering the platform BMC IP address with DHCP Dynamic DNS update](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
  - [Discovering the platform BMC IP address using the UEFI or BIOS](#)
    - [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS using a serial console \(physical connection\)](#)
      - [Prerequisites](#)
      - [Port location](#)
      - [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC network configuration menu](#)
  - [Discovering the platform BMC IP address using DHCP server logs](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
- [Discovering the switch NOS IP address](#)
  - [Discovering the switch NOS IP address with DHCP Dynamic DNS update](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
  - [Discovering the switch NOS IP address through the switch NOS serial console CLI](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
  - [Discovering the switch NOS IP address using DHCP server logs](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)

## Discovering the BMC IP address

The BMC IP address is the minimum required to access the BMC Web user interface of the platform. It is also used to access the monitoring interface and the KVM/VM to install an operating system.

The BMC IP address can be discovered:

- Using DHCP Dynamic DNS update
- Using the UEFI/BIOS via a serial console (physical connection) – device with no OS installed and no known IP address
- Using the DHCP server logs

### Discovering the platform BMC IP address with DHCP Dynamic DNS update

#### Prerequisites

1	A DHCP server with active Dynamic DNS update feature is available.
2	A remote computer configured with the same DNS information is available.
3	The first assigned MAC address of the BMC is known.

Relevant section:

[MAC addresses](#) (to find the first assigned BMC MAC address)

#### Procedure

When requesting a DHCP lease, the platform BMC supplies the DHCP server with information to update the DNS system. If the DHCP server is configured for Dynamic DNS update, an entry will be added for a host name that is made up of the "BMC" prefix and the first BMC MAC address. Refer to section MAC addresses to determine those specific to a platform.

For example, if we use the first BMC MAC address ( 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a ), the host name would be: BMC 00A0A5D2E90A . Note that this is the default configuration, but that the parameter is user configurable. The method described here only works if the default hostname is still in effect.

The following example illustrates the method using DNS auto-registration with a remote computer that has access to the DHCP server network.

Step_1	Ping the host name. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ ping BMC00A0A5D2E90A	<pre>Pinging BOARD_NAME_00A0A5D2E90A[172.16.211.126] with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60 Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60 Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60 Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60  Ping statistics for 172.16.211.126:     Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),     Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:         Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 1ms, Average = 0ms</pre>
--------	--	--

### Discovering the platform BMC IP address using the UEFI or BIOS

#### Accessing the UEFI/BIOS using a serial console (physical connection)

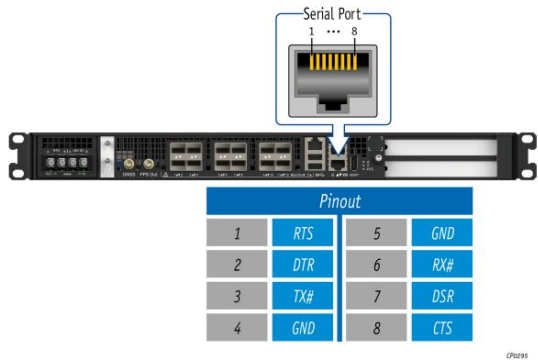
#### Prerequisites

1	A physical connection to the device is required. <b>NOTE:</b> The serial console port is compatible with Cisco 72-3383-01 cable.
2	A serial console tool is installed on the remote computer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Speed (Baud): 115200</li> <li>• Data bits: 8</li> <li>• Stop bits: 1</li> <li>• Parity: None</li> <li>• Flow Control: None</li> <li>• Recommended emulation mode: VT100+</li> </ul> <b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended.

Relevant section:

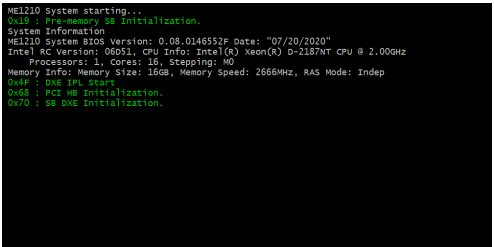
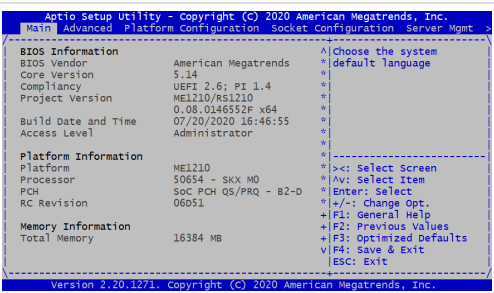
[Sending a BREAK signal over a serial connection](#)

### Port location



### Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu



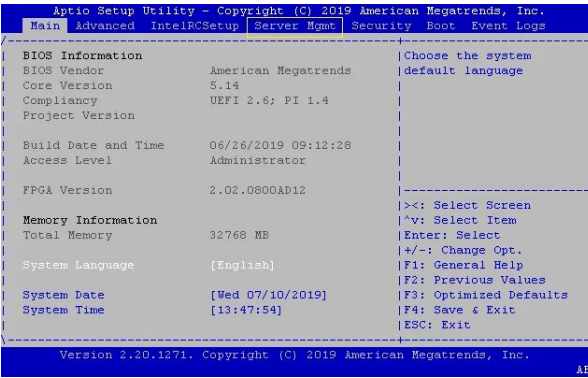
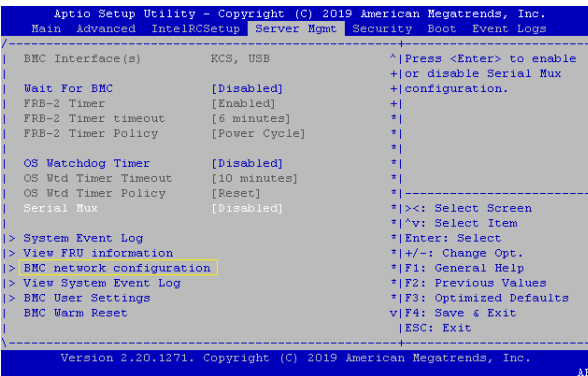
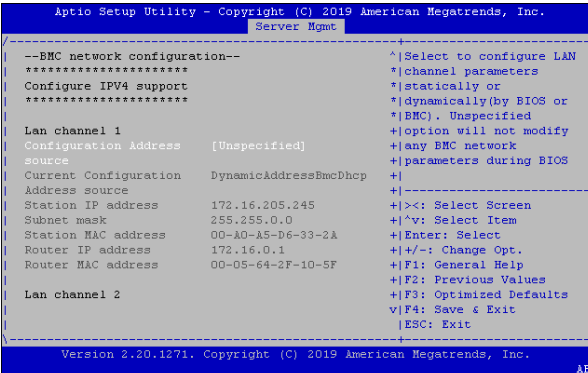
Step_1	From a computer with a physical connection to the serial port, open a serial console tool and start the communication between the console and the port to which the device is connected.	
Step_2	<p>Perform a server reset using one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the server is currently running an installed operating system, log in and issue the appropriate reboot command.</li> <li>• If the server is currently running the integrated UEFI shell, issue the "reset" command.</li> <li>• Send a "BREAK" signal over the serial connection using the method provided in the terminal emulator.</li> <li>• Disconnect all the input power connections for 30 seconds and reconnect them.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If an operating system is installed on the device, a method based on a hot key might not work properly. If this is the case, reset the server as recommended for the operating system.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When a server reset command is sent, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display.</p>	 <pre>ME1210 System starting... 0x39 : System Memory SR Initialization. System Information ME1210 System BIOS Version: 0.08.0146552F Date: "07/20/2020" Intel RC Version: 06051, CPU Info: Intel(R) Xeon(R) D-2187NT CPU @ 2.00GHz Processors: 1, Cores: 16, Stepping: M0 Memory Info: Memory Size: 16Gb, Memory speed: 2666MHz, RAS Mode: Indep 0x44 : DRX IPL Start. 0x68 : PCH MB Initialization. 0x70 : SB DRX Initialization.</pre>
Step_3	<p>When the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display confirmation message "Entering Setup..."</p>	 <pre>Version 2.20.1271, Copyright (C) 2020 American Megatrends, Inc. BIOS Date: 07/20/2020 16:46:55 Version 0.08.0146552F ME1210/RS1210 Firmware Version 0.08.0146552F Press &lt;DEL&gt; or &lt;F2&gt; to enter setup. Press &lt;F7&gt; for boot menu.</pre>
Step_4	<p>The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen displays "Entering Setup..."</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It will take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p>	 <pre>Version 2.20.1271, Copyright (C) 2020 American Megatrends, Inc. BIOS Date: 07/20/2020 16:46:55 Version 0.08.0146552F ME1210/RS1210 Firmware Version 0.08.0146552F Press &lt;DEL&gt; or &lt;F2&gt; to enter setup. Press &lt;F7&gt; for boot menu. Entering Setup...</pre>
Step_5	The UEFI/BIOS setup menu is displayed.	 <pre>Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2020 American Megatrends, Inc. Main Advanced Platform Configuration Socket Configuration Server Mgmt &gt; ----- BIOS Information BIOS Vendor American Megatrends *  Choose the system Core Version 5.14 *  default language Compliance UEFI 2.6; PI 1.4 *  Project Version ME1210/RS1210 *  Build Date and Time 0.08.0146552F x64 *  Access Level 07/20/2020 16:46:55 *  Administrator *  ----- Platform Information Platform ME1210 * &gt;&lt;: Select Screen Processor 50654 - SKX M0 * &gt;V: Select Item PCH soc PCH QS/PRQ - B2-D * &gt;Enter: Select RC Revision 06051 * +/-: Change Opt. ----- Memory Information Total Memory 16384 MB * +F1: General help * +F2: Previous Values * +F3: Optimized Defaults * +F4: Save &amp; Exit * ESC: Exit ----- Version 2.20.1271, Copyright (C) 2020 American Megatrends, Inc.</pre>

## Accessing the BMC network configuration menu

In a platform with an Ethernet switch IO module, the BMC is accessible via two network connections. Depending on the configuration interface used, the names for the network connections change.

IPMI and UEFI/BIOS	Redfish and Web UI	Network connectivity
LAN channel 1	eth0	Front panel Srv 5
LAN channel 2	eth1	Internal server port 4 → switch port 16 *

\* The BMC can then communicate through SFP ports Sw 1 to 12, depending on switch configuration.

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS menu, navigate to tab Server Mgmt .	
Step_2	Select BMC network configuration .	
Step_3	<p>The BMC network configuration menu is displayed.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the platform is powered up after being shut off, the UEFI/BIOS may load before the BMC has received its IP address. In this case, the UEFI/BIOS menu information will need to be refreshed by restarting the server and re-entering the UEFI/BIOS .</p>	

## Discovering the platform BMC IP address using DHCP server logs

### Prerequisites

1	Access to the DHCP server logs is required.
2	The MAC address is known for the BMC interface connected to the network for which the IP address is required.

Relevant section:

[MAC addresses](#) (to find the first assigned BMC MAC address)

### Procedure

DHCP IP assignment is specific to the network infrastructure to which the platform is being integrated. The assistance of the network administrator may therefore be necessary to obtain the IP address of the device (e.g., BMC, switch NOS, server OS).

If you have the MAC address of the device, you can search the DHCP server logs to determine the IP address assigned to this specific device. Refer to section MAC addresses to determine those specific to a platform.

Various DHCP server services may offer other search capabilities. Please consult the network administrator or the DHCP server documentation. The following example illustrates a command prompt method for use with a Linux based DHCP server. This may need to be adjusted to reflect a specific DHCP infrastructure (this action can generally also be done through a DHCP server Web interface).

```
DHCP_Server:~$ cat /var/log/messages * | grep -i 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a
Mar  1 13:44:15 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPDISCOVER from 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
Mar  1 13:44:16 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPOFFER from 172.16.211.126 to 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
Mar  1 13:44:16 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPREQUEST for 172.16.211.126 (172.16.0.10) from 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
Mar  1 13:44:16 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPACK on 172.16.211.126 to 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
```

Variable	Description
00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a	MAC address discovered for the device (refer to section MAC addresses )
ens192	Linux DHCP server network interface name
172.16.211.126	IP address assigned to the device by the DHCP server
172.16.0.10	Linux DHCP server IP address

## Discovering the switch NOS IP address

The switch NOS IP address can be discovered:

- Using DHCP Dynamic DNS update
- Using the switch NOS serial console CLI
- Using the DHCP server logs

### Discovering the switch NOS IP address with DHCP Dynamic DNS update

#### Prerequisites

1	A DHCP server with active Dynamic DNS update feature is available.
2	A remote computer configured with the same DNS information is available.
3	The remote computer has access to the switch NOS network subnet.
4	The first assigned MAC address of the switch NOS is known.

Relevant section:

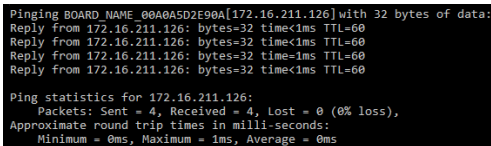
[MAC addresses](#) (to find the first assigned switch NOS MAC address)

#### Procedure

When requesting a DHCP lease, the platform switch NOS supplies the DHCP server with information to update the DNS system. If the DHCP server is configured for Dynamic DNS update, an entry will be added for a host name that is made up of the "NOS" prefix and the first switch NOS MAC address. Refer to section MAC addresses to determine those specific to a platform.

For example, if we use the first switch NOS MAC address ( 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a ), the host name would be: NOS 00A0A5D2E90A . Note that this is the default configuration, but that the parameter is user configurable. The method described here only works if the default hostname is still in effect.

The following example illustrates the method using DNS auto-registration with a remote computer.

Step_1	<p>Ping the host name.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ ping NOS00A0A5D2E90A</pre>	 <pre>Pinging BOARD_NAME_00A0A5D2E90A[172.16.211.126] with 32 bytes of data: Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60 Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60 Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60 Reply from 172.16.211.126: bytes=32 time&lt;1ms TTL=60  Ping statistics for 172.16.211.126:     Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),     Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:         Minimum = 0ms, Maximum = 1ms, Average = 0ms</pre>
--------	--	---

### Discovering the switch NOS IP address through the switch NOS serial console CLI

#### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	The remote computer has access to the management network subnet.
3	An SSH client tool is installed on the remote computer. <b>NOTE:</b> PuTTY is recommended for Windows environments and SSH is recommended for Linux environments.

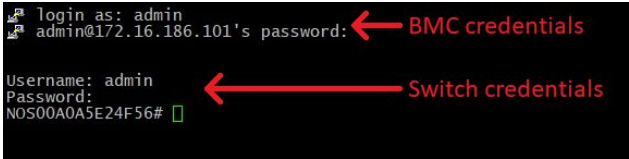
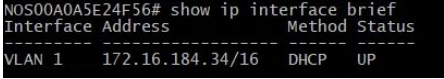
Relevant sections:

[Default user names and passwords](#)

[Accessing the switch NOS](#)

## Procedure

NOTE: When using Serial over SSH, to quit the session press **Enter** followed by ~ .

Step_1	Using an SSH client tool, open an SSH session with the following parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>BMC IP address</li> <li>Port number: 2201 (after login, the BMC will automatically redirect communication to the switch NOS serial console)</li> </ul>
Step_2	Log in the BMC using the appropriate BMC credentials. Upon successful login, press <b>Enter</b> to get a response from the switch NOS CLI. If a NOS serial console session is not already active, another set of credentials will be requested. Use the appropriate switch credentials to complete the login into the NOS. 
Step_3	Use the following command to discover the switch NOS IP address. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>show ip interface brief</b> 

## Discovering the switch NOS IP address using DHCP server logs

### Prerequisites

1	Access to the DHCP server logs is required.
2	The first assigned MAC address of the switch NOS is known.

Relevant section:

[MAC addresses](#) (to find the first assigned switch NOS MAC address)

### Procedure

DHCP IP assignment is specific to the network infrastructure to which the platform is being integrated. The assistance of the network administrator may therefore be necessary to obtain the IP address of the device (e.g., BMC, switch NOS, server OS).

If you have the MAC address of the device, you can search the DHCP server logs to determine the IP address assigned to this specific device. Refer to section MAC addresses to determine those specific to a platform.

Various DHCP server services may offer other search capabilities. Please consult the network administrator or the DHCP server documentation. The following example illustrates a command prompt method for use with a Linux based DHCP server. This may need to be adjusted to reflect a specific DHCP infrastructure (this action can generally also be done through a DHCP server Web interface).

```
DHCP_Server:~$ cat /var/log/messages * | grep -i 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a
Mar  1 13:44:15 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPDISCOVER from 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
Mar  1 13:44:16 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPOFFER on 172.16.211.126 to 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
Mar  1 13:44:16 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPREQUEST for 172.16.211.126 (172.16.0.10) from 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
Mar  1 13:44:16 DHCP_Server dhcpd: DHCPACK on 172.16.211.126 to 00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a via ens192
```

Variable	Description
00:a0:a5:d2:e9:0a	MAC address discovered for the device (refer to section MAC addresses )
ens192	Linux DHCP server network interface name
172.16.211.126	IP address assigned to the device by the DHCP server
172.16.0.10	Linux DHCP server IP address

# Default user names and passwords

Table of contents

- [Management interface \(BMC\)](#)
- [Switch network operating system \(NOS\)](#)
- [Operating system](#)
- [UEFI/BIOS](#)

NOTE: For security reasons, it is important to change the default user names and passwords as soon as possible. Refer to [Configuring and managing users](#).

## Management interface (BMC)

The BMC is accessible via:

- Web UI
- Redfish
- IPMI

All the access methods share the same users.

User name	Password
admin	ready2go

## Switch network operating system (NOS)

User name	Password
admin	ready2go

## Operating system

The user name and password are application-specific.

However, if Kontron provided an operating system, the credentials will be the following:

User name	Password
root	kontron

## UEFI/BIOS

No default password is set.

# Software installation and deployment

## Preparing for operating system installation

Step_1	Choose the operating system needed based on the requirements of your application. It is recommended to choose one from the list of validated operating systems.
Step_2	Confirm the OS version to be installed includes or has drivers supporting the platform components listed in the PCI mapping.
Step_3	If applicable, download the ISO file of the OS to be installed.

For a list of known compatible operating systems, refer to [Validated operating systems](#).

For information on components, refer to the [PCI mapping](#).

# Installing an operating system on a server

Table of contents

- [Installing an OS on a server using the KVM](#)
  - [Launching the KVM](#)
  - [Mounting the operating system image via virtual media](#)
  - [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
  - [Selecting the boot order from boot override](#)
  - [Completing operating system installation](#)
- [Installing an OS on a server using PXE \(Boot from LAN\)](#)
- [Installing an OS on a server using a USB storage device](#)

The operating system can be installed using the following methods :

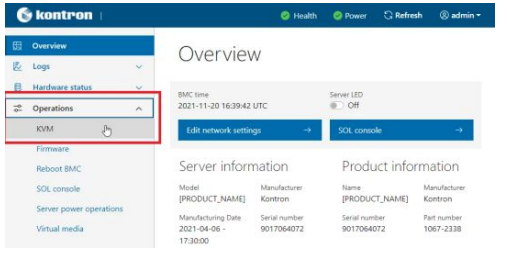
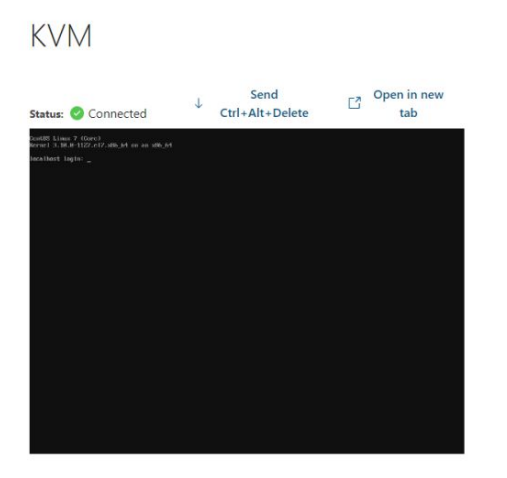
- The [KVM](#)
- [PXE \(Boot from LAN\)](#)
- A [USB storage device](#)

## Installing an OS on a server using the KVM

Relevant section:

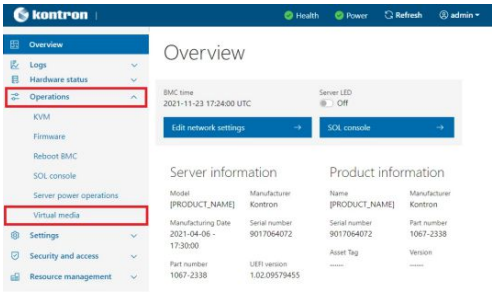
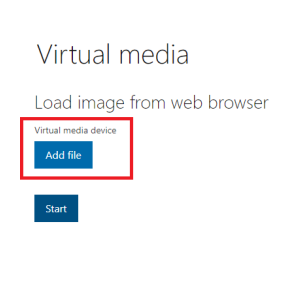
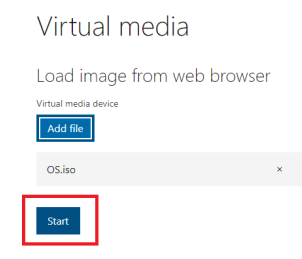
[Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#)

### Launching the KVM

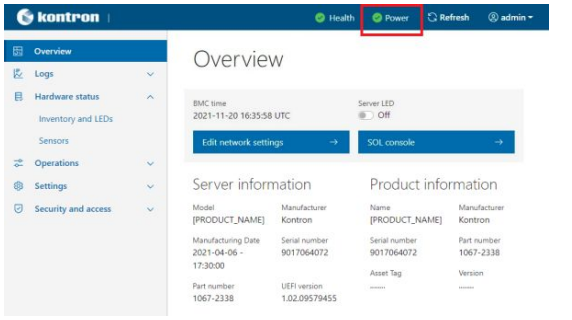
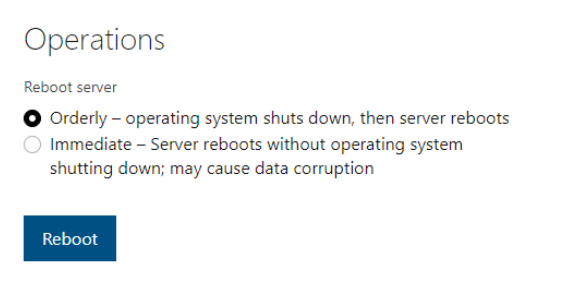
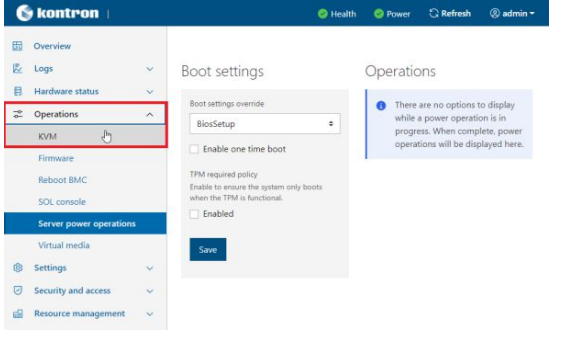

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, click on <b>Operations</b> and then on <b>KVM</b> .	
Step_2	A new browser window opens and displays the virtual server screen.	

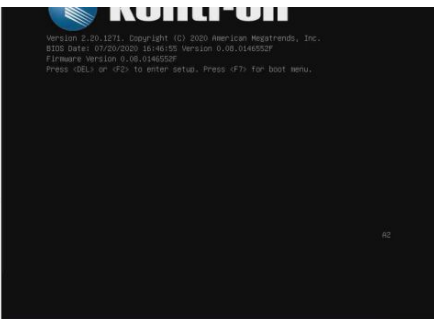

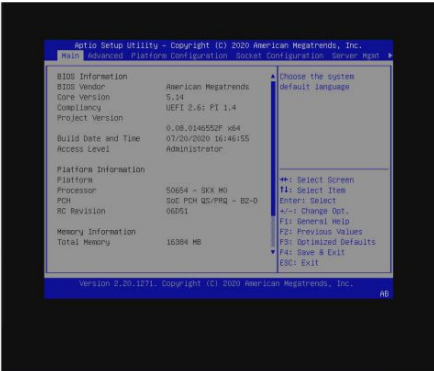
### Mounting the operating system image via virtual media



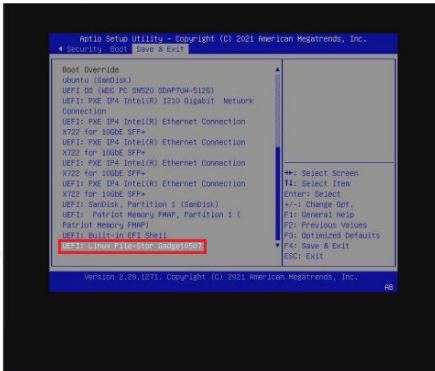
Step_1	From the Operations menu, select Virtual media	
Step_2	Click on Add file to browse for the ISO file.	
Step_3	Click on Start to access virtual media from the OS.	

### Accessing the UEFI/BIOS setup menu

Step_1	From the BMC Web UI, click on the Power button.	
Step_2	From the Reboot server section, select Orderly and then click on Reboot .	
Step_3	From the Operations menu, click on KVM.	
Step_4	<p>When the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When a reset server command is launched, it may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may take a few seconds for the UEFI/BIOS sign on screen to display</p>	

	the confirmation message "Entering Setup...".	
Step_5	<p>The UEFI/BIOS sign on screen displays "Entering Setup...".</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> It may take several seconds to display and enter the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.</p>	<p>KVM</p> <p>Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected <span style="float: right;">↓ Send Ctrl+Alt+Delete <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Open in new tab</span></span></p> 
Step_6	The UEFI/BIOS setup menu will be displayed.	<p>KVM</p> <p>Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected <span style="float: right;">↓ Send Ctrl+Alt+Delete <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Open in new tab</span></span></p> 

### Selecting the boot order from boot override

Step_1	<p>From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu and using the keyboard arrows, select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu. In the <b>Boot Override</b> section, select <b>UEFI: Linux File-Stor Gadgetxxxx</b> and press <b>Enter</b>. The server will reboot and the media installation process will start.</p>	<p>KVM</p> <p>Status: <span style="color: green;">●</span> Connected <span style="float: right;">↓ Send Ctrl+Alt+Delete <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Open in new tab</span></span></p> 
--------	---	--

### Completing operating system installation

Step_1	Complete the installation by following the on-screen prompts of the specific OS installed.
--------	--

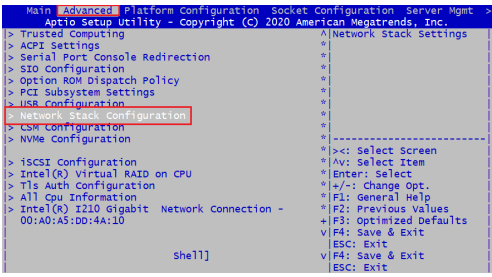
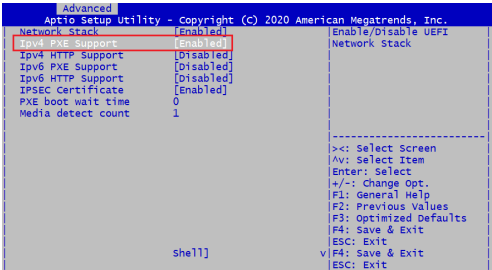
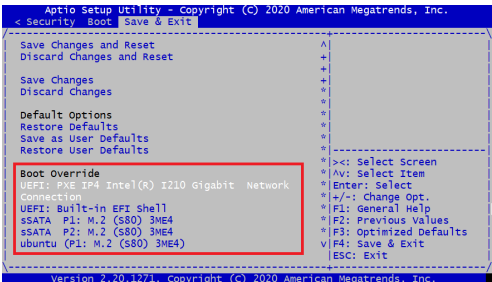
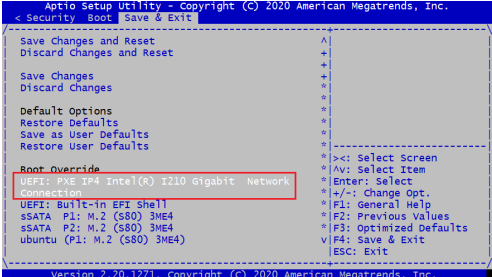
# Installing an OS on a server using PXE (Boot from LAN)

Relevant sections:

[Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#)

[Platform power management](#)

NOTE: Using Boot from LAN requires a PXE server architecture.

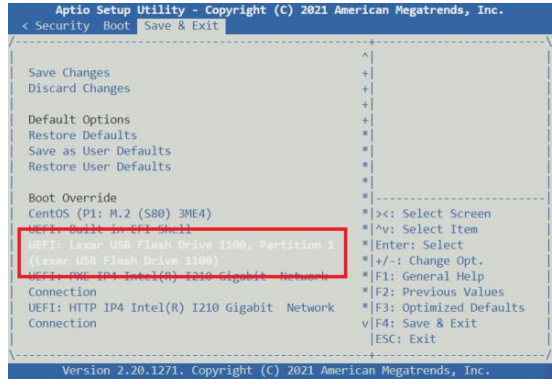
Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, select the <b>Advanced</b> tab and then the <b>Network Stack Configuration</b> submenu.	
Step_2	Set <b>Network Stack</b> to <b>Enabled</b> . Set <b>IPv4 PXE Support</b> or <b>IPv6 PXE Support</b> , depending on the application, to <b>Enabled</b> .	
Step_3	Reboot the system and access the UEFI/BIOS setup menu again.	
Step_4	Navigate to the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu and then to the <b>Boot Override</b> section.	
Step_5	Choose the PXE option desired.	

# Installing an OS on a server using a USB storage device

Relevant sections:

[Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#)

[Platform power management](#)


Step_1	Create a bootable USB key using the appropriate software. <b>NOTE:</b> RUFUS is recommended.
Step_2	Insert the USB key into one of the USB ports of the front panel.
Step_3	Power on the platform and access the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.
Step_4	Navigate to the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu and then to the <b>Boot Override</b> section. 
Step_5	Choose the USB option desired.

# Verifying operating system installation

Relevant sections:

- [Product architecture](#)
- [PCI mapping](#)
- [Accessing the operating system of a server](#)
- [Common software installation](#)

## Verifying support for devices

 All the results and commands may vary depending on the operating system and the devices added.

Step_1	Reboot the OS as recommended, then access the OS command prompt.	
Step_2	Install <code>ethtool</code> , <code>ipmitool</code> and <code>pciutils</code> using the package manager, and update the operating system packages. The <code>ipmitool</code> version recommended is 1.8.18. Example for CentOS: LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>yum update</code> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>yum install pciutils</code> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>yum install ethtool</code> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>yum install ipmitool</code>  <b>NOTE:</b> Updating the packages may take a few minutes.	
Step_3	Verify that no error messages or warnings are displayed in <code>dmesg</code> using the following commands. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>dmesg   grep -i fail</code> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>dmesg   grep -i Error</code> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>dmesg   grep -i Warning</code> LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>dmesg   grep -i "Call trace"</code> <b>NOTE:</b> If there are any messages or warnings displayed, refer to the operating system's documentation to fix them.	
Step_4	Verify that the DIMMs are detected. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>free -h</code>	<pre>[~]# free -h               total        used        free      shared  buff/cache   available Mem:           15G         2.11M         14G          17M         191M         14G Swap:          0B           0B           0B</pre>
Step_5	Verify that all the storage devices are detected. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>lsblk</code>	<pre>[~]# lsblk NAME MAJ:MIN RM  SIZE RO TYPE MOUNTPOINT sda   8:0    0  29.8G  0 disk  --sda1 8:1    0   512M  0 part  --sda2 8:2    0   29.3G  0 part sdb   8:16   0  29.8G  0 disk</pre>
Step_6	Confirm the control plane network interface controller is loaded by the <code>igb</code> driver. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>lspci -s 04:00 -v</code>  <b>NOTE:</b> You should discover one 1GbE NIC.	<pre>[ME1310][172.16.171.93][~]# lspci -s 04:00 -v 04:00.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation I210 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 03) Subsystem: Kontron Device 0160 Flags: bus master, fast devsel, latency 0, IRQ 16, NUMA node 0 Memory at a5180000 (32-bit, non-prefetchable) [size=512K] I/O ports at 3000 [size=32] Memory at a5200000 (32-bit, non-prefetchable) [size=16K] Expansion ROM at a5100000 [disabled] [size=512K] Capabilities: [40] Power Management version 3 Capabilities: [50] MSI: Enable+ Count=1/1 Maskable+ 64bit+ Capabilities: [70] MSI-X: Enable+ Count=5 Masked- Capabilities: [a0] Express Endpoint, MSI 00 Capabilities: [100] Advanced Error Reporting Capabilities: [140] Device Serial Number 00-a0-a5-ff-ff-e2-cf-e1 Capabilities: [1a0] Transaction Processing Hints Kernel driver in use: igb Kernel modules: igb</pre>
Step_7	Confirm the data plane network interface controllers are loaded by the <code>ice</code> driver. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>lspci -s 89:00 -v</code> <b>NOTE:</b> You should discover up to four 25GbE NIC.	<pre>[~]# lspci -s 89:00 -v 89:00.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation Ethernet Connection E823-C for backplane Subsystem: Intel Corporation Device 0000 Flags: bus master, fast devsel, latency 0, IRQ 16, NUMA node 0 Memory at 23ff000000 (64-bit, prefetchable) [size=128M] Memory at 23ffc00000 (64-bit, prefetchable) [size=64K] Expansion ROM at e6600000 [disabled] [size=1M] Capabilities: [40] Power Management version 3 Capabilities: [50] MSI: Enable- Count=1/1 Maskable+ 64bit+ Capabilities: [70] MSI-X: Enable+ Count=512 Masked- Capabilities: [a0] Express Endpoint, MSI 00 Capabilities: [e0] Vital Product Data Capabilities: [100] Advanced Error Reporting Capabilities: [140] Alternative Routing-ID Interpretation (ARI) Capabilities: [160] Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) Capabilities: [1a0] Transaction Processing Hints Capabilities: [1b0] Access Control Services Kernel driver in use: ice Kernel modules: ice</pre>
Step_8	Confirm that all the network interfaces are detected and get the list of device names. The following script requires Bash shell. Enter the following block of commands at the LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>ETH_NAMES=\$(grep PCI_SLOT_NAME /sys/class/net/*/device/uevent   cut -d '/' -f 5)</code> <code>for ETH_NAME in \$ETH_NAMES; \</code> <code>do echo -e "\$ETH_NAME: \$(ethtool -i \$ETH_NAME   grep -E 'driver bus-info')\n"; \</code> <code>done</code>  <b>NOTE:</b> You should discover one 1GbE NIC and up to four 25GbE NIC.	<pre>[~]# ETH_NAMES=\$(grep PCI_SLOT_NAME /sys/class/net/*/device/uevent   cut -d '/' -f 5) [~]# for ETH_NAME in \$ETH_NAMES; \ &gt; do echo -e "\$ETH_NAME: \$(ethtool -i \$ETH_NAME   grep -E 'driver bus-info')\n"; \ &gt; done eno1: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.3 eno2: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.2 eno3: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.1 eno4: driver: ice bus-info: 0000:89:00.0 eno5: driver: igb bus-info: 0000:04:00.0 [~]#</pre>
Step_9	Configure network interface controllers based on your requirements and network topology.	



# Platform resources for customer application

Table of contents

- [Application ready indication via the power LED](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Script example](#)
- [Customer-specific temperature sensors](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Script example](#)
  - [Additional low level information](#)
    - [Port address offset](#)
  - [Converting a temperature to hexadecimal](#)
- [Configuring the virtual FRU for a PCIe add-on card](#)
  - [Listing the available FRUs](#)
  - [Adding a virtual FRU](#)
  - [Removing a virtual FRU](#)

This section describes platform resources to be coded into the customer application to benefit from all the platform functionalities.

## Application ready indication via the power LED

The green power LED can be configured to indicate that the application is ready.

NOTES:

- The action will be necessary at every power up.
- The LED cannot return to blinking state. A power cycle action will be required.
- The action is harmless if done multiple times.

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed.
2	Access to the OS is required.
3	The OS App. Ready Led Control UEFI/BIOS option must be set to <b>Disabled</b> .

Relevant sections:

[Accessing the operating system of a server](#)

[Configuring UEFI/BIOS options](#)

### Script example

The script example provided is in C.

Value 0x01 must be written to the I/O register 0xA20 (byte wide).

```
#include <sys/io.h>
int main(void)
{
    iopl(3);
    outb(0x01, 0xa0f);
    iopl(0);
    return 0;
}
```

## Customer-specific temperature sensors

Some temperature sensors can be manually set from the operating system of the server. Once a value is set, it must be sent periodically within 5 seconds so the fan algorithm does not increase fans to maximum. This is to insure that if the operating system becomes unresponsive, the fans will still cool the system adequately. The valid temperature range is -127 °C to 127 °C. If the value is not updated within 5 seconds, the sensor will be set to maximum value at 128, which will trigger an Upper critical event with maximum fan speed.

The sensors that can be updated in this way are:

- Temp PCIe 1 mbox
- Temp PCIe 2 mbox

By modifying the scripts provided below, the sensors can be renamed.

#### NOTICE

Default platform sensor thresholds should not be changed. They have been set to ensure proper operation. Should you decide to change them, use caution as inappropriate settings could cause a property damage.

### Prerequisites

1	An OS is installed.
2	Access to the OS is required.

Relevant sections:

[Accessing the operating system of a server](#)

[Configuring sensors and thermal parameters](#)

[Sensor list](#)

## Script example

The following example uses 2 scripts.

The first script (daemon.sh) is a daemon that monitors a file for new sensor values. It will convert human readable sensor information and write it to the correct port. This script should be launched at boot.

To start the script, type `./daemon.sh start`

```
daemon.sh

#!/usr/bin/env bash

sensor_daemon_pipe=/tmp/sensor_daemon_pipe
sensor_names=("Temp PCIe 1 mbox" "Temp PCIe 2 mbox" "" "" "" "" "" "")

get_sensor_index() {
    name=$1
    for i in "${!sensor_names[@]}; do
        if [[ "${sensor_names[$i]}" = "${name}" ]]; then
            echo "${i}";
        fi
    done
}

start() {
    trap "rm $sensor_daemon_pipe" EXIT

    if [[ ! -p $sensor_daemon_pipe ]]; then
        mkfifo $sensor_daemon_pipe
    fi

    echo "Daemon started"

    while read data < $sensor_daemon_pipe; do
        sensor_name=$(echo $data | cut -f1 -d=)
        sensor_value=$(echo $data | cut -f2 -d=)
        index=$(get_sensor_index "$sensor_name")
        let TEMP_PORT=0xa28+$index
        hexa=$(printf '%02x\n' $sensor_value)
        printf "\x$hexa" | dd of=/dev/port bs=1 count=1 seek=$((TEMP_PORT)) status=none
    done
}

case "$1" in
    'start')
        start
        ;;
    *)
        echo
        echo "Usage: $0 { start }"
        echo
        exit 1
        ;;
esac
```

The other script sends new sensor values to the file monitored using the following syntax:

`<Sensor Name>=<Sensor Value>`

```
client.sh

#!/usr/bin/env bash

sensor_daemon_pipe=/tmp/sensor_daemon_pipe

echo "Client Started"
while true; do
    echo "Temp PCIe 2 mbox=50" > $sensor_daemon_pipe
    sleep 2
    echo "Temp PCIe 2 mbox=30" > $sensor_daemon_pipe
    sleep 2
    echo "Temp PCIe 2 mbox=60" > $sensor_daemon_pipe
    sleep 2
done
```

NOTE: The scripts were tested with Ubuntu 20.04. They should work on any Linux system that supports Bash version 4.x+.



## Additional low level information

The information in this section is only needed if you are writing directly in the memory port associated with the sensors.

### Port address offset

The address offset gives access to the register of the desired sensor.

Sensor	Address offset
Temp PCIe 1 mbox	0xa28
Temp PCIe 2 mbox	0xa29

### Converting a temperature to hexadecimal

Positive values are represented by hexadecimal numbers from 0x00 to 0x7F.

- 0°C is the smallest positive value available and corresponds to 0x00.
- 127°C is the largest positive value and corresponds to 0x7F.

Negative values are represented by hexadecimal numbers from 0x81 to 0xFF.

- -1°C is the smallest negative value available and corresponds to 0xFF.
- -127°C is the largest negative value and corresponds to 0x81.

Value 0x80 is marked as n/a, which means no reading.

## Configuring the virtual FRU for a PCIe add-on card

In order to automatically report their temperatures to the BMC, some PCIe add-in cards need to be registered into the BMC virtual FRU.

Relevant sections:

[Hardware compatibility list](#)

[Sensor list](#)

[Accessing a BMC](#)

[Configuring sensors and thermal parameters](#)

### Listing the available FRUs

Step_1	To verify if a specific PCIe add-in card can be registered in the virtual FRU, use the following command. RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.VirtualPcieFru
	<pre>curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.VirtualPcieFru {   "AvailableFrus": [     "P3iMB"   ],   "PCIE1": "P3iMB",   "PCIE2": "" }</pre>

### Adding a virtual FRU

Step_1	Add a PCIe card to the virtual FRU using the following command. PCI_SLOT can either be PCIe1 or PCIe2. RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header "Content-Type: application/json" --data '{"Oem": {"Kontron": {"VirtualPcieFru": {"PCI_SLOT": " [FRU] "}}}}'   jq
	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header "Content-Type: application/json" --data '{"Oem": {"Kontron": {"VirtualPcieFru": {"PCI1": "P3iMB"}}}}'   jq {   "Oem": {     "Kontron": {       "VirtualPcieFru": {         "PCI1": "P3iMB"       }     }   } }</pre>
Step_2	Reboot the BMC to apply the changes. RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/Actions/Manager.Reset --header "Content-Type: application/json" --data '{"ResetType": "GracefulRestart"}'   jq
	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/Actions/Manager.Reset --header "Content-Type: application/json" --data '{"ResetType": "GracefulRestart"}'   jq {   "@odata.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "Successfully Completed Request",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Success",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>


## Removing a virtual FRU

Step_1	<p>To unregister a PCIe add-in card from the virtual FRU, use the following command. PCI_SLOT can either be PCIe1 or PCIe2.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header "Content-Type: application/json" --data '{"Oem": {"Kontron": {"VirtualPcieFru": {"PCI_SLOT": ""}}}}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header "Content-Type: application/json" --data '{"Oem": {"Kontron": {"VirtualPcieFru": {"PCIe1": ""}}}}'   jq {   "Oem": {     "Kontron": {       "VirtualPcieFru": {         "PCIe1": ""       }     }   } }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Reboot the BMC to apply the changes.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/Actions/Manager.Reset --header "Content-Type: application/json" --data '{"ResetType": "GracefulRestart"}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/Actions/Manager.Reset --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"ResetType": "GracefulRestart"}'   jq {   "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "Successfully Completed Request",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Success",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>

# Common software installation

Table of contents

- [Required software tools](#)
- [Recommended software tools](#)

	Commands may vary depending on the OS and the package manager. Some tools may not be required depending on the functionalities supported for the platform.
---	---

## Required software tools

Tool	Description
ipmitool	IPMI utility for controlling and monitoring the devices through the IPMI interfaces of the platform.
ethtool	Network driver tool used in the documentation.
pciutils	Tool used to manage PCIe add-in cards connected to the platform.
hdparm	Command line program for Linux.
nvme-cli	Userspace tooling to control NVMe drives.

## Recommended software tools

Tool	Description
PuTTY	Serial console tool recommended in the documentation.
jq	Command-line tool used to parse raw JSON data to make the Redfish API response human-readable.
cURL	HTTP/FTP client tool used to navigate the Web API using a command-line tool.
JSON viewer browser add-on	If the Redfish API is used through an Internet browser, a JSON viewer is recommended to make the output human-readable.


# Configuring

## Configuring and managing users

# Configuring and managing BMC users

## Table of contents

- [Privilege levels](#)
- [Configuring user names and passwords](#)
  - [Using the Web UI](#)
  - [Using Redfish](#)
  - [Using IPMI](#)
- [Adding a user](#)
  - [Using the Web UI](#)
  - [Using Redfish](#)
  - [Using IPMI](#)
- [Deleting a user](#)
  - [Using the Web UI](#)
  - [Using Redfish](#)
  - [Using IPMI](#)
- [Configuring privilege level](#)
  - [Using the Web UI](#)
  - [Using Redfish](#)
  - [Using IPMI](#)


 It is recommended to change the administrator password immediately after accessing the Web UI.

## Privilege levels

This section describes the permissions associated with the different privilege levels in the BMC Web UI and Redfish.

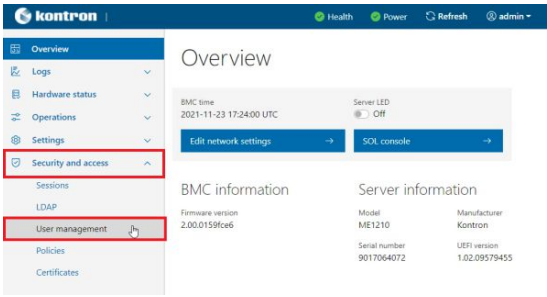
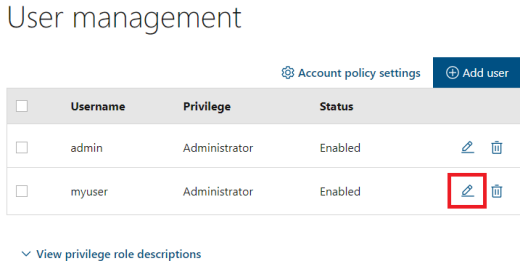
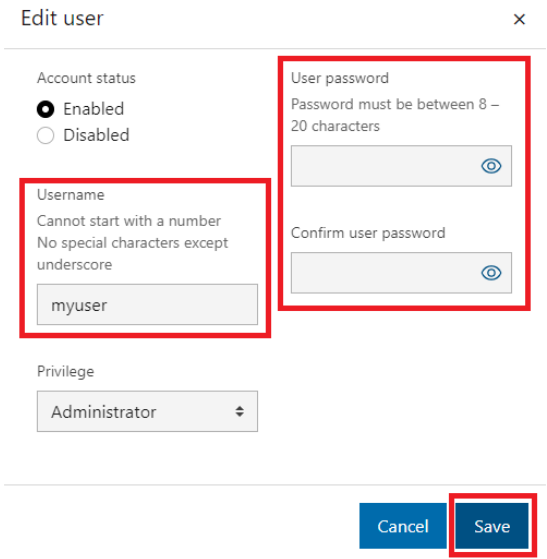
Roles		Description
BMC Web UI and Redfish	IPMI	
Admin	0x4 - Administrator	Users are allowed to configure everything regarding the BMC (including user management and network configuration). Users will have full administrative access.
Operator	0x3 - Operator	Users are allowed to view and control basic operations. This includes rebooting of the host. Users are not allowed to change anything regarding user management and network configuration. Users can change their own passwords.
User	0x1 - Callback	Users only have read access and can't change any behavior of the system. Users can change their own passwords.
No-Access	0xF - No Access	Users with this privilege level will not have access to the BMC.

## Configuring user names and passwords

 Note that the password field is mandatory, **must have a minimum of 8 characters and not use dictionary words** . It is recommended, but not mandatory, to enter a strong password consisting of at least one upper case letter, alpha-numeric character, and special character. **You must avoid symbols from the extended ASCII table as they are not managed by the IPMI tool.**

### Using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Security and access</b> and then on <b>User management</b> .	
Step_2	Select the user to manage from the <b>User management</b> section.	
Step_3	<p>Change the username and/or the password and confirm modifications by clicking on <b>Save</b> .</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The password needs to be updated to update any other parameter.</p>	

## Using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>List the users available.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts   jq</pre> 
Step_2	<p>Change the password.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/ AccountService/Accounts/ [USERNAME] --header 'Content-type: application/json' --data '{"Password": [NEW_PASSWORD] , "UserName": [NEW_USERNAME] }'   jq</pre> 


## Using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To

use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17` .

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port, print the BMC user list. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user list [LAN_CHANNEL]</p>	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool user list 1 ID Name      Callin Link Auth IPMI Msg Channel Priv Limit 1   false false true  ADMINISTRATOR 2   admin    false false true  ADMINISTRATOR 3   user     true  true  true  ADMINISTRATOR 4   true    false false NO ACCESS 5   true    false false NO ACCESS 6   true    false false NO ACCESS 7   true    false false NO ACCESS 8   true    false false NO ACCESS 9   true    false false NO ACCESS 10  true    false false NO ACCESS</pre>
Step_2	<p>Identify the ID number of the user to be changed.</p>	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool user list 1 ID Name      Callin Link Auth IPMI Msg Channel Priv Limit 1   false false true  ADMINISTRATOR 2   admin    false false true  ADMINISTRATOR 3   user     true  true  true  ADMINISTRATOR 4   true    false false NO ACCESS 5   true    false false NO ACCESS 6   true    false false NO ACCESS 7   true    false false NO ACCESS 8   true    false false NO ACCESS 9   true    false false NO ACCESS 10  true    false false NO ACCESS</pre>
Step_3	<p>Change the user name.  LocalServer_OSPrompt: ~# ipmitool user set name [IPMI user ID] [new IPMI user name] <b>NOTE:</b> The first and second user names of the user list are reserved fields and therefore can't be modified.</p>	
Step_4	<p>Verify that the user name has updated correctly by printing the user list. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user list [LAN_CHANNEL]</p>	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool user list 1 ID Name      Callin Link Auth IPMI Msg Channel Priv Limit 1   false false true  ADMINISTRATOR 2   admin    false false true  ADMINISTRATOR 3   operator true  true  true  ADMINISTRATOR 4   true    false false NO ACCESS 5   true    false false NO ACCESS 6   true    false false NO ACCESS 7   true    false false NO ACCESS 8   true    false false NO ACCESS 9   true    false false NO ACCESS 10  true    false false NO ACCESS</pre>
Step_5	<p>Change the password. LocalServer_OSPrompt: ~# ipmitool user set password [IPMI user ID] [new IPMI password]</p>	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool user set password 3 newpassword Set User Password command successful (user 3)</pre>
Step_6	<p>Verify that the credentials updated correctly by using an access method that requires a login. <b>NOTE:</b> Other parameters could limit the accessibility of the user that is trying to manage the BMC. Refer to ipmitool documentation.</p>	

## Adding a user

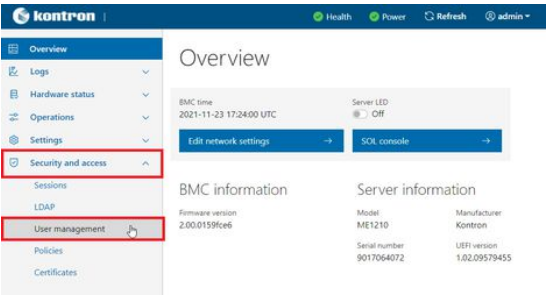
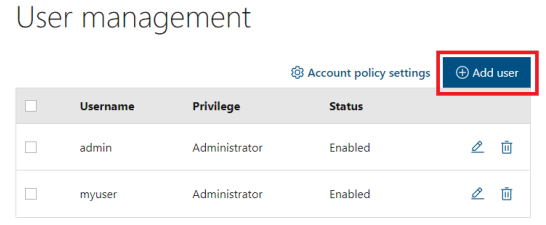
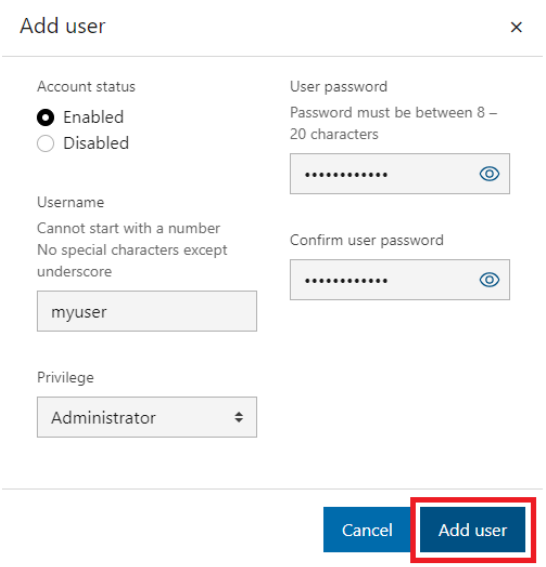


Note that the password field is mandatory, must have a minimum of 8 characters and not use dictionary words . It is recommended, but not mandatory, to enter a strong password consisting of at least one upper case letter, alpha-numeric character, and special character. **You must avoid symbols from the extended ASCII table as they are not managed by the IPMI tool.**

### Using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.



Step_1	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Security and access</b> and then on <b>User management</b> .	
Step_2	Click on <b>Add user</b> .	
Step_3	Fill the required fields and click on <b>Add user</b> .	

## Using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>List the privilege levels available.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles",   "@odata.type": "#RoleCollection.RoleCollection",   "Description": "BMC User Roles",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/Administrator"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/Operator"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/ReadOnly"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/NoAccess"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 4,   "Name": "Roles Collection" }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Using another user with administrator privilege, create the user.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Password": [PASSWORD], "RoleId": [ROLE_ID], "UserName": [USER_NAME]}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Password": "Password1234!", "RoleId": "Operator", "UserName": "myuser"}'   jq {   "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "The resource has been created successfully",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Created",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>
Step_3	<p>Verify that the user was created correctly by connecting to Redfish using its credentials.</p>

## Using IPMI

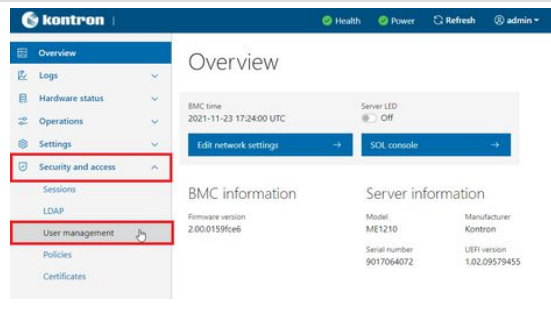
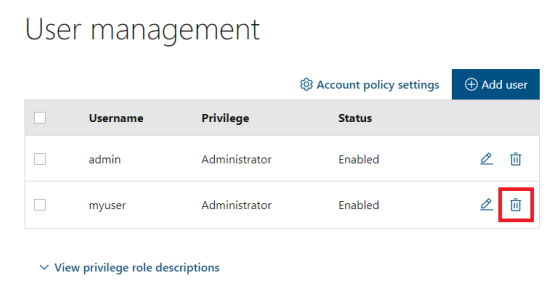
The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17`.

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port, print the list of users and select the ID of the user to add.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user list [LAN_CHANNEL]</p>	<pre>root@localhost ~# ipmitool user list 1 ID Name          Callin Link Auth IPMI Msg Channel Priv Limit 1  1              false false true   ADMINISTRATOR 2  2              false false true   ADMINISTRATOR 3  3              true  false false   NO ACCESS 4  4              true  false false   NO ACCESS 5  5              true  false false   NO ACCESS 6  6              true  false false   NO ACCESS 7  7              true  false false   NO ACCESS 8  8              true  false false   NO ACCESS 9  9              true  false false   NO ACCESS 10 10             true  false false   NO ACCESS</pre>
Step_2	<p>Create a user name.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user set name [IPMI user ID] [new IPMI user name]</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The first and second user names of the user list are reserved fields and therefore can't be modified.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Create the password.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user set password [IPMI user ID] [new IPMI password]</p>	
Step_4	<p>Enable channel access and configure privilege level.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool channel setaccess [LAN_CHANNEL] [USER_ID] privilege=[PRIVILEGE_LEVEL]</p>	
Step_5	<p>Enable the user.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user enable [USER_ID]</p>	

## Deleting a user

### Using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, click on Security and access and then on User management .	
Step_2	Select the user to delete from the User management section.	

## Using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>List the privilege levels available.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles",   "@odata.type": "#RoleCollection.RoleCollection",   "Description": "BMC User Roles",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/Administrator"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/Operator"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/ReadOnly"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/NoAccess"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 4,   "Name": "Roles Collection" } </pre>
Step_2	<p>Change the privilege level.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts/ [USER_ID] --header 'Content-type: application/json' -d '{"RoleId": "[ROLE]"}'   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts/myuser --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"RoleId": "Administrator"}'   jq {   "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1.1.1.Message",       "Message": "Successfully Completed Request",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.0.1.Success",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] } </pre>

## Using IPMI

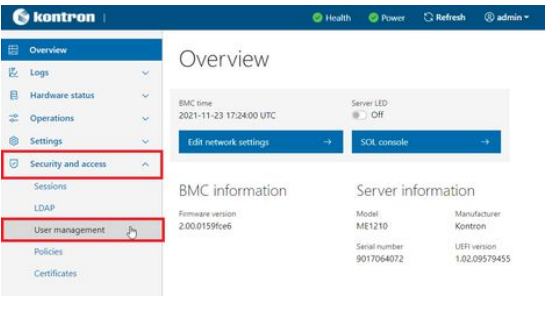
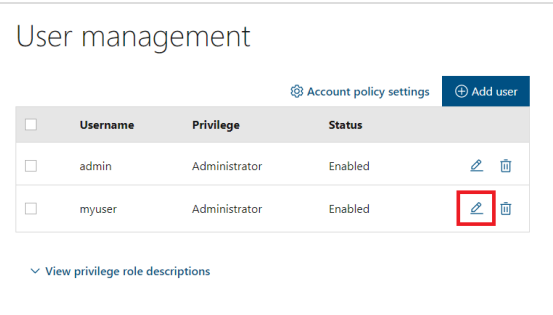
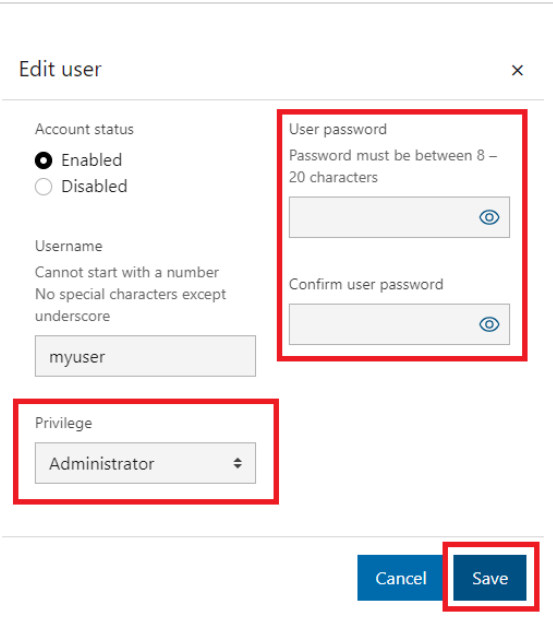
The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 . Users can't be deleted using ipmitool . However, they can be disabled.

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port, print the list of users and select the ID of the user to disable.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user list [LAN_CHANNEL]</p>	<pre> [root@localhost ~]# ipmitool user list 1 ID Name Callin Link Auth IPMI Msg Channel Priv Limit 1 false false true ADMINISTRATOR 2 admin false false true NO ACCESS 3 true false false NO ACCESS 4 true false false NO ACCESS 5 true false false NO ACCESS 6 true false false NO ACCESS 7 true false false NO ACCESS 8 true false false NO ACCESS 9 true false false NO ACCESS 10 true false false NO ACCESS </pre>
Step_2	<p>Disable the user selected.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user disable [USER_ID]</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The first and second user names of the user list are reserved fields and therefore can't be disabled.</p>	

# Configuring privilege level

## Using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Security and access</b> and then on <b>User management</b> .	
Step_2	Select the user to manage from the <b>User management</b> section.	
Step_3	Change the privilege level fields as well as the password and confirm the configuration by clicking on the <b>Save</b> button.	

## Using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>List the privilege levels available.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles",   "@odata.type": "#RoleCollection.RoleCollection",   "Description": "BMC User Roles",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/Administrator"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/Operator"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/ReadOnly"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/NoAccess"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 4,   "Name": "Roles Collection" }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Change the privilege level.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts/ [USER_ID] --header 'Content-type: application/json' - -data '{"RoleId": "[ROLE]"}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts/myuser --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"RoleId": "Administrator"}'   jq {   "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "Successfully Completed Request",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Success",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>

## Using IPMI


The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 .

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port, print the list of users and select the ID of the user to manage.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user list [LAN_CHANNEL]</p>	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool user list 1 ID Name Callin Link Auth IPMI Hsg Channel Priv Limit 1 false false true ADMINISTRATOR 2 admin false false true ADMINISTRATOR 3 true false false NO ACCESS 4 true false false NO ACCESS 5 true false false NO ACCESS 6 true false false NO ACCESS 7 true false false NO ACCESS 8 true false false NO ACCESS 9 true false false NO ACCESS 10 true false false NO ACCESS</pre>
Step_2	<p>List the privilege levels available.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool channel help</p>	<pre>Channel Commands: authcap &lt;channel number&gt; omax privilege&gt;                   setaccess &lt;channel number&gt; user id&gt;                   setaccess &lt;channel number&gt; user id&gt; [callin=on off] [link=on off] [ipmi=on off] [link=on off] [privilege=level]                   info &lt;channel number&gt;                   getciphera &lt;ipmi   mol&gt; [channel]                   setkey hex plain &lt;key&gt; [channel]  Possible privilege levels are: 1 Callback level 2 User level 3 Operator level 4 Administrator level 5 OOB Proprietary level 16 No access</pre>
Step_3	<p>Set the privilege level for each channel.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool channel setaccess [LAN_CHANNEL] [USER_ID] privilege=[PRIVILEGE_LEVEL]</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The first and second user names of the user list are reserved fields and therefore can't be modified.</p>	

# Configuring and managing switch NOS users

Table of contents

- [Configuring switch NOS users using the switch NOS Web UI](#)
  - [Changing the password of a user](#)
  - [Adding a user](#)
  - [Deleting a user](#)
  - [Configuring privilege level](#)
- [Configuring switch NOS users using the switch NOS CLI](#)
  - [Changing the password of a user](#)
  - [Adding a user](#)
  - [Deleting a user](#)
  - [Configuring privilege level](#)

 **Changes to the switch NOS configuration are not persistent** after rebooting the switch NOS. To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config.

From the switch NOS Web UI:

- Select **Maintenance** , **Configuration** and then **Save startup-config** . Click on **Save Configuration** to confirm the change.

From the switch NOS CLI:

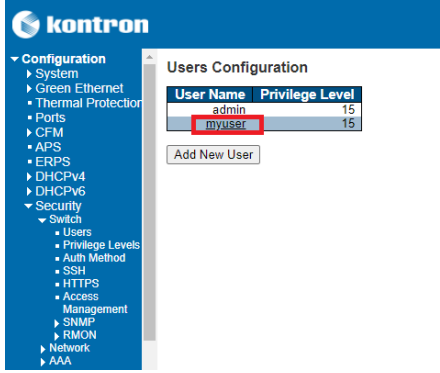
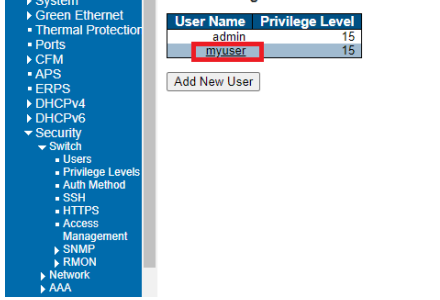
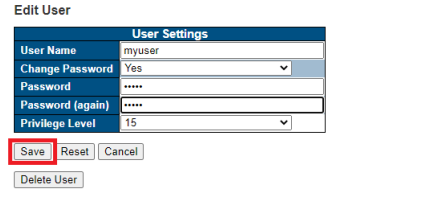
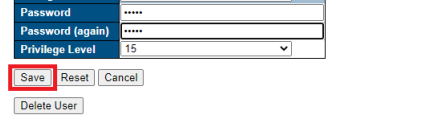

  - LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# end
  - LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~# copy running-config startup-config

## Configuring switch NOS users using the switch NOS Web UI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

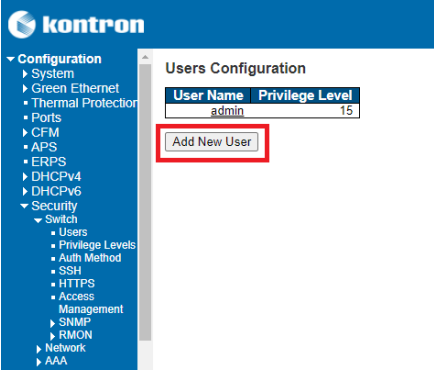
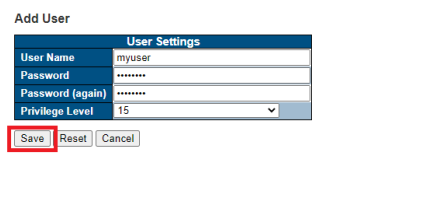
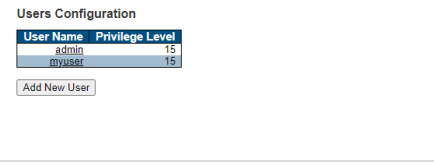

### Changing the password of a user

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>Security</b> , <b>Switch</b> and then <b>Users</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the desired user.	
Step_3	Change the value of the <b>Change Password</b> dropdown menu to <b>Yes</b> .	
Step_4	Enter the password in fields <b>Password</b> and <b>Password (again)</b> .	
Step_5	Click on <b>Save</b> to confirm.	
Step_6	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

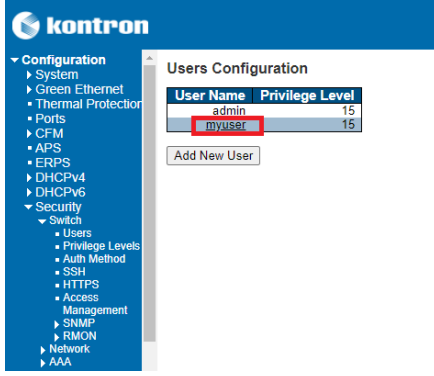
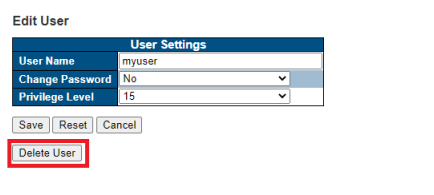


### Adding a user

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>Security</b> , <b>Switch</b> and then <b>Users</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the <b>Add New User</b> button.	
Step_3	Fill the required fields: <b>User Name</b> , <b>Password</b> , <b>Password (again)</b> and <b>Privilege Level</b> .  <b>NOTE:</b> For more information on the different privilege levels, click on the help button located at the top-right corner of the switch NOS Web UI page.	
Step_4	Click on the <b>Save</b> button to add the user.	
Step_5	A new user should be displayed in the user list.	
Step_6	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

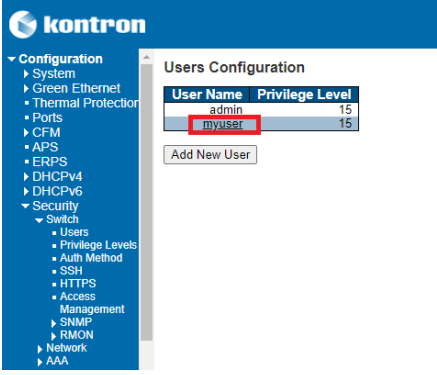
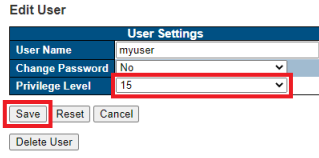
## Deleting a user

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>Security</b> , <b>Switch</b> and then <b>Users</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the desired user.	
Step_3	Click on the <b>Delete User</b> button.	
Step_4	The user should be removed from the user list.	
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring privilege level

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>Security</b> , <b>Switch</b> and then <b>Users</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the desired user.	
Step_3	Change the privilege level using the dedicated dropdown menu.  <b>NOTE:</b> For more information on the different privilege levels, click on the help button located at the top-right corner of the switch NOS Web UI page.	
Step_4	Click on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring switch NOS users using the switch NOS CLI

### Changing the password of a user

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Access the configuration setup menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Change the password. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>username [USERNAME] privilege [PRIVILEGE_LEVEL] password unencrypted [NEW_PASSWORD]</b>	<pre>(config)# username user privilege 15 password unencrypted newPassword</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Adding a user

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Access the configuration setup menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Add the user by entering its username, privilege level and password. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>username [USERNAME] privilege [PRIVILEGE_LEVEL] password unencrypted [PASSWORD]</b>	<pre>(config)# username user privilege 15 password unencrypted Password</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Deleting a user

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Access the configuration setup menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Delete the user. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>no username [USERNAME]</b>	<pre>(config)# no username myuser (config)#</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring privilege level

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).



Step_1	Access the configuration setup menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	To change the privilege level of a user, reconfigure the user and change its privilege level. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>username [USERNAME]</b> <b>privilege [NEW_PRIVILEGE_LEVEL] password unencrypted [PASSWORD]</b>	<pre>(config)# username user privilege 11 password unencrypted Password</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring date and time

# Configuring BMC date and time

Table of contents

- [General information on platform date and time](#)
- [Configuring the BMC date and time](#)
  - [Configuring the BMC date and time using the Web UI](#)
    - [Manually configuring the BMC date and time using the Web UI](#)
    - [Configuring the BMC date and time based on the NTP using the Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring the BMC date and time using Redfish](#)
    - [Manually configuring the BMC date and time using Redfish](#)
    - [Configuring the BMC date and time based on the NTP using Redfish](#)
  - [Configuring the BMC date and time using IPMI](#)
    - [Manually configuring the BMC date and time using IPMI](#)

## General information on platform date and time

The date and time need to be set for both the BMC and the switch NOS. This information will be used by the system event logging when recording events. The UEFI/BIOS automatically obtains the date and time from the BMC during boot.

## Configuring the BMC date and time

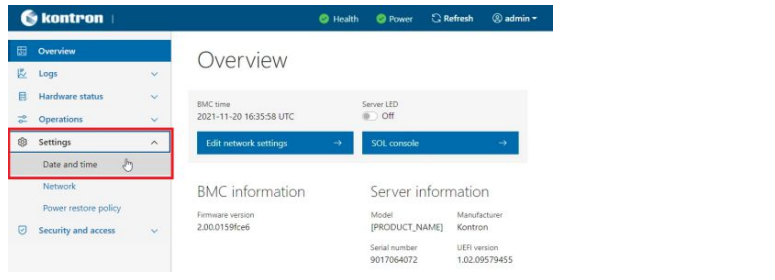

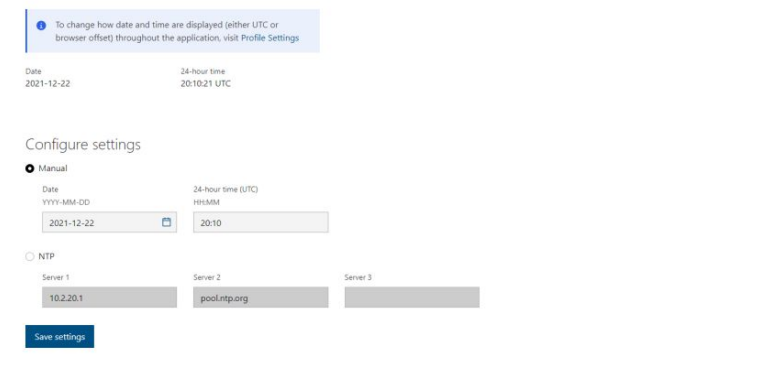
The BMC date and time can be set using:

- The BMC Web UI
- Redfish
- IPMI

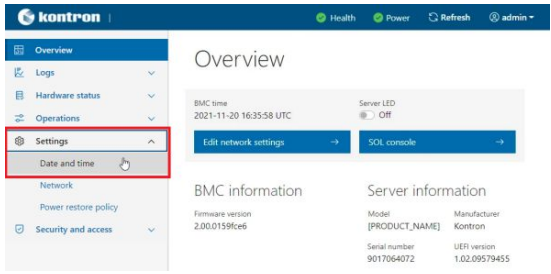

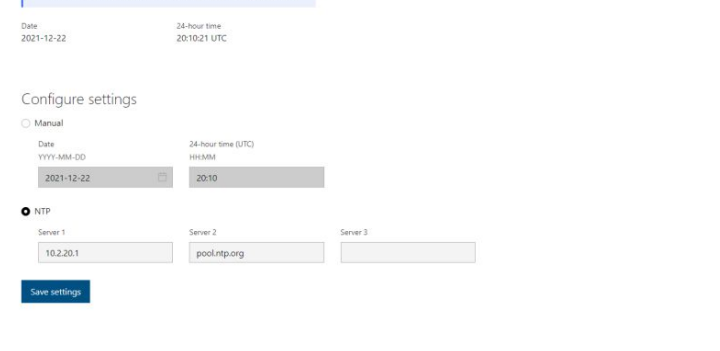
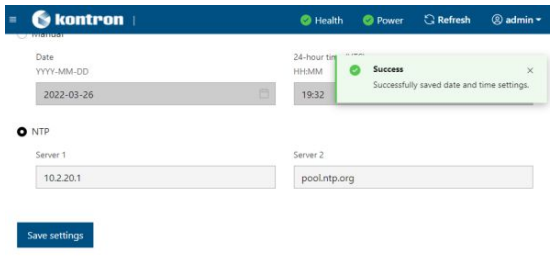
### Configuring the BMC date and time using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

#### Manually configuring the BMC date and time using the Web UI

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Date and time</b> .	
Step_2	Select <b>Manual</b> and configure the date and time.	
Step_3	Click on the <b>Save settings</b> button.	

### Configuring the BMC date and time based on the NTP using the Web UI

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Date and time</b> .	
Step_2	Select <b>NTP</b> .	
Step_3	Enter one or multiple NTP server addresses.	
Step_4	Click on the <b>Save settings</b> button.	
Step_5	A success message should appear upon successful configuration.	

## Configuring the BMC date and time using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

### Manually configuring the BMC date and time using Redfish

Step_1	<p>If NTP is enabled, disable it.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"NTP": {"ProtocolEnabled": false}}'   jq</pre> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"NTP": {"ProtocolEnabled": false}}'   jq</pre>
Step_2	<p>Set the date and time manually using the following command.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type: application/json' - -data '{"DateTime": "[DATE_TIME]"}'   jq</pre> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"DateTime": "2021-12-21T18:36:59+00:00"}'   jq</pre> <pre>{   "DateTime": "2021-12-21T18:36:59+00:00" }</pre>
Step_3	<p>Verify BMC current date and time.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .DateTime</pre> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .DateTime</pre> <pre>{   "DateTime": "2021-12-21T18:39:59+00:00", }</pre>

### Configuring the BMC date and time based on the NTP using Redfish

Step_1	Add the NTP server(s) and enable the protocol. RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"NTP": {"NTPServers": [[NTP_SERVERS]], "ProtocolEnabled": true}}'   jq
	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"NTP": {"NTPServers": [{"pool.ntp.org", "10.2.20.1"}], "ProtocolEnabled": true}}'   jq</pre>
Step_2	Verify BMC current date and time. RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .DateTime
	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .DateTime {   "DateTime": "2021-12-21T18:39:59+00:00", }</pre>

## Configuring the BMC date and time using IPMI

It is only possible to set time manually using IPMI.

### Manually configuring the BMC date and time using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 .

Step_1	From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port, set the system event log time. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool sel time set "[MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM:SS]"	<pre>\$ ipmitool sel time set "11/14/2018 17:06:57" 11/14/2018 17:06:58</pre>
Step_2	Verify that the system event log time was properly set. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool sel time get	<pre>ipmitool sel time get 11/14/2018 17:07:58</pre>

### Known limitation

#### Problem

When setting the system event log time with <b>ipmitool</b> , multiple repeated System Event entries will be present in the SEL list.	<pre>ipmitool sel list  1   11/14/2018   17:07:10   Event Logging Disabled #0x07   Log area reset/cleared   Asserted  2   11/14/2018   17:07:13   System Event #0x08   Timestamp Clock Sync   Asserted  3   11/14/2018   17:06:57   System Event #0x08   Timestamp Clock Sync   Asserted  4   11/14/2018   17:06:58   System Event #0x08   Timestamp Clock Sync   Asserted  5   11/14/2018   17:06:57   System Event #0x08   Timestamp Clock Sync   Asserted</pre>
---	--

#### Solution


This behavior has been observed with the latest version of **ipmitool** (1.8.18) released to date. However, the latest unreleased version fixes the issue. Refer to the following procedure to get the latest unreleased version. **NOTE:** Some commands may vary depending on the operating system.


Step_1	Download the latest version from its repository. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# git clone <a href="https://github.com/ipmitool/ipmitool.git">https://github.com/ipmitool/ipmitool.git</a>
Step_2	Once the files have been downloaded, change the directory to the ipmitool directory. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# cd ipmitool
Step_3	Install <b>ipmitool</b> on the platform (or the remote computer). LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ./bootstrap && ./configure && make && make install
Step_4	After the installation of <b>ipmitool</b> , set the "-N 5" flag using <b>ipmitool sel set time</b> . This flag sets the command timeout to prevent multiple duplicated entry errors to be logged. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool sel time set "[MM/DD/YYYY HH:MM:SS]" -N 5

# Configuring switch NOS date and time

## Table of contents

- [Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the NTP](#)
  - [Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the NTP using the Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the NTP using the CLI](#)
- [Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the PTP](#)
- [Configuring the switch NOS time zone and daylight saving time](#)
  - [Configuring the switch NOS time zone and daylight saving time using the Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring the switch NOS time zone and daylight saving time using the CLI](#)

 It is not possible to manually set the date and time in the switch NOS. NTP or PTP must be used as a time source. If no NTP or PTP source is available on the network, the customer's OS on the integrated server can act as an NTP server. Please refer to your OS documentation.

 **Changes to the switch NOS configuration are not persistent** after rebooting the switch NOS. To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config.

From the switch NOS Web UI:

- Select **Maintenance**, **Configuration** and then **Save startup-config**. Click on **Save Configuration** to confirm the change.

From the switch NOS CLI:

- LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# end
- LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~# copy running-config startup-config

## Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the NTP

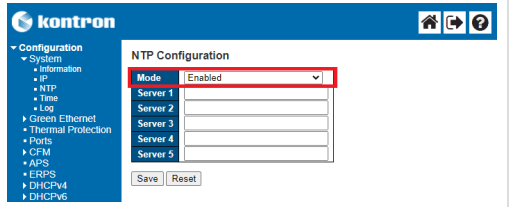
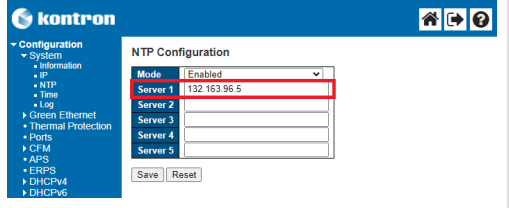
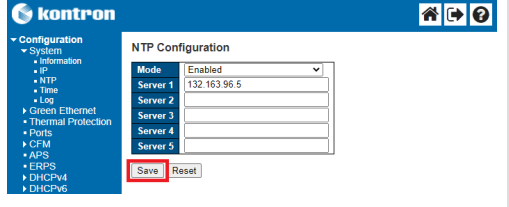
The switch NOS date and time source can be configured using:

- The switch NOS Web UI
- The switch NOS CLI

### Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the NTP using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>System</b> , and then <b>NTP</b> .	
Step_2	Enable the NTP service by changing the value from the <b>Mode</b> dropdown menu to <b>Enabled</b> .	
Step_3	Enter the NTP server's address or hostname. <b>NOTE:</b> To enter a server hostname, a DNS service must be configured.	
Step_4	Repeat the previous step to add multiple NTP servers if needed.	
Step_5	Click on the <b>Save</b> button.	
Step_6	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the NTP using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI using one of the SSH methods described in section [Accessing the switch NOS](#).

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Enable the NTP. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ntp</b> <b>NOTE:</b> To disable NTP, use <b>no ntp</b> .	<pre>(config)# ntp</pre>
Step_3	Configure the NTP server. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config) # <b>ntp server [SERVER_ID] ip-address [IP_ADDRESS_OR_HOSTNAME]</b> <b>NOTE:</b> To enter a server hostname, a DNS service must be configured.	<pre>(config)# ntp server 1 ip-address 132.163.96.5</pre> <b>OR</b> <pre>(config)# ntp server 1 ip-address pool.ntp.org</pre>
Step_4	Exit configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>exit</b>	<pre>(config)# exit</pre>
Step_5	Verify the NTP configuration by displaying the list of NTP servers. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~ <b># show ntp status</b>	<pre># show ntp status NTP Mode : enabled Idx  Server IP host address (a.b.c.d) or a host name string ---  - 1    132.163.96.5 2 3 4 5</pre>
Step_6	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring the switch NOS date and time source based on the PTP

For information on using PTP as source for date and time, refer to [Configuring synchronization](#).

## Configuring the switch NOS time zone and daylight saving time

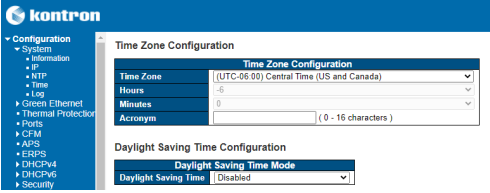
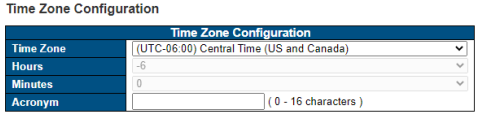
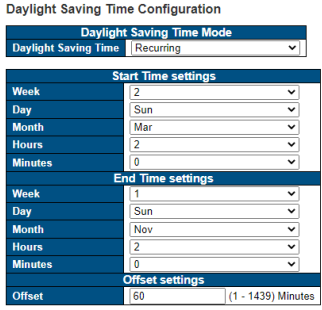
The switch NOS time zone and daylight saving time can be configured using:

- The switch NOS Web UI
- The switch NOS CLI

### Configuring the switch NOS time zone and daylight saving time using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration, System and then Time .	
Step_2	Configure the time zone by selecting it from the Time Zone dropdown menu.	
Step_3	Configure the Daylight Saving Time .	
Step_4	Click on Save .	
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring the switch NOS time zone and daylight saving time using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI using one of the SSH methods described in section [Accessing the switch NOS](#).

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).



Step_1	<p>Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b></p>
	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	<p>Manually set the hour and minute offsets. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>clock timezone [TIME_ZONE_ACRONYM] [HOUR_OFFSET] [MINUTE_OFFSET]</b></p>
	<pre>(config)# clock timezone CST -6 0</pre>
Step_3	<p>Configure the daylight saving time. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>clock summer-time [ TIME_ZONE_ACRONYM] date [STARTING_MONTH] [STARTING_DAY] [STARTING_YEAR] [STARTING_HH:MM] [ENDING_MONTH] [ENDING_DAY] [ENDING_YEAR] [ENDING_HH:MM] [OFFSET]</b> <b>NOTE:</b> This command sets the parameters for one year only. They will have to be reprogrammed the following year. or LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>clock summer-time [ TIME_ZONE_ACRONYM] recurring [STARTING_WEEK] [STARTING_MONTH] [STARTING_DAY 1=Sunday] [STARTING_HH:MM] [ENDING_WEEK] [ENDING_MONTH] [ENDING_DAY] [ENDING_HH:MM] [MINUTE_OFFSET]</b> <b>NOTE:</b> This command sets the parameters for every year. No reprogramming needed.</p>
	<pre>clock summer-time CDT recurring 2 1 3 2:00 1 1 11 2:00 60</pre>
Step_4	<p>Verify the time zone configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>exit</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>show clock detail</b></p>
	<pre>(config)# exit # show clock detail System Time      : 1969-12-31T19:02:43-06:00  Timezone : Timezone Offset : -3600 ( -360 minutes) Timezone Acronym : CST  Daylight Saving Time Mode : Recurring. Daylight Saving Time Start Time Settings :  * Week: 2  * Day: 1  * Month: 3    Date: 0    Year: 0  * Hour: 2  * Minute: 0 Daylight Saving Time End Time Settings :  * Week: 1  * Day: 1  * Month: 11    Date: 0    Year: 0  * Hour: 2  * Minute: 0 Daylight Saving Time Offset : 60 (minutes)</pre>
Step_5	<p>(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.</p>

## Configuring networking

# Configuring the BMC networking

## Table of contents

- [Selecting an access method for BMC networking configuration](#)
- [BMC network architecture](#)
  - [Ethernet switch IO module option](#)
  - [Pass-through IO module option](#)
- [Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface](#)
  - [Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface using Redfish](#)
  - [Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface using IPMI](#)
- [Configuring a static IP address](#)
  - [Configuring a static IP address using Redfish](#)
  - [Configuring a static IP address using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring a static IP address using the UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC network configuration menu](#)
    - [Configuring a static IP address using the UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
  - [Configuring a static IP address using IPMI](#)
    - [Configuring a static IP address](#)
- [Configuring a dynamic IP address using DHCP](#)
  - [Configuring a dynamic IP address using Redfish](#)
  - [Configuring a dynamic IP address using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Configuring a dynamic IP address](#)
  - [Configuring a dynamic IP address using the UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC network configuration menu](#)
    - [Configuring a dynamic IP address using DHCP](#)
  - [Configuring a dynamic IP address using IPMI](#)
- [Configuring a VLAN for a BMC network interface](#)
  - [Assigning a VLAN](#)
    - [Assigning a VLAN using Redfish](#)
    - [Assigning a VLAN using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Assigning a VLAN using IPMI](#)
  - [Removing a VLAN](#)
    - [Removing a VLAN using Redfish](#)
    - [Removing a VLAN using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Removing a VLAN using IPMI](#)
- [Configuring the integrated server Redfish host interface IP address](#)

To configure the BMC networking IP address, a schema must be selected and configured:

- A static IP address
- A dynamic IP address using DHCP

By default, the IP addresses of the network interfaces of the BMC are obtained through the DHCP protocol.

**NOTE:** The procedures described below must be performed for one interface at a time. If the application requires multiple interfaces, configure them separately.



Use caution when configuring network accesses. Your access to the system could be interrupted should you disable the access point you entered through.  
As an example, if BMC LAN channel 2 is disabled and you access BMC LAN channel 1 through IOL to disable IOL on LAN channel 1, your connection will be interrupted and you will essentially have locked yourself out of the BMC as both LAN channels will now be disabled.  
If you get locked out, an access method for which no known IP address is required (see below) would let you access the system again.

## Relevant sections:

- [Discovering platform IP addresses](#)
- [Product architecture](#)

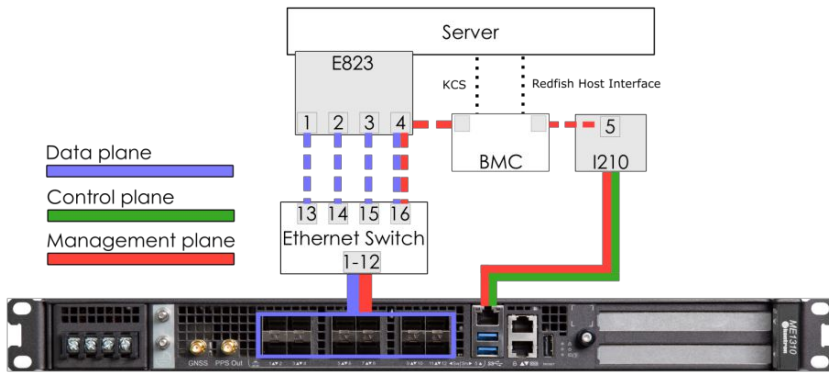
## Selecting an access method for BMC networking configuration

The BMC can be configured using various access methods depending on specific parameters.

- If the **BMC IP address** is unknown and there is no OS installed :
  - Use the UEFI/BIOS setup menu. Refer to [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS using a serial console \(physical connection\)](#) for access instructions.
- If the **BMC IP address** is unknown and an OS is installed :
  - Use IPMI via KCS. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using IPMI \(KCS\)](#) for access instructions.
  - Use the UEFI/ BIOS setup menu. Refer to [Accessing the UEFI/BIOS using a serial console \(physical connection\)](#) for access instructions.
- If the **BMC IP address** is known and an OS is installed :
  - Use Redfish. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.
  - Use the Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.
  - Use IPMI (via KCS or IOL). Refer to [Accessing a BMC using IPMI over LAN \(IOL\)](#) or [Accessing a BMC using IPMI \(KCS\)](#) for access in instructions.
  - Use the UEFI/ BIOS setup menu. Refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#) for access instructions.

## BMC network architecture

### Ethernet switch IO module option



In a platform with an Ethernet switch IO module, the BMC is accessible via two network connections. Depending on the configuration interface used, the names for the network connections change.

IPMI and UEFI/BIOS	Redfish and Web UI	Network connectivity
LAN channel 1	eth0	Front panel Srv 5
LAN channel 2	eth1	Internal server port 4 → switch port 16 *

\* The BMC can then communicate through SFP ports Sw 1 to 12, depending on switch configuration.

### Pass-through IO module option

This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

## Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface

This can be achieved:

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

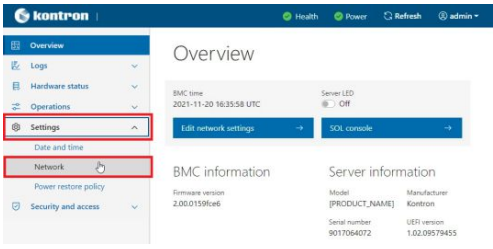
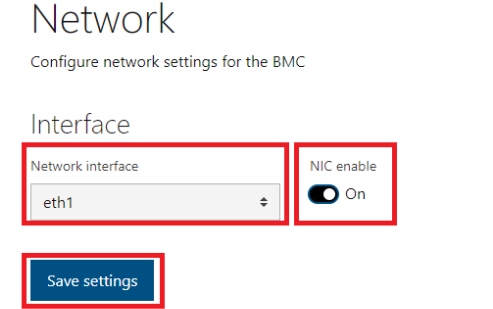
### Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>List the BMC network interfaces and take note of the URL of the interface to be enabled or disabled.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces",   "@odata.type": "#EthernetInterfaceCollection.EthernetInterfaceCollection",   "Description": "Collection of EthernetInterfaces for this Manager",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth0"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 2,   "Name": "Ethernet Network Interface Collection" }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Set the <code>InterfaceEnabled</code> attribute to <code>true</code> to enable the network interface or set it to <code>false</code> to disable the network interface.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/[INTERFACE_NAME] --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"InterfaceEnabled':[VALUE]}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1 --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"InterfaceEnabled": true}'   jq</pre>

### Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Network</b> .	
Step_2	From the dropdown menu of the <b>Interface</b> section, select a network interface to configure.	
Step_3	Click on the <b>NIC enable</b> button to enable or disable the network interface.	
Step_4	Click on <b>Save settings</b> .	

### Enabling or disabling a BMC network interface using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17` .

Step_1	Enable or disable the BMC network interface. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] access [VALUE] Where [VALUE] can be on or off.	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool lan set 1 access on Set Channel Access for channel 1 was successful.</pre>
--------	---	--

### Configuring a static IP address

This can be achieved :

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using the [UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

NOTE: If a VLAN needs to be configured, refer to [Configuring a VLAN for a BMC network interface](#) .

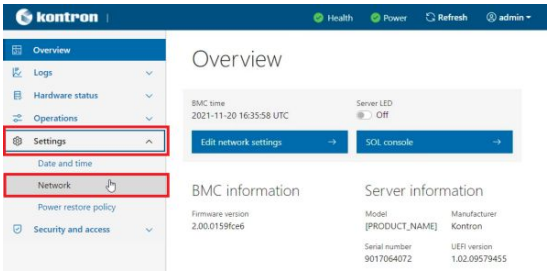
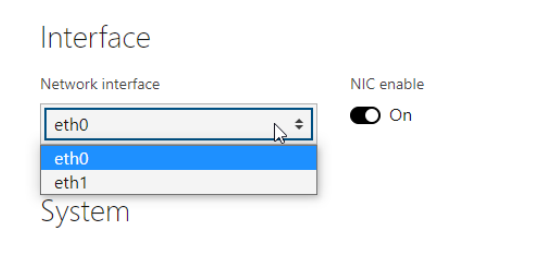
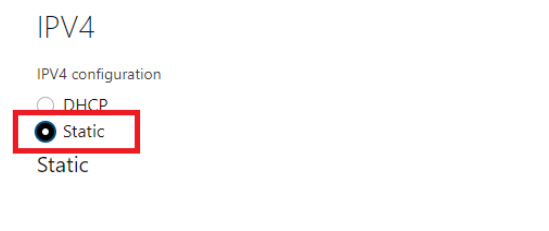
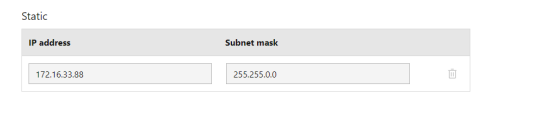

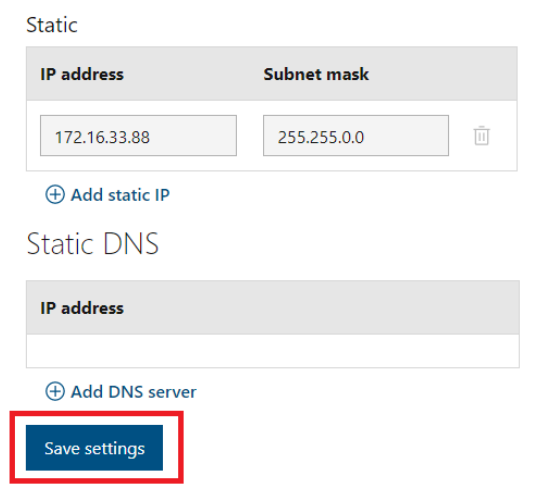
#### Configuring a static IP address using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	To change a static IP address using Redfish, the <code>IPv4StaticAddresses</code> object of a network interface needs to be modified:  RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/[INTERFACE_NAME] --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"IPv4StaticAddresses": [{"Address": "[IP_ADDRESS]", "SubnetMask": "[MASK]", "Gateway": "[GATEWAY]"}]}   jq
	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1 --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"IPv4StaticAddresses": [{"Address": "172.16.182.32", "SubnetMask": "255.255.0.0", "Gateway": "172.16.0.1"}]}   jq</pre>

#### Configuring a static IP address using the BMC Web UI

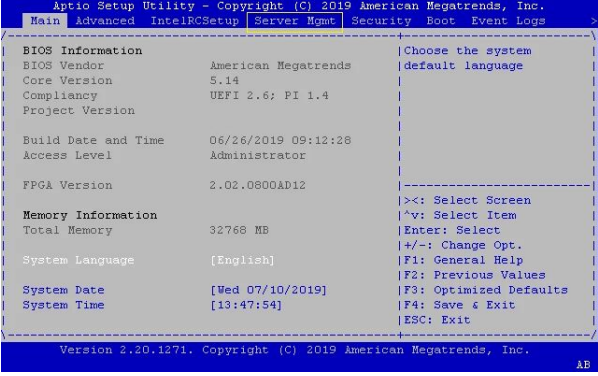
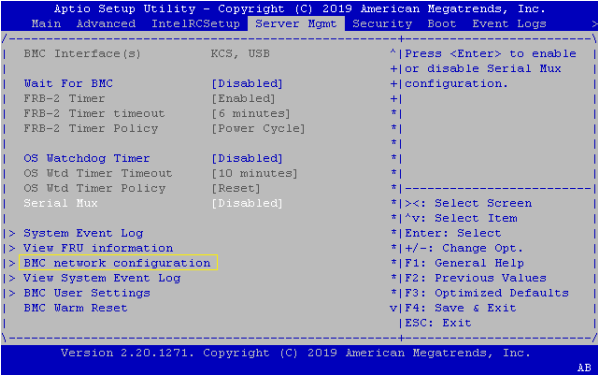
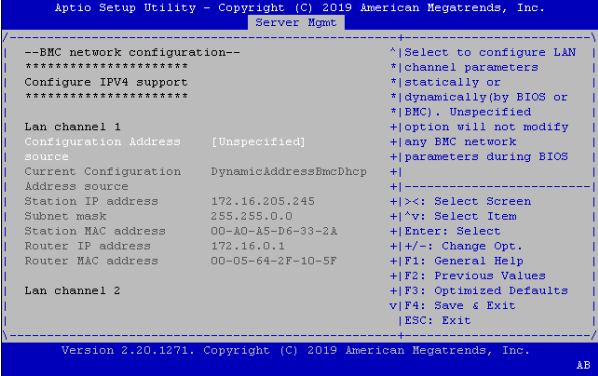
Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Network</b> .	
Step_2	Select the network interface to configure from the dropdown menu.	
Step_3	From the IPV4 section, select <b>Static</b> .	
Step_4	From the <b>Static</b> section, configure the desired <b>IP address</b> and <b>Subnet mask</b> .	
Step_5	From the <b>System</b> section, configure the <b>Default gateway</b> .	
Step_6	Click on <b>Save settings</b> .	

### Configuring a static IP address using the UEFI/BIOS setup menu

Refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#) for access instructions.

Accessing the BMC network configuration menu

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS menu, navigate to tab Server Mgmt .	
Step_2	Select BMC network configuration .	
Step_3	<p>The BMC network configuration menu is displayed.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the platform is powered up after being shut off, the UEFI/BIOS may load before the BMC has received its IP address. In this case, the UEFI/BIOS menu information will need to be refreshed by restarting the server and re-entering the UEFI/BIOS .</p>	

Configuring a static IP address using the UEFI/BIOS setup menu

Step_1	From the BMC network configuration menu, select the Configuration Address source option for the LAN interface to configure (LAN channel 1 in this example).	
Step_2	Select Static .	
Step_3	Change the Station IP address . NOTE: This is the BMC IP address ( BMC MNGMT_IP ).	
Step_4	Change the Subnet mask .	
Step_5	Change the Router IP address .	
Step_6	Confirm the configuration has changed and exit BMC network configuration using the ESC key.	

### Configuring a static IP address using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -l lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 .

### Configuring a static IP address



Step_1	Set the IP source to static. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] ipsrc static	
Step_2	Set the IP address to be used. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] ipaddr [NEW_IP] NOTE: This is the BMC IP address (BMC MNGMT_IP). NOTE: It can take several seconds for an IP address to be set.	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool lan set 1 ipaddr 172.16.205.245 Setting LAN IP Address to 172.16.205.245</pre>
Step_3	Set the subnet mask. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] netmask [NEW_MASK] NOTE: It can take several seconds for a subnet mask to be set.	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool lan set 1 netmask 255.255.0.0 Setting LAN Subnet Mask to 255.255.0.0</pre>
Step_4	Set the default gateway IP address. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] defgw ipaddr [ROUTER_IP] NOTE: It can take several seconds for a default gateway IP address to be set.	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool lan set 1 defgw ipaddr 172.16.0.1 Setting LAN Default Gateway IP to 172.16.0.1</pre>
Step_5	Set the default gateway MAC address. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] defgw macaddress [ROUTER_MAC]	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool lan set 1 defgw macaddress 00:05:64:2f:10:5f Setting LAN Default Gateway MAC to 00:05:64:2f:10:5f</pre>
Step_6	Verify that the configuration has changed. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan print [LAN_CHANNEL]	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# ipmitool lan print 1 Set in Progress      : Set Complete Auth Type Support    : NONE PASSWORD Auth Type Enable     : Callback :                     : User      : NONE PASSWORD                     : Operator  : PASSWORD                     : Admin    : PASSWORD                     : OEM      : IP Address Source    : Static Address IP Address           : 172.16.205.245 Subnet Mask          : 255.255.0.0 MAC Address          : 00:raDra5:d6:33:2a SNMP Community String : AMI IP Header            : TTL=0x40 Flags=0x40 Precedence=0x00 TOS=0x10 BMC ARP Control      : ARP Responses Enabled, Gratuitous ARP Disabled Gratuitous ARP Intvl : 0.0 seconds Default Gateway IP   : 172.16.0.1 Default Gateway MAC  : 00:05:64:2f:10:5f Backup Gateway IP    : 0.0.0.0 Backup Gateway MAC   : 00:00:00:00:00:00 802.1q VLAN ID       : Disabled 802.1q VLAN Priority : 0 RMCP+ Cipher Suites : 0,1,2,3,6,7,8,11,12,15,16,17 Cipher Suite Priv Max : c=CALLBACK                     : u=USER                     : o=OPERATOR                     : a=ADMIN                     : O=OEM Bad Password Threshold : 0 Invalid password disable: no Attempt Count Reset Int.: 0 User Lockout Interval : 0</pre>

## Configuring a dynamic IP address using DHCP

This can be achieved:

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using the [UEFI/BIOS setup menu](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

NOTE: If a VLAN needs to be configured, refer to [Configuring a VLAN for a BMC network interface](#).

### Configuring a dynamic IP address using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

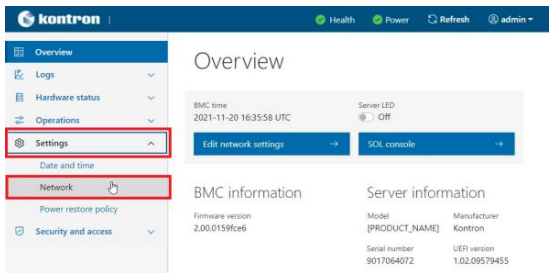
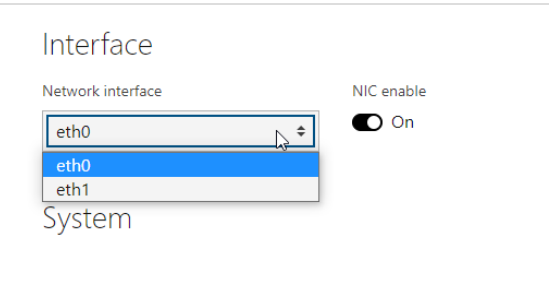

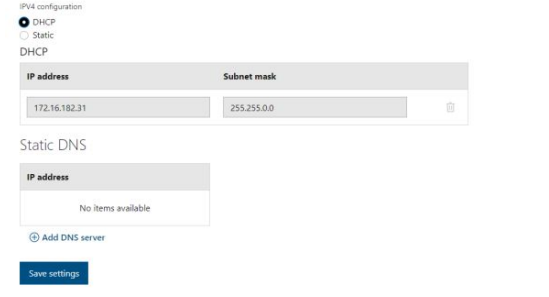
Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	To enable the DHCP addressing method in Redfish, PATCH the proper BMC network interface with the DHCP field. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/[INTERFACE_NAME] --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"DHCPv4": {"DHCPEnabled": true}}'   jq	
		<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.102.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1 --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"DHCPv4": {"DHCPEnabled": true}}'   jq {   "Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "Successfully Completed Request",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Success",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>

### Configuring a dynamic IP address using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Configuring a dynamic IP address

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Network</b> .	
Step_2	Select the network interface to configure from the dropdown menu.	
Step_3	From the <b>IPV4</b> section, select <b>DHCP</b> .	
Step_4	Click on <b>Save settings</b> .	

## Configuring a dynamic IP address using the UEFI/BIOS setup menu

Refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#) for access instructions.

## Accessing the BMC network configuration menu


Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS menu, navigate to tab Server Mgmt .	<pre> Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2019 American Megatrends, Inc. Main Advanced IntelRCSSetup Server Mgmt Security Boot Event Logs &gt; ----- BIOS Information BIOS Vendor           American Megatrends   Choose the system Core Version          5.14                  default language Compliancy            UEFI 2.6; PI 1.4 Project Version Build Date and Time   06/26/2019 09:12:28 Access Level         Administrator FPGA Version         2.02.0800AD12 Memory Information Total Memory          32768 MB System Language       [English] System Date           [Wed 07/10/2019] System Time           [13:47:54] -----  &lt;&lt;: Select Screen  ^v: Select Item  Enter: Select  +/-: Change Opt.  F1: General Help  F2: Previous Values  F3: Optimized Defaults  F4: Save &amp; Exit  ESC: Exit ----- Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2019 American Megatrends, Inc. AB </pre>
Step_2	Select BMC network configuration .	<pre> Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2019 American Megatrends, Inc. Main Advanced IntelRCSSetup Server Mgmt Security Boot Event Logs &gt; ----- BMC Interface(s)      RCS, USB              ^ Press &lt;Enter&gt; to enable Wait For BMC          [Disabled]            + or disable Serial Mux FRB-2 Timer           [Enabled]             + configuration. FRB-2 Timer timeout   [6 minutes]          *  FRB-2 Timer Policy    [Power Cycle]        *  OS Watchdog Timer     [Disabled]            *  OS Wtd Timer Timeout  [10 minutes]         *  OS Wtd Timer Policy   [Reset]               *  Serial Mux            [Disabled]            * &lt;&lt;: Select Screen  &gt; System Event Log   * ^v: Select Item  &gt; View FRU information * Enter: Select  &gt; BMC network configuration * +/-: Change Opt.  &gt; View System Event Log * F1: General Help  &gt; BMC User Settings * F2: Previous Values  BMC Warm Reset       v F3: Optimized Defaults                        F4: Save &amp; Exit                        ESC: Exit ----- Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2019 American Megatrends, Inc. AB </pre>
Step_3	<p>The BMC network configuration menu is displayed.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> When the platform is powered up after being shut off, the UEFI/BIOS may load before the BMC has received its IP address. In this case, the UEFI/BIOS menu information will need to be refreshed by restarting the server and re-entering the UEFI/BIOS.</p>	<pre> Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2019 American Megatrends, Inc. Server Mgmt ----- --BMC network configuration-- ***** Configure IPV4 support ***** Lan channel 1 Configuration Address [Unspecified] source Current Configuration DynamicAddressBmcDhcp Address source Station IP address    172.16.205.245 Subnet mask           255.255.0.0 Station MAC address   00-A0-A5-D6-33-2A Router IP address     172.16.0.1 Router MAC address    00-05-64-2F-10-5F Lan channel 2 -----  ^ Select to configure LAN  ^v channel parameters  ^ statically or  ^ dynamically(by BIOS or  ^ BMC). Unspecified  ^ option will not modify  ^ any BMC network  ^ parameters during BIOS -----  &lt;&gt;: Select Screen  ^v: Select Item  Enter: Select  +/-: Change Opt.  F1: General Help  F2: Previous Values  F3: Optimized Defaults  F4: Save &amp; Exit  ESC: Exit ----- Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2019 American Megatrends, Inc. AB </pre>

### Configuring a dynamic IP address using DHCP

Step_1	From the BMC network configuration menu, select the Configuration Address source option of the LAN interface to configure (LAN channel 1 in this example).	
Step_2	Select DynamicBmcDhcp.	
Step_3	Navigate to Save & Exit.	
Step_4	Select Save Changes and Exit . This will perform a server reset.	
Step_5	When the UEFI/ BIOS sign on screen is displayed, press the specified key to enter the UEFI/ BIOS setup menu. Then, access the Server Mgmt menu and select BMC network configuration . The address displayed is your BMC IP address ( BMC MNGMT_IP ).	

### Configuring a dynamic IP address using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C T1` .

Step_1	Set the IP source to DHCP. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] ipsrc dhcp	
Step_2	Verify that the configuration has changed. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan print [LAN_CHANNEL] NOTE: This is the BMC IP address ( BMC MNGMT_IP ).	

### Configuring a VLAN for a BMC network interface

Given the ME1310 architecture, if a VLAN is assigned to the eth1 BMC network interface, the 1/16 switch port should reflect the configuration. Ensure that the 1/16 port is a member of the assigned VLAN. Refer to [Internal connections](#) and [Configuring switch VLANs](#) .

## Assigning a VLAN

This can be achieved:

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

### Assigning a VLAN using Redfish

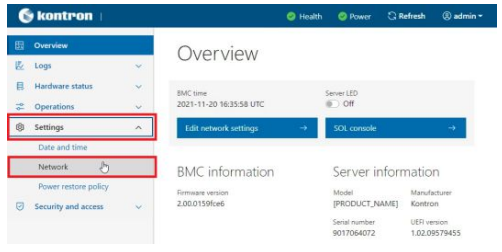
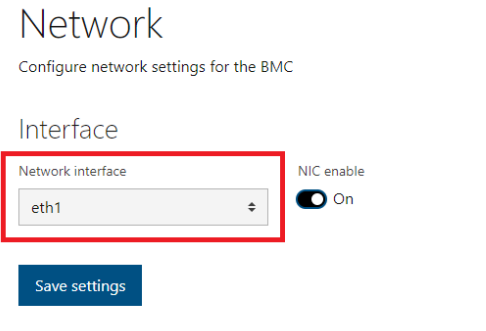

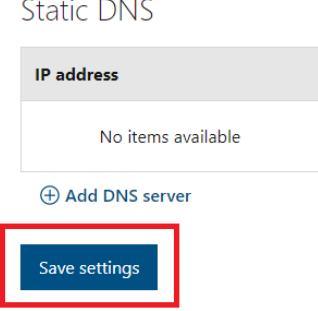
The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Select a BMC network interface and take note of its URL. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces",   "@odata.type": "#EthernetInterfaceCollection.EthernetInterfaceCollection",   "description": "Collection of EthernetInterfaces for this Manager",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth0"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 2,   "Name": "Ethernet Network Interface Collection" }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Add a VLAN for the selected BMC network interface using the following command. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/[INTERFACE_NAME]/VLANs --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"VLANEnable": true,"VLANId": [VLAN_ID]}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1/VLANs --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"VLANEnable": true,"VLANId": 1}'   jq {   "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "The resource has been created successfully",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Created",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>
Step_3	<p>Configure an IP address for the VLAN interface created using one of the Redfish methods described in this section.</p>

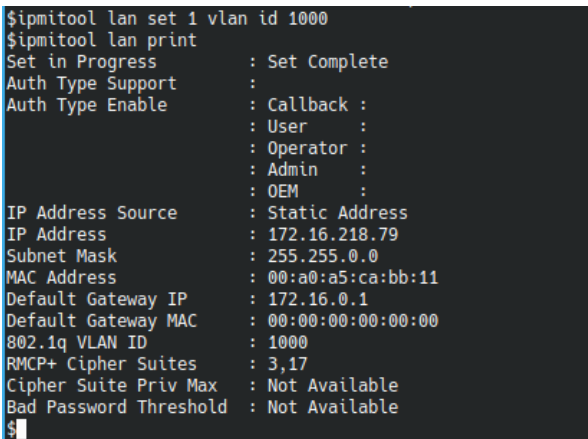
### Assigning a VLAN using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Network</b> .	
Step_2	From the dropdown menu of the <b>Interface</b> section, select a network interface to configure.	
Step_3	To assign a VLAN, check the box in the <b>VLAN</b> section and enter the VLAN ID to be affected to the network interface.	
Step_4	Click on <b>Save settings</b> .	
Step_5	Configure an IP address for the VLAN interface created using one of the Web UI methods described in this section.	

### Assigning a VLAN using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17` .

Step_1	Associate a pre-configured VLAN to an interface. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# <code>ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] vlan id [VLAN_ID]</code>	
Step_2	Configure an IP address for the VLAN interface created using one of the IPMI methods described in this section.	

### Removing a VLAN

This can be achieved:

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)

- Using [IPMI](#)

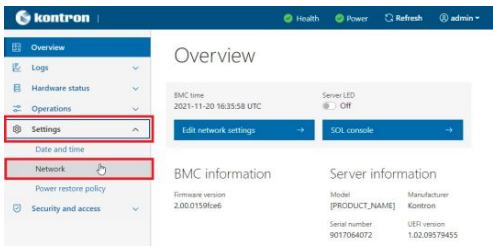
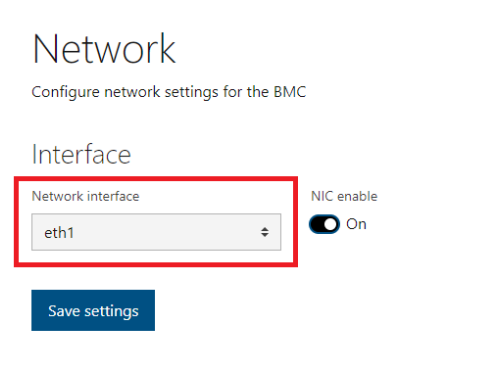

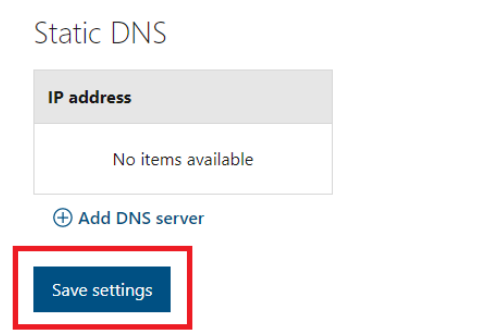
## Removing a VLAN using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Select a BMC network interface and take note of its URL. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces",   "@odata.type": "#EthernetInterfaceCollection.EthernetInterfaceCollection",   "Description": "Collection of EthernetInterfaces for this Manager",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth0"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 2,   "Name": "Ethernet Network Interface Collection" }</pre>
Step_2	<p>List the VLANs of a selected BMC network interface and take note of desired VLAN's URL. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/[INTERFACE_NAME]/VLANs   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1/VLANs   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1/VLANs",   "@odata.type": "#VlanNetworkInterfaceCollection.VlanNetworkInterfaceCollection",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1/VLANs/eth1_1"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 1,   "Name": "VLAN Network Interface Collection" }</pre>
Step_3	<p>Access the VLAN information in order to collect its ID. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/[INTERFACE_NAME]/VLANs/[VLAN_URL]   jq .VLANId</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1/VLANs/eth1_1   jq .VLANId [   1 ]</pre>
Step_4	<p>Delete the VLAN for the selected BMC network interface using the following command. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/[INTERFACE_NAME]/VLANs/[VLAN_URL] --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"VLANEnable": false, "VLANId": [VLAN_ID]}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/EthernetInterfaces/eth1/VLANs/eth1_1 --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"VLANEnable": false,"VLANId": 1}'   jq</pre>

## Removing a VLAN using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Network</b> .	
Step_2	From the dropdown menu of the <b>Interface</b> section, select a network interface to configure.	
Step_3	To remove a VLAN, uncheck the box in the <b>VLAN</b> section.	
Step_4	Click on <b>Save settings</b> .	

## Removing a VLAN using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17` .

Step_1	Set the VLAN ID associated with an interface to off. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool lan set [LAN_CHANNEL] vlan id off	<pre>\$ipmitool lan set 1 vlan id off \$ipmitool lan print Set in Progress           : Set Complete Auth Type Support        : Auth Type Enable         : Callback :                           : User      :                           : Operator :                           : Admin    :                           : OEM      : IP Address Source        : Static Address IP Address                : 0.0.0.0 Subnet Mask               : 255.255.255.255 MAC Address               : 00:a0:a5:ca:bb:11 Default Gateway IP       : 0.0.0.0 Default Gateway MAC      : 00:00:00:00:00:00 802.1q VLAN ID           : Disabled RMCP+ Cipher Suites      : 3,17 Cipher Suite Priv Max    : Not Available Bad Password Threshold   : Not Available \$</pre>
--------	--	--

## Configuring the integrated server Redfish host interface IP address

Refer to [Accessing the operating system of a server](#) for access instructions.

BMC Redfish resources can be accessed locally by the integrated server using the internal, private, Redfish host interface. In this platform, the functionality is implemented using a USB-LAN interface. Most modern Linux operating systems should have built-in support for this USB-LAN device. The procedure below configures the IP address used for the host interface.



Step_1	<p>Find the USB interface name detected in Linux. This can be done by listing the net name from the sysfs folder.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ls /sys/bus/usb/drivers/rndis_host/*/net</p> <p>Example in CentOS 7:</p> <pre> \$ ls /sys/bus/usb/drivers/rndis_host/1-3.2:1.0/net enp0s20f0u3u2 \$ </pre> <p>In this example the interface name discovered is enp0s20f0u3u2 .</p> <p>Example in Ubuntu:</p> <pre> \$ ls /sys/bus/usb/drivers/rndis_host/1-3.2:1.0/net/ enx00248c46642c \$ </pre> <p>In this example the interface name discovered is enx00248c46642c .</p>
Step_2	<p>Configure the static IP address of the USB-LAN interface.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ip addr add 169.254.0.1/24 dev [INTERFACE_NAME]</p> <pre> \$ ip addr add 169.254.0.1/24 dev enp0s20f0u3u2 \$ ip addr show 1: lo: &lt;LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP&gt; mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN group default qlen 1000     link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00     inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope host lo         valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever     inet6 ::1/128 scope host         valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever 2: ens5: &lt;BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP&gt; mtu 1500 qdisc mq state UP group default qlen 1000     link/ether 00:a0:a5:ad:4a:10 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff 3: ens1: &lt;NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP&gt; mtu 1500 qdisc mq state DOWN group default qlen 1000     link/ether 00:00:00:00:00:14 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff 4: ens3: &lt;NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP&gt; mtu 1500 qdisc mq state DOWN group default qlen 1000     link/ether 00:00:00:00:00:15 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff 5: enp0s20f0u3u2: &lt;BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP&gt; mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UNKNOWN group default qlen 1000     link/ether 00:24:8c:46:64:2c brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff     inet 169.254.0.1/24 scope global enp0s20f0u3u2         valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever 6: ens2: &lt;NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP&gt; mtu 1500 qdisc mq state DOWN group default qlen 1000     link/ether 00:00:00:00:00:16 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff 7: ens1: &lt;NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP&gt; mtu 1500 qdisc mq state DOWN group default qlen 1000     link/ether 00:00:00:00:00:17 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff \$ </pre>
Step_3	<p>You can now access the BMC Redfish interface using the internal Redfish Host Interface IP address.</p> <p>The BMC IP address is always 169.254.0.17 .</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k https://[USER_NAME]:[PASSWORD]@169.254.0.17/redfish/v1/[URL]</p> <pre> \$ curl -k https://admin:ready2go@169.254.0.17/redfish/v1/ {   "@odata.context": "/redfish/v1/\$metadata#ServiceRoot.ServiceRoot",   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1",   "@odata.type": "#ServiceRoot.v1_5_0.ServiceRoot",   "AccountService": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/AccountService"   },   "CertificateService": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/CertificateService"   },   "Chassis": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis"   },   "Id": "RootService",   "JsonSchemas": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/JsonSchemas"   },   "Links": {     "Sessions": {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions"     }   },   "Managers": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers"   },   "Name": "Root Service",   "RedfishVersion": "1.6.1",   "Registries": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Registries"   },   "SessionService": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService"   },   "Systems": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems"   },   "UUID": "46e98382-3e10-41f2-b743-a5a858139658",   "UpdateService": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService"   } } \$ </pre>

# Configuring UEFI network boot

Table of contents

- [Configuring UEFI network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Configuring UEFI networking using the UEFI/BIOS menu](#)
    - [Identifying the network interfaces](#)
    - [Enabling UEFI support for installed network controllers](#)
  - [Configuring PXE network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu](#)
    - [Enabling PXE support](#)
    - [Performing PXE network boot](#)
  - [Configuring HTTP network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu](#)
    - [Enabling HTTP boot support](#)
    - [Performing HTTP network boot](#)
- [Configuring VLANs for UEFI network boot using the UEFI](#)
  - [Configuring VLANs for UEFI network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu](#)
    - [Creating VLANs](#)
    - [Removing VLANs](#)

The following types of network boot options are supported on the platform:

- PXE
- HTTP Boot

UEFI network boot can be configured:

- Using the [UEFI/BIOS menu](#)

## Configuring UEFI network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu

### Prerequisites

1	Access to the UEFI/BIOS menu is required.
2	A boot server is configured and discoverable using DHCP. <b>NOTE:</b> The boot server address cannot be set using a static IP address.

Relevant sections:

- [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#)
- [Configuring the BMC networking](#)
- [MAC addresses](#)
- [PCI mapping](#)
- [Product architecture](#)

### Configuring UEFI networking using the UEFI/BIOS menu

UEFI networking must be configured for the UEFI to communicate with a remote boot server.

**NOTE:** On a platform with the Ethernet switch IO module, VLANs must be configured for any VLAN-tagged traffic coming from the server E823 10GbE interface. Refer to [Product architecture](#) for information on network interfaces or refer to [Configuring VLANs for UEFI network boot](#) for configuration instructions.

### Identifying the network interfaces


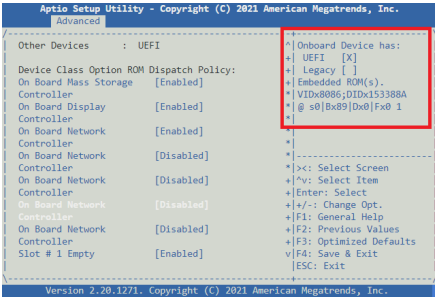
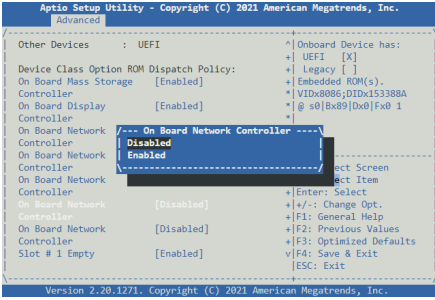
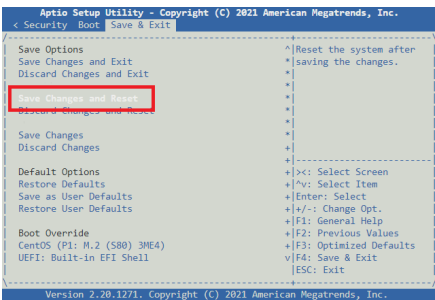
At least one UEFI network interface needs to be configured to perform a network boot.

In the UEFI/BIOS menu, the UEFI network interfaces are designated by their PCI mapping. Use the **Bus:Device.Function** column in order to identify the interface in the UEFI/BIOS menu.

Typical designation in Linux	Speed (bps)	NOS port designation	Bus: Device. Function
eno1	25G	Ethernet 1/13	89:00.3
eno2	25G	Ethernet 1/14	89:00.2
eno3	25G	Ethernet 1/15	89:00.1
eno4	25G	Ethernet 1/16	89:00.0
eno5	1G	Not applicable	05:00.0

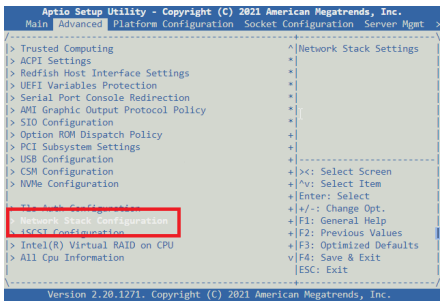
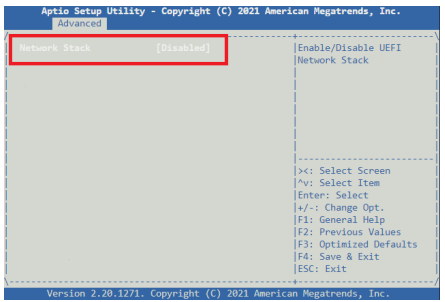
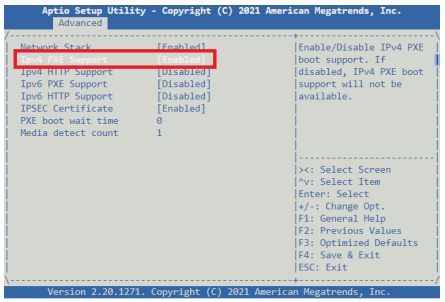
### Enabling UEFI support for installed network controllers

Refer to the [Identifying the network interfaces](#) table. The help text should match the **Bus:Device.Function** column.

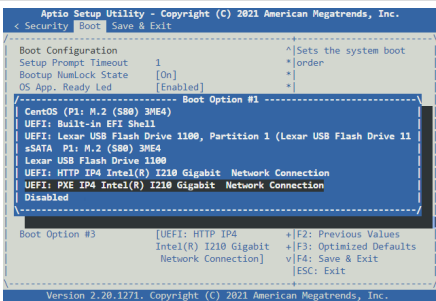
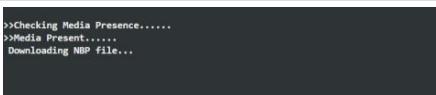
Step_1	Reboot the platform and access the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.	
Step_2	Navigate to the <b>Advanced</b> menu and enter the <b>Option ROM Dispatch Policy</b> sub-menu.	 <p>Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc. Main   <b>Advanced</b>   Platform Configuration   Socket Configuration   Server Mgmt</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>&gt; Trusted Computing</li> <li>&gt; ACPI Settings</li> <li>&gt; Redfish Host Interface Settings</li> <li>&gt; UEFI Variables Protection</li> <li>&gt; Serial Port Console Redirection</li> <li>&gt; AMI Graphic Output Protocol Policy</li> <li>&gt; <b>Option ROM Dispatch Policy</b></li> <li>&gt; SATA Configuration</li> <li>&gt; PCI Subsystem Settings</li> <li>&gt; USB Configuration</li> <li>&gt; CSM Configuration</li> <li>&gt; NVMe Configuration</li> <li>&gt; Tls Auth Configuration</li> <li>&gt; Network Stack Configuration</li> <li>&gt; SCSI Configuration</li> <li>&gt; Intel(R) Virtual RAID on CPU</li> <li>&gt; All Cpu Information</li> </ul> <p>Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc.</p>
Step_3	Identify the network controller using the help text.	 <p>Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc. Advanced</p> <p>Other Devices : UEFI</p> <p>Device Class Option ROM Dispatch Policy:</p> <p>On Board Mass Storage [Enabled]</p> <p>On Board Display [Enabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Enabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Disabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Disabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Disabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Disabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Enabled]</p> <p>Slot # 1 Empty [Enabled]</p> <p>Onboard Device has: +  UEFI [X] +  Legacy [ ] +  Embedded ROM(s). +  VIDx0086;DIDx153388A +  @ s0 8x89 Dx0 Fx0 1</p> <p>Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc.</p>
Step_4	Enable or disable the desired network controllers.	 <p>Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc. Advanced</p> <p>Other Devices : UEFI</p> <p>Device Class Option ROM Dispatch Policy:</p> <p>On Board Mass Storage [Enabled]</p> <p>On Board Display [Enabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Enabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller <b>Disabled</b></p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Disabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Disabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Disabled]</p> <p>On Board Network Controller [Enabled]</p> <p>Slot # 1 Empty [Enabled]</p> <p>Onboard Device has: +  UEFI [X] +  Legacy [ ] +  Embedded ROM(s). +  VIDx0086;DIDx153388A +  @ s0 8x89 Dx0 Fx0 1</p> <p>Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc.</p>
Step_5	Select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu, go to <b>Save Changes and Reset</b> and press Enter .	 <p>Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc. &lt; Security   Boot   <b>Save &amp; Exit</b></p> <p>Save Options</p> <p>Save Changes and Exit</p> <p>Discard Changes and Exit</p> <p><b>Save Changes and Reset</b></p> <p>Restore Changes and Reset</p> <p>Save Changes</p> <p>Discard Changes</p> <p>Default Options</p> <p>Restore Defaults</p> <p>Save as User Defaults</p> <p>Restore User Defaults</p> <p>Boot Override</p> <p>CentOS (P1: M.2 (580) 3ME4)</p> <p>UEFI: Built-in EFI Shell</p> <p>Reset the system after saving the changes.</p> <p>Version 2.20.1271. Copyright (C) 2021 American Megatrends, Inc.</p>

## Configuring PXE network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu

Enabling PXE support

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Advanced</b> menu and enter the <b>Network Stack Configuration</b> sub-menu.	
Step_2	If needed, enable the <b>Network Stack</b> . <b>NOTE:</b> If the network stack is disabled, the UEFI network boot is consequently disabled.	
Step_3	Enable or disable the <b>IPv4 PXE Support</b> and/or <b>IPv6 PXE Support</b> .	
Step_4	Select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu, go to <b>Save Changes and Reset</b> and press <b>Enter</b> .	

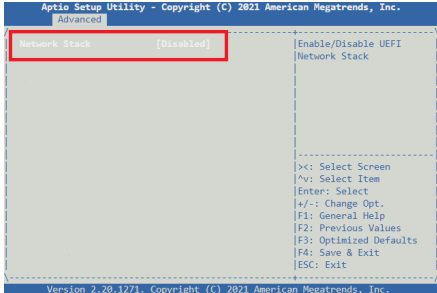
## Performing PXE network boot

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Boot</b> menu. Configure the boot order to as desired. The PXE boot option should be first in order to have priority over the other boot options. <b>NOTE:</b> Boot override can also be used to choose manually for a one-time boot.	
Step_2	Select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu, go to <b>Save Changes and Reset</b> and press <b>Enter</b> to confirm and save the new boot order. The platform should boot using PXE.	

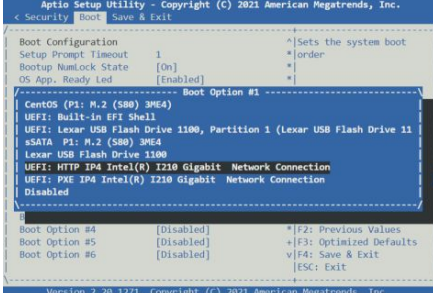
## Configuring HTTP network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu

The **Boot URI** can be set explicitly, but it is very often transmitted by the DHCP server during the IP address selection process. Please consult your network administrator for information pertaining to your installation.

### Enabling HTTP boot support

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Advanced</b> menu and enter the <b>Network Stack Configuration</b> sub-menu.	
Step_2	If needed, enable the <b>Network Stack</b> . <b>NOTE:</b> If the network is disabled, the UEFI network boot is consequently disabled.	
Step_3	Enable or disable the <b>IPv4 HTTP Support</b> and/or <b>IPv6 HTTP Support</b> .	
Step_4	Select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu, go to <b>Save Changes and Reset</b> and press <b>Enter</b> .	

## Performing HTTP network boot

Step_1	Reboot the platform and access the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.	
Step_2	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Boot</b> menu. Configure the boot order as desired. The HTTP boot option should be first in order to have priority over the other boot options. <b>NOTE:</b> Boot override can also be used to choose manually for a one-time boot.	
Step_3	Select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu, go to <b>Save Changes and Reset</b> and press <b>Enter</b> to confirm and save the new boot order. The platform should boot using HTTP boot.	

## Configuring VLANs for UEFI network boot using the UEFI

On a platform with the Ethernet switch IO module, VLANs must be configured for any VLAN-tagged traffic coming from the server E823 10GbE interface. Refer to [Configuring the switch](#) for procedures to configure VLANs with the switch network operating system.

The UEFI/BIOS setup menu provides options to create/configure/remove VLANs on each of the server's four E823 NIC 10GbE interfaces as well as on the I210 NIC 1GbE interface. Refer to [Product architecture](#) for information on network interfaces. However, the UEFI/BIOS setup menus to configure VLANs are available only when the UEFI network services are active.

### Configuring VLANs for UEFI network boot using the UEFI/BIOS menu

Relevant sections:

- [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#)
- [MAC addresses](#)

## Creating VLANs

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, select the <b>Advanced</b> menu and select one <b>VLAN Configuration (MAC:xxxxxxxxxx)</b> section.  <b>Select Enter Configuration Menu .</b>  <b>NOTE:</b> The MAC address will be the MAC address of the E823 10GbE or I210 1GbE interface to configure.</p>	
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>Create a new VLAN as needed by setting its VLAN ID and Priority:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>VLAN ID:</b> Value between 0 and 4094</li> <li>• <b>Priority:</b> Value between 0 and 7</li> </ul> <p>The example in the image shows a VLAN with ID 1001 and a 802.1Q Priority 2.</p>	
<p>Step_3</p>	<p>Select <b>Add VLAN</b> to create the VLAN.</p>	
<p>Step_4</p>	<p>Add other VLANs as required by repeating steps 2 and 3.          Example: VLAN ID 2002, with 802.1Q Priority 4.  <b>NOTES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The VLANs shown below the <b>Configured VLAN List</b> are active whether they have the setting <b>Enabled</b> or <b>Disabled</b> . In this example, VLAN ID 1001 and 2002 are active.</li> <li>• The setting <b>Enabled</b> and <b>Disabled</b> of the VLANs in the list are only used when removing VLANs.</li> </ul>	
<p>Step_5</p>	<p>Repeat steps 1 to 4 to assign VLANs for another E823 10GbE interface, as needed.</p>	
<p>Step_6</p>	<p>Press <b>F4</b> to save changes and exit.</p>	

## Removing VLANs

Step_1	<p>From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, select the <b>Advanced</b> menu and select one <b>VLAN Configuration (MAC:xxxxxxxxxx)</b> section.  Select <b>Enter Configuration Menu</b> .  <b>NOTE:</b> The MAC address will be the one of the E823 10GbE port for which VLANs must be removed.</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'Advanced' menu in the AptIO Setup utility. The 'VLAN Configuration' section is highlighted, showing options for various MAC addresses and network configurations. The 'VLAN Configuration (MAC:00A0A5D9CFE9)' option is selected.</p>																														
Step_2	<p>Set the status of the VLAN or VLANs to remove to <b>Enabled</b> .  Once all the VLANs to remove are selected, select <b>Remove VLAN</b> .</p> <p>In the example, VLAN ID 2002 will be removed and VLAN ID 1001 will be kept.</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Configuration' screen in the AptIO Setup utility. It displays a table of configured VLANs with columns for 'VLAN ID', 'Priority', and 'Status'. The 'Remove selected VLANs' button is visible on the right side of the screen.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Create new VLAN</th> <th></th> <th>Remove selected VLANs</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>VLAN ID</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Priority</td> <td>0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Add VLAN</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">Configured VLAN List</td> </tr> <tr> <td>VLAN ID:1001,</td> <td>[Disabled]</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Priority:2</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>VLAN ID:2002,</td> <td>[Enabled]</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Priority:4</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Remove VLAN</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Create new VLAN		Remove selected VLANs	VLAN ID	0		Priority	0		Add VLAN			Configured VLAN List			VLAN ID:1001,	[Disabled]		Priority:2			VLAN ID:2002,	[Enabled]		Priority:4			Remove VLAN		
Create new VLAN		Remove selected VLANs																														
VLAN ID	0																															
Priority	0																															
Add VLAN																																
Configured VLAN List																																
VLAN ID:1001,	[Disabled]																															
Priority:2																																
VLAN ID:2002,	[Enabled]																															
Priority:4																																
Remove VLAN																																
Step_3	Repeat steps 1 and 2 to remove VLANs in another E823 10GbE interface, as needed.																															
Step_4	Press <b>F4</b> to save changes and exit.																															

# Configuring switch NOS networking

## Table of contents

- [Configuring IP addresses to access the switch NOS](#)
- [Adding a NOS VLAN interface IP address](#)
  - [Adding a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the Web UI](#)
    - [Adding a NOS VLAN interface](#)
    - [Configuring a static IP address](#)
    - [Configuring a dynamic IP address using DHCP](#)
  - [Adding a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the CLI](#)
    - [Adding a NOS VLAN interface using a static IP address](#)
    - [Adding a NOS VLAN interface using DHCP](#)
- [Removing a NOS VLAN interface IP address](#)
  - [Removing a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the Web UI](#)
  - [Removing a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the CLI](#)
- [Configuring HTTPS support](#)
  - [Configuring HTTPS support using the Web UI](#)
    - [HTTPS configuration page](#)
      - [Values available for fields used for HTTPS configuration](#)
    - [Certificates](#)
      - [Generating a self-signed certificate](#)
      - [Uploading a certificate from a URL](#)
      - [Uploading a certificate from a user file system](#)
      - [Deleting an installed certificate](#)
    - [Configuring the interface protocol](#)
      - [Configuring the interface for HTTP only](#)
      - [Configuring the interface for HTTPS only](#)
      - [Configuring the interface for HTTP and HTTPS](#)
  - [Configuring HTTPS support using the CLI](#)
    - [Displaying HTTP and HTTPS states](#)
    - [Certificates](#)
      - [Displaying available commands](#)
      - [Generating a self-signed certificate](#)
      - [Uploading a certificate from a URL](#)
      - [Deleting an installed certificate](#)
    - [Configuring the interface protocol](#)
      - [Configuring the interface for HTTP only](#)
      - [Configuring the interface for HTTPS only](#)
      - [Configuring the interface for HTTP and HTTPS](#)
- [Configuring DNS](#)
  - [Configuring the domain name](#)
    - [Configuring the domain name using the CLI](#)
    - [Configuring the domain name using the Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring a DNS server](#)
    - [Configuring a DNS server using the CLI](#)
    - [Configuring a DNS server using the Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring proxy DNS](#)
    - [Configuring proxy DNS using the CLI](#)
    - [Enabling proxy DNS using the Web UI](#)



Changes to the switch NOS configuration are not persistent after rebooting the switch NOS.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config.

From the switch NOS Web UI:

- Select **Maintenance**, **Configuration** and then **Save startup-config**. Click on **Save Configuration** to confirm the change.

From the switch NOS CLI:

- LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# end
- LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~# copy running-config startup-config

## Configuring IP addresses to access the switch NOS

This section is used to configure IP addresses allowing access to the configuration and management interfaces of the network operating system (NOS). This is the application responsible for implementing L2/L3 packet forwarding features.

One such feature is packet forwarding decisions based on VLAN tag. In that context, IP addresses to communicate with the NOS are attached to a VLAN defined in the NOS database. The switch always has at least VLAN1 that can be assigned an interface.

Refer to [Configuring switch VLANs](#) for procedures to add VLANs with the network operating system.

## Adding a NOS VLAN interface IP address

This can be done using:

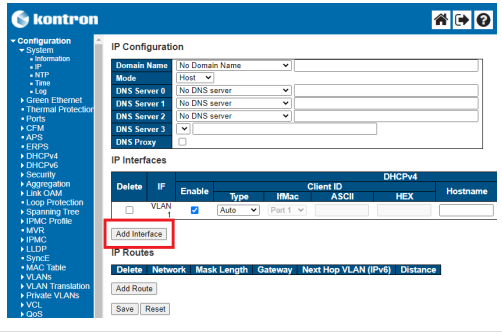
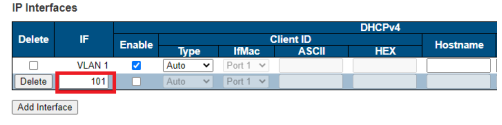
- The [Web UI](#)
- The [CLI](#)



## Adding a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

### Adding a NOS VLAN interface

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the <b>Add Interface</b> button.	
Step_3	Enter the VLAN numerical ID. <b>NOTE:</b> As explained above, the VLAN must already exist to create the NOS IP address interface.	
Step_4	Proceed with IP address configuration as explained below.	

There are two options to configure IP addresses:

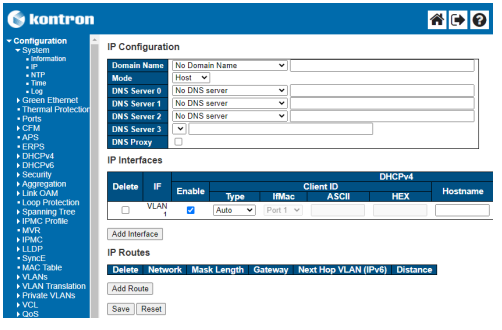
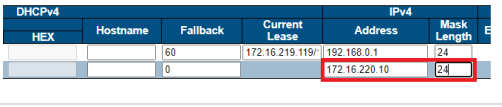
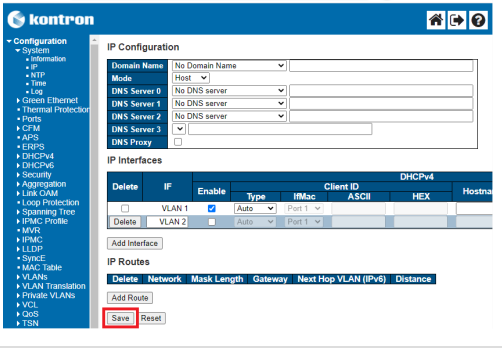
- Configuring a [static IP address](#)
- Configuring a [dynamic IP address using DHCP](#)

### Configuring a static IP address

Relevant sections:

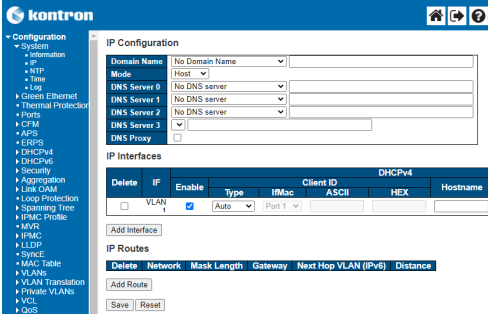
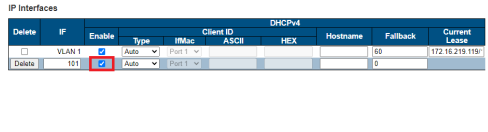
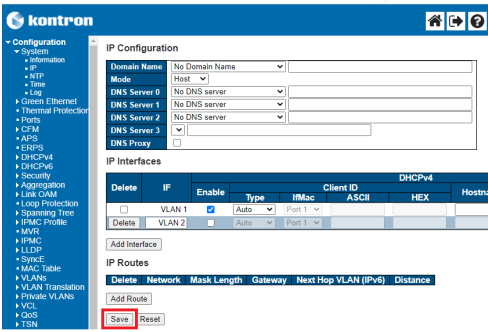
- [Configuring static routing](#)
- [Configuring DNS](#)

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	Manually configure the IP address and the network mask length of the VLAN interface.	
Step_3	Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring a dynamic IP address using DHCP

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	<p>Enable the DHCP by checking the checkbox associated with the interface.</p> <p>The <b>Hostname</b> field allows the DHCP client to use a different hostname than the NOS for the DHCP option 12 field.</p> <p>The <b>Fallback</b> is a timeout in seconds after which the interface will be configured using the static IP address in the proper fields if an address cannot be obtained via DHCP.</p>	
Step_3	Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Adding a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the CLI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

### Adding a NOS VLAN interface using a static IP address

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	<p>Enter the VLAN interface configuration mode.</p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b></p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>interface VLAN [VLAN_ID]</b></p>	<pre># configure terminal (config)# interface vlan 1</pre>
Step_2	<p>Set the static IP address source.</p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config-if-vlan)# <b>ip address [IP_ADDRESS] [MASK]</b></p>	<pre>(config-if-vlan)# ip address 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Adding a NOS VLAN interface using DHCP

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	<p>Enter the VLAN interface configuration mode.</p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b></p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>interface VLAN [VLAN_ID]</b></p>	<pre># configure terminal (config)# interface vlan 1</pre>
Step_2	<p>Set the IP address source to DHCP.</p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config-if-vlan)# <b>ip address dhcp</b></p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> To view the IP address assigned, use command <b>do show ip interface</b> .</p>	<pre>(config-if-vlan)# ip address dhcp</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Removing a NOS VLAN interface IP address

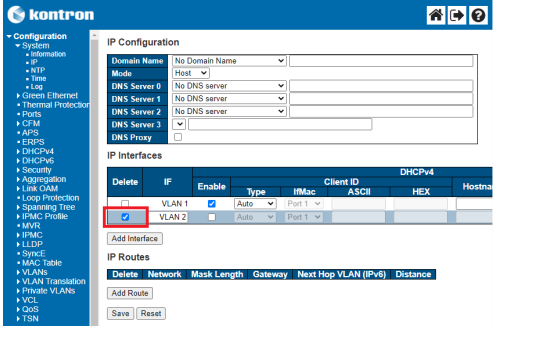
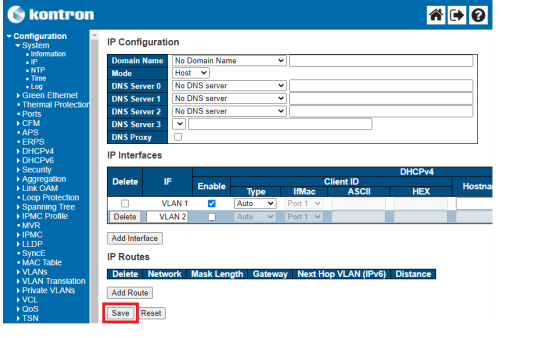
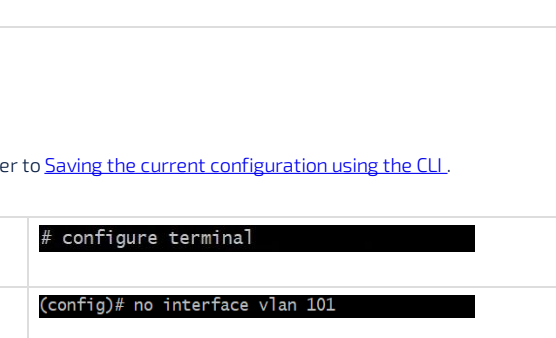
This can be done using:

- The [Web UI](#)
- The [CLI](#)

### Removing a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	Select the VLAN interface to delete.	
Step_3	Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Removing a NOS VLAN interface IP address using the CLI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# configure terminal	
Step_2	Remove the VLAN. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# no interface vlan [VLAN_ID]	
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring HTTPS support

HTTPS support must be configured. This can be done using:

- The switch NOS Web UI
- The switch CLI

### Configuring HTTPS support using the Web UI

The Web server can be accessed using two protocols: HTTP and HTTPS. They are independent and both can be used simultaneously. The network switch can therefore operate in any of the following 3 modes:


- **HTTP only** – All information is transferred in clear text (even passwords). **Not secure!** Communications are on Port 80.
- **HTTPS only** – All information is transferred in encrypted packets. **Communication is secure** . HTTP requests are automatically translated as HTTPS requests. Communications are on Port 443. **A certificate is required for HTTPS.**
- **HTTP and HTTPS** – Users can use any of the 2 protocols. **This is the default state, but a certificate is required for HTTPS.**

For the secure HTTPS protocol to work, a certificate needs to be installed . See the Certificates section below.

### HTTPS configuration page

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

This page is used to configure the HTTPS settings and maintain the current certificate on the switch.

	For the secure HTTPS protocol to work, a certificate needs to be installed. As a temporary measure, the switch can create a self-signed certificate, which is secure but cannot be trusted as a long term solution. Users will need to provide their own certificate, delivered from a valid certificate authority.
---	---

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>Security</b> , <b>Switch</b> and then <b>HTTPS</b> .	
Step_2	Select the desired settings for <b>Mode</b> , <b>Automatic Redirect</b> , <b>Certificate Maintain</b> (based on the value chosen, additional fields will be available) and <b>Certificate Status</b> . See the table below for an explanation of the values available for each field.	
Step_3	Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Values available for fields used for HTTPS configuration

Field	Description	Values
<b>Mode</b>	Sets the HTTPS operation mode.	<b>Enabled</b> : HTTPS operation mode is enabled. <b>Disabled</b> : HTTPS operation mode is disabled.
<b>Automatic Redirect</b>	Sets the HTTPS redirect operation mode. This setting is required only when <b>Mode</b> is set to <b>Enabled</b> . When redirection is enabled, the HTTP connection will be redirected to the HTTPS connection automatically. Note that the browser may not allow redirection due to security considerations, unless the switch certificate is trusted by the browser. An HTTPS connection needs to be manually initialized in this case. When the value of this field is set to <b>Enabled</b> , the HTTP protocol is effectively disabled.	<b>Enabled</b> : HTTPS redirect operation mode is enabled. <b>Disabled</b> : HTTPS redirect operation mode is disabled.
<b>Certificate Maintain</b>	Performs certificate maintenance. This setting is operational only when <b>Mode</b> is set to <b>Disabled</b> .	<b>None</b> : Nothing happens. <b>Delete</b> : Deletes the current certificate. <b>Upload</b> : Uploads a certificate PEM file. <b>Generate</b> : Generates a new self-signed RSA certificate.
<b>Certificate Pass Phrase</b> (Available when the <b>Certificate Maintain</b> field is set to <b>Upload</b> .)	Holds the passphrase protecting the certificate to upload.	
<b>Certificate Upload</b> (Available	Uploads a certificate PEM file into the switch.	<b>Web Browser</b> : Upload a certificate via a Web browser. <b>URL</b> : Upload a certificate via a URL.

	when the <b>Certificate Maintain</b> field is set to <b>Upload</b> .)		The file should contain both the certificate and private key. If the certificate and private key are in two separate files, use the Linux cat command to combine them into a single PEM file: <pre>cat my.cert my.key &gt; my.pem</pre> Note that an RSA certificate is recommended since most newer browser versions have removed support for DSA in certificates (e.g. Firefox v37 and Chrome v39).	
		<b>File Upload</b> (Available when the <b>Certificate Upload</b> field is set to <b>Web Browser</b> .)	Lets users select the file to upload.	
		<b>URL</b> (Available when the <b>Certificate Upload</b> field is set to <b>URL</b> .)	Holds the URL.	URL format: [PROTOCOL]://[USERNAME]:[PASSWORD]@[HOST_IP_ADDRESS]:[PORT] [FILE_PATH] . The protocols supported are HTTP, HTTPS, TFTP and FTP. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tftp://10.10.10.10/new_image_path/new_image.dat</li> <li>• <a href="http://username:password@10.10.10.10:80/new_image_path/new_image.dat">http://username:password@10.10.10.10:80/new_image_path/new_image.dat</a></li> </ul> A valid file name is a text string drawn from alphabet letters (A-Za-z), digits (0-9), dots (.), hyphens (-) and under scores (_). The maximum length is 63 and a hyphen must not be the first character. A file name that only contains '.' is not allowed.
<b>Certificate Status</b>			Displays the current status of the switch certificate.	<b>Switch secure HTTP certificate is presented</b> : When a valid certificate is present. <b>Switch secure HTTP certificate is not presented</b> : When no valid certificate is present or the certificate has been deleted. <b>Switch secure HTTP certificate is generating ....</b> : When the self-signed certificate is being generated (wait 1 minute and then refresh the page for results).

## Certificates

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Any certificate will allow the web server to encrypt the information transferred.

Only certificates obtained from a trusted Certificate Authority (CA) can guarantee authenticity through a chain of trust. CA User Certificate Platform certificate.

There are 3 ways to insert a certificate:

- **Generate a self-signed certificate** – this should only be a temporary solution. It is secure, but not safe. Data will be encrypted, but cannot be trusted.
- **Upload a certificate from a URL**
- **Upload a certificate from a user file system**

## Generating a self-signed certificate

A self-signed certificate, which should only be used as a temporary solution, allows communication to be encrypted, but cannot certify that the server is really what it claims to be.

**NOTE** : The self-signed certificate will be valid for a fixed time period (e.g. November 30th 2021 at 00:00:01 up to November 30th 2031 at 23:59:59).

If a self-signed certificate is used, the Web browser will display a warning message before you can access the page. If this is the case, click on **Advanced**.



### Your connection is not private

Attackers might be trying to steal your information from [192.168.1.1](#) (for example, passwords, messages, or credit cards). [Learn more](#)

NET:ERR\_CERT\_AUTHORITY\_INVALID

To get Chrome's highest level of security, [turn on enhanced protection](#)

Advanced



Back to safety

Then click on the **Proceed to [IP\_ADDRESS] (unsafe)** link.



### Your connection is not private

Attackers might be trying to steal your information from [192.168.1.1](#) (for example, passwords, messages, or credit cards). [Learn more](#)

NET:ERR\_CERT\_AUTHORITY\_INVALID

To get Chrome's highest level of security, [turn on enhanced protection](#)

Hide advanced

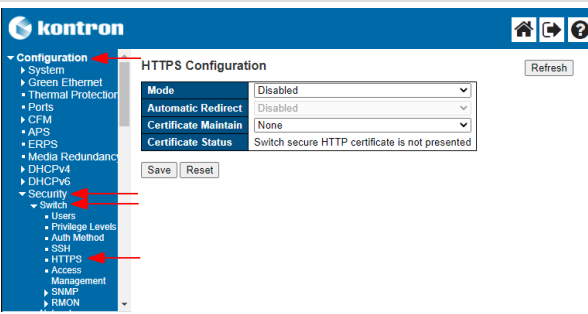

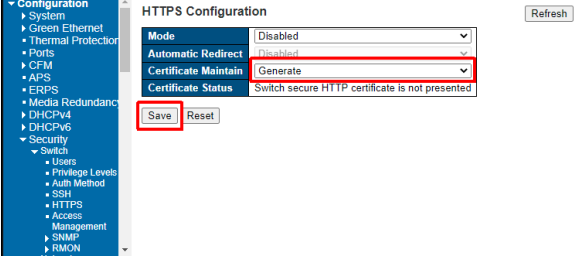
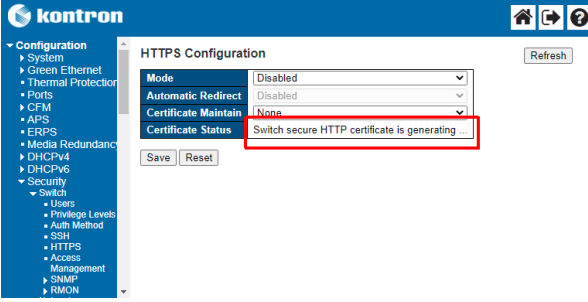
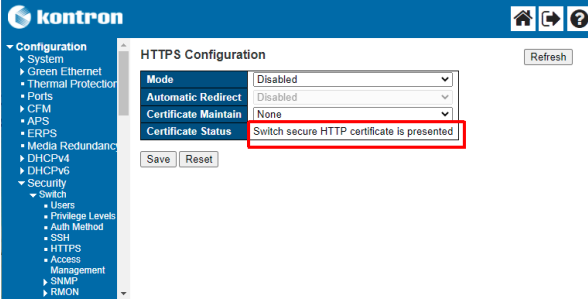
Back to safety

This server could not prove that it is [192.168.1.1](#); its security certificate is not trusted by your computer's operating system. This may be caused by a misconfiguration or an attacker intercepting your connection.

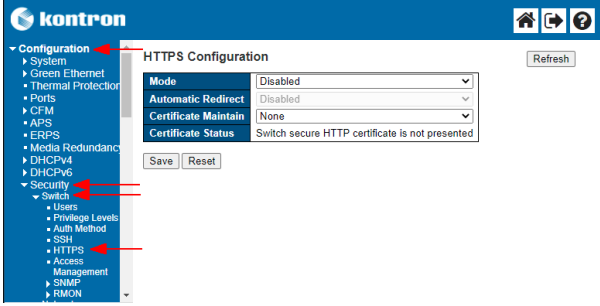


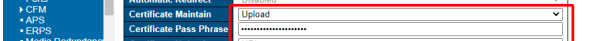
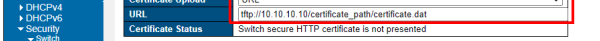

[Proceed to 192.168.1.1 \(unsafe\)](#)



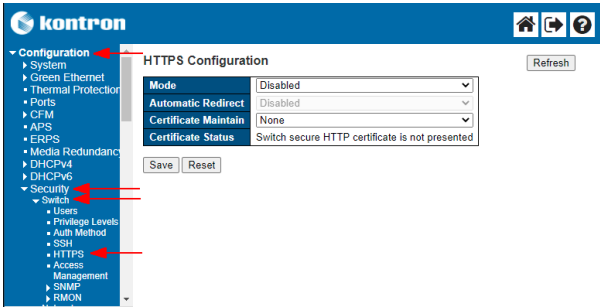


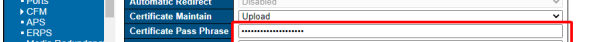
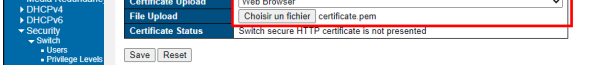

From the switch Web UI, perform the following steps.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration , Security , Switch and then HTTPS .	
Step_2	Set the Certificate Maintain field to Generate .	
Step_3	Press Save to confirm.	
Step_4	The Certificate Status field will indicate that the switch is generating the certificate and will self-refresh.	
Step_5	The Certificate Status field will indicate that the certificate is present.	
Step_6	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Uploading a certificate from a URL

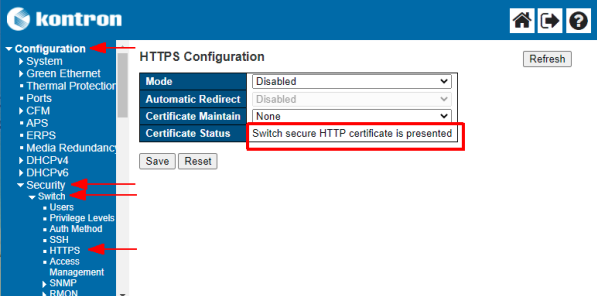
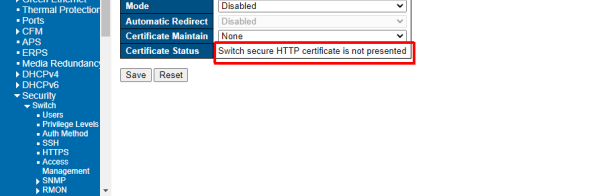
Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration , Security , Switch and then HTTPS .	
Step_2	Set the Certificate Maintain field to Upload .	
Step_3	Enter the pass phrase in the Certificat Pass Phrase field.	
Step_4	Set the Certificate Upload field to URL .	
Step_5	Enter the URL of the certificate in field URL .	
Step_6	Press Save to confirm.	
Step_7	The Certificate Status field will indicate that the certificate is present.	
Step_8	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Uploading a certificate from a user file system

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration , Security , Switch and then HTTPS .	
Step_2	Set the Certificate Maintain field to Upload .	
Step_3	Enter the pass phrase in the Certificat Pass Phrase field.	
Step_4	Set the Certificate Upload field to Web Browser .	
Step_5	In the File Upload field, click Choose a file and browse for the desired file.	
Step_6	Press Save to confirm.	
Step_7	The Certificate Status field will indicate that the certificate is in present.	
Step_8	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Deleting an installed certificate



Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration , Security , Switch and then HTTPS . Ensure the Certificate Status is set to Switch secure HTTP certificate is presented .	
Step_2	Set the Certificate Maintain field to Delete .	
Step_3	The Certificate Status field will indicate that the Switch secure HTTP certificate is not presented .	
Step_4	Press Save to confirm.	
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

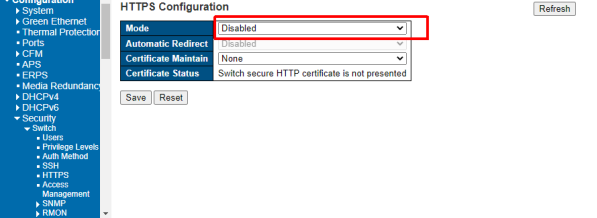
### Configuring the interface protocol

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

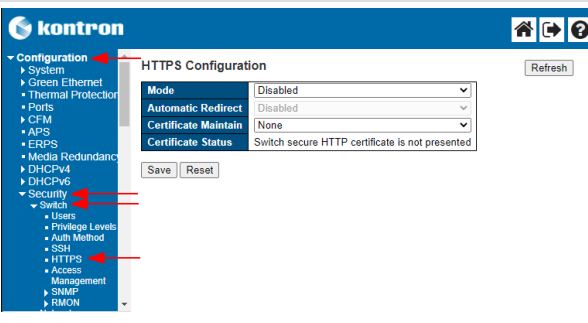
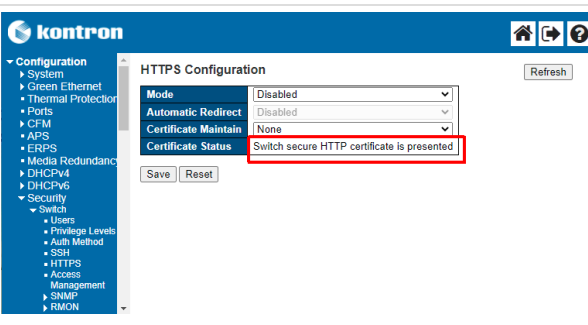


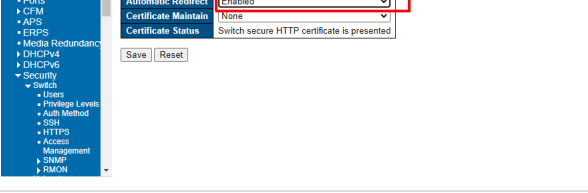
There are three options to configure the interface protocol:

- [HTTP only](#)
- [HTTPS only](#)
- [HTTP and HTTPS](#)

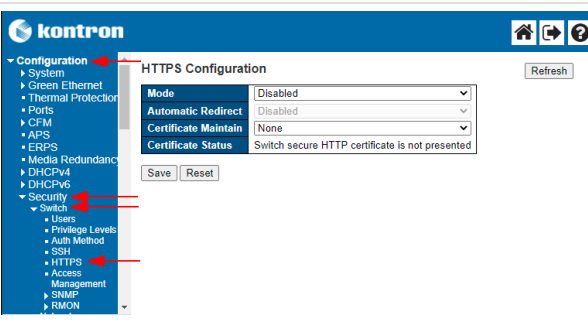
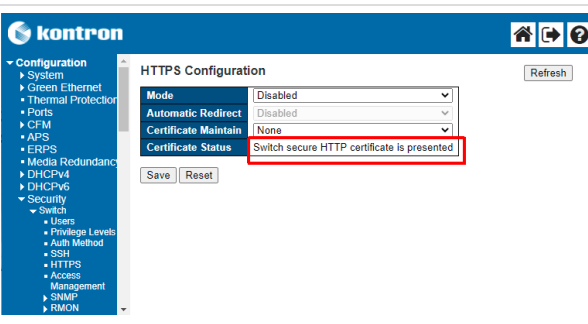

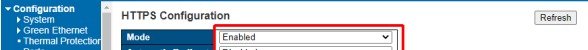
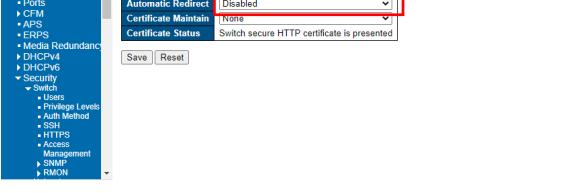
### Configuring the interface for HTTP only

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration , Security , Switch and then HTTPS .	
Step_2	Set the Mode field to Disabled .	
Step_3	Press Save to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring the interface for HTTPS only

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration , Security , Switch and then HTTPS .	
Step_2	Ensure the Certificate Status field is set to Switch secure HTTP certificate is presented .	
Step_3	Set the Mode field to Enabled .	
Step_4	Set the Automatic Redirect field to Enabled .	
Step_5	Press Save to confirm.	
Step_6	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring the interface for HTTP and HTTPS

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Configuration , Security , Switch and then HTTPS .	
Step_2	Ensure the Certificate Status field is set to Switch secure HTTP certificate is presented .	
Step_3	Set the Mode field to Enabled .	
Step_4	Set the Automatic Redirect field to Disabled .	
Step_5	Press Save to confirm.	
Step_6	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring HTTPS support using the CLI

The Web server can be accessed using two protocols: HTTP and HTTPS. They are independent and both can be used simultaneously. The network switch can therefore operate in any of the following 3 modes:

- **HTTP only** – All information is transferred in clear text (even passwords). **Not secure!** Communications are on Port 80.
- **HTTPS only** – All information is transferred in encrypted packets. **Communication is secure** . HTTP requests are automatically translated as HTTPS requests. Communications are on Port 443. **A certificate is required for HTTPS.**
- **HTTP and HTTPS** – Users can use any of the 2 protocols. **This is the default state, but a certificate is required for HTTPS.**

For the secure HTTPS protocol to work, a certificate needs to be installed . See the Certificates section below.

### Displaying HTTP and HTTPS states

Refer to [Accessing the switch network operating system](#) for access instructions.

To know the states of the various secure HTTP variables, two command can be used: `show ip http` (in normal mode) or `do show ip http` (in configuration mode).

Step_1	LocalSwitchNOS_05Prompt:~# show ip http	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4# show ip http Switch secure HTTP web server is disabled Switch secure HTTP web redirection is disabled Switch secure HTTP certificate is not presented</pre>
--------	---	---

Field	Description	Value
Switch secure HTTP web server is	Shows the state of the <b>Switch secure HTTP web server</b> . When the state is <b>Enabled</b> , secure HTTPS communications trough port 443 are available. <b>NOTE</b> : For the state to be <b>Enabled</b> , a certificate <b>must</b> be present.	Enabled Disabled
Switch secure HTTP web redirection is	When the state is <b>Enabled</b> , HTTP communications are redirected to the <b>Switch secure HTTP web server</b> . This means the HTTP web server is no longer used. <b>NOTE</b> : For the state to be <b>Enabled</b> , the <b>Switch secure HTTP web server must</b> be set to <b>Enabled</b> beforehand.	Enabled Disabled
Switch secure HTTP certificate is	Shows if a certificate is installed in the system. Presented means that a certificate is installed and can be used for HTTPS encryption.	Presented Not presented

### Certificates

Refer to [Accessing the switch network operating system](#) for access instructions.

Any certificate will allow the web server to encrypt the information transferred.

Only certificates obtained from a trusted Certificate Authority (CA) can guarantee authenticity trough a chain of thrust. CA User Certificate Platform certificate.

There are 3 ways to insert a certificate:

- **Generate a self-signed certificate** – this should only be a temporary solution. It is secure, but not safe. Data will be encrypted, but cannot be trusted.
- **Upload a certificate from a URL**
- **Upload a certificate from a user file system**

### Displaying available commands

Step_1	Go in configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_05Prompt:~# configure terminal	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4# configure terminal NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# ip http secure-certificate ? delete      Delete the current certificate generate    Generate a new self-signed RSA certificate upload      Upload a certificate PEM file</pre>
Step_2	Show available commands. LocalSwitchNOS_05Prompt:~(config)# ip http secure-certificate ?	

### Generating a self-signed certificate

A self-signed certificate, which should only be used as a temporary solution, allows communication to be encrypted, but cannot certify that the server is really what it claims to be.

**NOTE** : The self-signed certificate will be valid for a fixed time period (e.g. November 30th 2021 at 00:00:01 up to November 30th 2031 at 23:59:59).

If a self-signed certificate is used, the Web browser will display a warning message before you can access the page. If this is the case, click on **Advanced**.



Your connection is not private

Attackers might be trying to steal your information from [example.com](#) (for example, passwords, messages, or credit cards). [Learn more](#)

NET-ERR\_CERT\_AUTHORITY\_INVALID

To get Chrome's highest level of security, [turn on enhanced protection](#)

Advanced

Back to safety

Then click on the Proceed to [IP\_ADDRESS] (unsafe) link.



### Your connection is not private

Attackers might be trying to steal your information from [kontron.com](#) (for example, passwords, messages, or credit cards). [Learn more](#)

NET-ERR\_CERT\_AUTHORITY\_INVALID

To get Chrome's highest level of security, [turn on enhanced protection](#)

Hide advanced Back to safety

This server could not prove that it is [kontron.com](#) its security certificate is not trusted by your computer's operating system. This may be caused by a misconfiguration or an attacker intercepting your connection.

Proceed to [kontron.com](#) (unsafe)

From the network switch CLI:

Step_1	Go in configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4# configure terminal NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# ip http secure-certificate generate</pre>
Step_2	Generate a certificate. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ip http secure-certificate generate</b>	
Step_3	Ensure the certificate and HTTP web server are correctly configured. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>do show ip http</b> <b>NOTE</b> : Certificate generation can take a few seconds. If it is still generating when checking the status, the CLI will indicate that it is generating...	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# do show ip http Switch secure HTTP web server is disabled Switch secure HTTP web redirection is disabled Switch secure HTTP certificate is generating ...</pre>
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Uploading a certificate from a URL

Step_1	Enter the configuration terminal. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	
Step_2	Upload the certificate. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ip http secure-certificate upload [ PROTOCOL ] ://[USERNAME ]:[PASSWORD]@[HOST_IP_ADDRESS]: [PORT][FILE_PATH ]</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4# configure terminal NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# ip http secure-certificate upload tftp://10.10.10.10/certificate.pem</pre>
Step_3	Ensure the certificate and HTTP web server are correctly configured. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>do show ip http</b> <b>NOTE</b> : Certificate generation can take a few seconds. If it is still generating when checking the status, the CLI will indicate that it is generating.	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# do show ip http Switch secure HTTP web server is disabled Switch secure HTTP web redirection is disabled Switch secure HTTP certificate is generating ...</pre>
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Deleting an installed certificate

Step_1	Go in configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4# configure terminal NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# ip http secure-certificate delete NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)#</pre>
Step_2	LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ip http secure-certificate delete</b>	
Step_3	Ensure the certificate and HTTP web server are correctly configured. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>do show ip http</b>	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring the interface protocol

Refer to [Accessing the switch network operating system](#) for access instructions.

There are three options to configure the interface protocol:

- [HTTP only](#)
- [HTTPS only](#)
- [HTTP and HTTPS](#)

## Configuring the interface for HTTP only

If the interface is configured for HTTP only, the HTTPS Switch secure HTTP web server will be disabled and so will the Switch secure HTTP web redirection.

Step_1	Enter the configuration terminal. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# no ip http secure-server NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# do show ip http Switch secure HTTP web server is disabled Switch secure HTTP web redirection is disabled Switch secure HTTP certificate is presented</pre>
Step_2	LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>no ip http secure-server</b>	
Step_3	Ensure the certificate and HTTP web server are correctly configured. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt: ~(config) # <b>do show ip http</b>	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring the interface for HTTPS only

To configure the interface for HTTPS only, the HTTPS server must be enabled and the redirection must also be enabled. This will disable the HTTP server.

Step_1	Enter the configuration terminal. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# ip http secure-server NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# ip http secure-redirect NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# do show ip http Switch secure HTTP web server is enabled Switch secure HTTP web redirection is enabled Switch secure HTTP certificate is presented</pre>
Step_2	Configure the interface for HTTPS. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ip http secure-server</b>	
Step_3	Enable redirection. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ip http secure-redirect</b>	
Step_4	Ensure the certificate and HTTP web server are correctly configured. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt: ~(config) # <b>do show ip http</b>	
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring the interface for HTTP and HTTPS

Step_1	Enter the configuration terminal. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# ip http secure-server NOS00A0A5E01CF4(config)# do show ip http Switch secure HTTP web server is enabled Switch secure HTTP web redirection is disabled Switch secure HTTP certificate is presented</pre>
Step_2	LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ip http secure-server</b>	
Step_3	Ensure the certificate and HTTP web server are correctly configured. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt: ~(config) # <b>do show ip http</b>	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring DNS

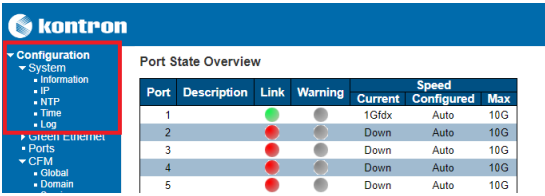
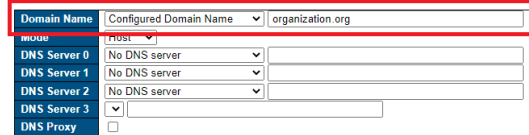
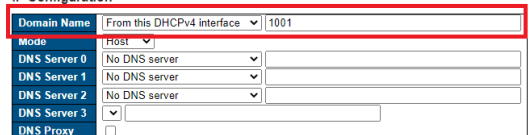

NOTE: Only IPv4-based protocols have been tested and therefore no IPv6 protocols have been documented.

### Configuring the domain name

#### Configuring the domain name using the CLI

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Three methods of domain name configuration are supported. A server can be configured from a local domain name, from any DHCPv4-enabled VLAN interface, or from a specific DHCPv4-enabled VLAN interface. The following examples cover all methods. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>ip domain name [DOMAIN_NAME]</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>ip domain name dhcp ipv4</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>ip domain name dhcp ipv4 interface vlan [VLAN_ID ]</b> To disable the domain name, use the <b>no</b> prefix before the <b>domain name</b> command.  LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>no ip domain name</b>	<pre>(config)# ip domain name organization.org (config)# ip domain name dhcp ipv4 (config)# ip domain name dhcp ipv4 interface vlan 1001</pre>
Step_3	Verify that configuration was successful. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>do show ip domain</b>	<pre>(config)# do show ip domain Current domain name is organization.org (managed by DHCPv4).</pre>
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring the domain name using the Web UI

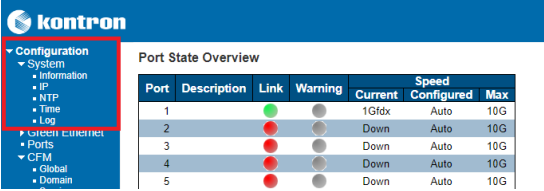
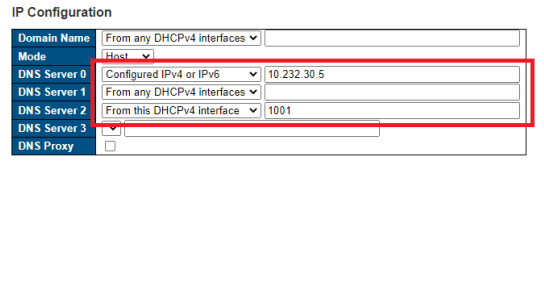

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , then <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	<p>From the IP Configuration section, select the <b>Domain Name</b> configuration method from the dropdown menu. Then, if required, configure the value in the adjacent input field. The configuration methods are as listed below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>No Domain Name:</b> No domain name will be used. No value is required in the input field.</li> <li>• <b>Configured Domain Name:</b> Explicitly specify the name of the local domain in the input field. Make sure the configured domain name meets your organization's given domain.</li> <li>• <b>From any DHCPv4 interfaces:</b> The first domain name offered from a DHCPv4 lease to a DHCPv4-enabled VLAN interface will be used. No value is required in the input field.</li> <li>• <b>From this DHCPv4 interface:</b> Specify from which DHCPv4-enabled VLAN interface a provided domain name should be preferred.</li> </ul>	<p>Example for Configured Domain Name:</p>  <p>Example for From this DHCPv4 Interface :</p> 
Step_3	Click on the <b>Save</b> button.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring a DNS server

### Configuring a DNS server using the CLI

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	<p>Up to 3 DNS servers can be configured in the switch NOS. The DNS server IDs can range from 0 to 2.</p> <p>Three methods of DNS server configuration are supported. A server can be configured from a DNS server IPv4 unicast address, from any DHCPv4-enabled VLAN interface, or from a specific DHCPv4-enabled VLAN interface. The following examples cover all methods.</p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>ip name-server [DNS_SERVER_ID] [DNS_SERVER_IP_ADDR]</b></p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>ip name-server [DNS_SERVER_ID] dhcp ipv4</b></p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>ip name-server [DNS_SERVER_ID] dhcp ipv4 interface vlan [VLAN_ID]</b></p> <p>To disable a DNS server, use the <b>no</b> prefix before the <b>name-server</b> command.</p> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>no ip name-server [DNS_SERVER_ID]</b></p>	<pre>(config)# ip name-server 0 10.232.30.5 (config)# ip name-server 1 dhcp ipv4 (config)# ip name-server 2 dhcp ipv4 interface vlan 1001</pre>
Step_3	Verify that configuration was successful. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>do show ip name-server</b>	<pre>(config)# do show ip name-server Configured DNS server 0 is set by NONE: No address is used for DNS lookup. Configured DNS server 1 is set by DHCPv4 VLAN 1: 10.232.30.5 is used for DNS lookup on IP VLAN 1. Configured DNS server 2 is set by DHCPv4 VLAN 1001: No address is used for DNS lookup on IP VLAN 1001.</pre>
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring a DNS server using the Web UI

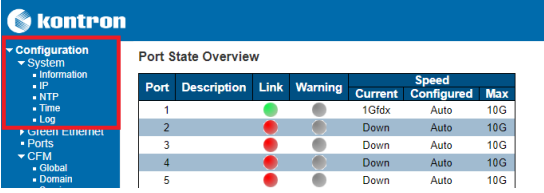
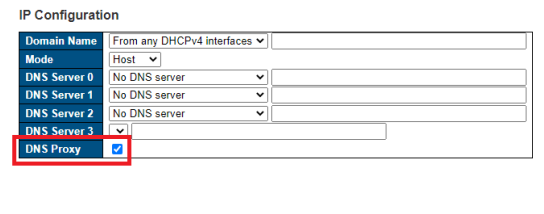

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , then <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	From the <b>IP Configuration</b> section, select the DNS server configuration method from the dropdown menu. Then, if required, configure the value in the adjacent input field. The configuration methods are as listed below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>No DNS server:</b> No DNS server will be used.</li> <li>• <b>Configured IPv4:</b> Explicitly provide the IPv4 unicast address of the DNS server in dotted decimal notation in the input field. Make sure the configured DNS server is reachable.</li> <li>• <b>From any DHCPv4 interfaces:</b> The first DNS server offered from a DHCPv4 lease to a DHCPv4-enabled interface will be used.</li> <li>• <b>From this DHCPv4 interface:</b> Specify from which DHCPv4-enabled interface a provided DNS server should be preferred. Enter a VLAN ID in the input field.</li> </ul>	
Step_3	Click on the <b>Save</b> button.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring proxy DNS

### Configuring proxy DNS using the CLI

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	To enable the proxy DNS, use the following command. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>ip dns proxy</b> To disable the proxy DNS, use the same command with the no prefix. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>no ip dns proxy</b>	<pre>(config)# ip dns proxy (config)#  (config)# no ip dns proxy (config)#</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Enabling proxy DNS using the Web UI

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , then <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	From the <b>IP Configuration</b> , enable or disable proxy DNS by clicking on the <b>DNS Proxy</b> checkbox.	
Step_3	Click on the <b>Save</b> button.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring BMC services



# Configuring BMC SNMP

Table of contents

- [Configuring SNMP remote management](#)
  - [Configuring SNMP remote management using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring SNMP remote management using Redfish](#)

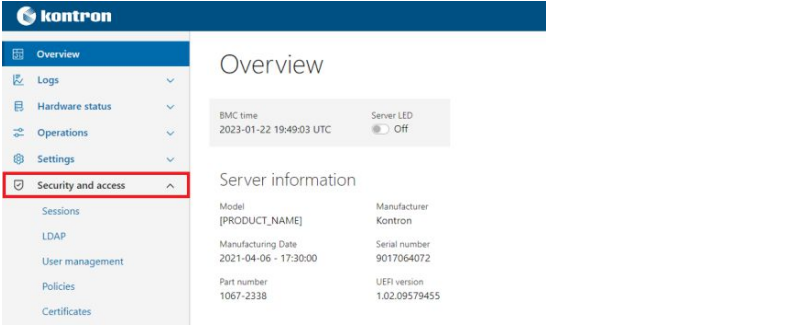



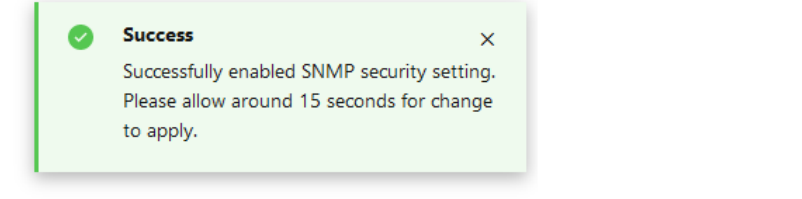
## Configuring SNMP remote management

The BMC SNMP can be configured:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)

### Configuring SNMP remote management using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select Security and access and then Policies .	
Step_2	Enable or disable SNMP remote management using the radio button.	
Step_3	If SNMP remote management was enabled, change the Community String to a unique name.	
Step_4	Click on the Save button.	
Step_5	A success message should appear upon successful configuration.	

### Configuring SNMP remote management using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Enable or Disable SNMP remote management using the following command.</p> <p>Possible values for [ENABLED] are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true</li> <li>• false</li> </ul> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:-\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"SNMP":{"ProtocolEnabled":[ENABLED]}}'   jq</p> <pre>curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"SNMP":{"ProtocolEnabled":true}}'   jq</pre>
Step_2	<p>Configure SNMP remote management Community String.</p> <p>Ensure that [STRING] is a unique community name.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:-\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"CommunityString":["STRING"]}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"CommunityString":"communitystring"}'   jq</pre>



# Configuring BMC event subscriptions

Table of contents

- [Configuring the SNMP traps](#)
  - [Configuring the SNMP traps using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring the SNMP traps using Redfish](#)

Relevant section :

[Configuring BMC SNMP](#)

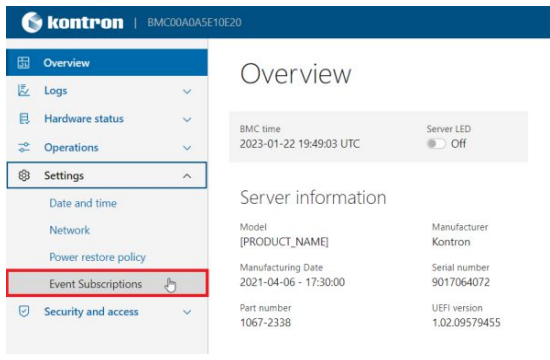
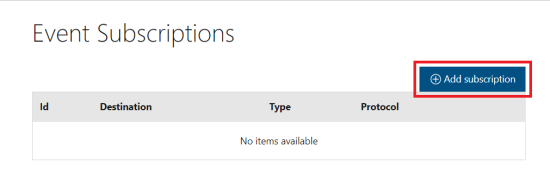
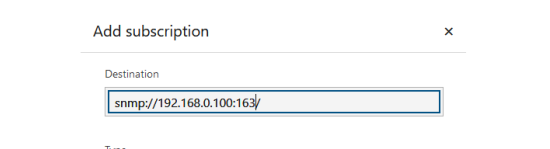
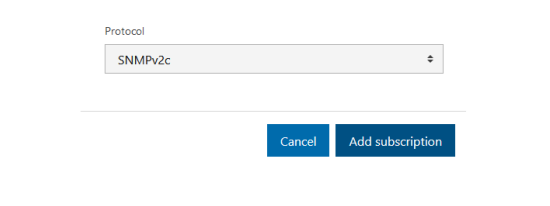
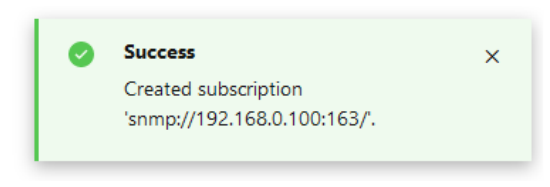
## Configuring the SNMP traps

The BMC SNMP traps can be configured:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)

### Configuring the SNMP traps using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Settings</b> and then <b>Event Subscriptions</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the <b>Add subscription</b> button.	
Step_3	In the <b>Add subscription</b> menu, enter the destination address into the <b>Destination</b> field. The destination address should be formatted as follows: <b>[PROTOCOL]://[ADDRESS]:[PORT]/</b> <b>NOTE:</b> The slash (/) at the end of the destination address is required.	
Step_4	Select <b>SNMPTrap</b> from the <b>Type</b> dropdown menu.	
Step_5	Select <b>SNMPv2c</b> from the <b>Protocol</b> dropdown menu.	
Step_6	A success message should appear in the top right corner upon successful configuration.	

### Configuring the SNMP traps using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step\_1

Add a new SNMP trap subscription using the following command.

```
RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~$ curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/EventService/Subscriptions --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Destination": "snmp://[SERVER]:[PORT]", "SubscriptionType": "SNMPTrap", "Protocol": "SNMPv2c"}' | jq
```

```
curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/EventService/Subscriptions --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Destination": "snmp://192.168.0.1:163", "SubscriptionType": "SNMPTrap", "Protocol": "SNMPv2c"}' | jq
{
  "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [
    {
      "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",
      "Message": "The resource has been created successfully",
      "MessageArgs": [],
      "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Created",
      "MessageSeverity": "OK",
      "Resolution": "None"
    }
  ]
}
```

# Configuring the switch

## Table of contents

- [Help tools](#)
  - [Switch Web user interface help](#)
  - [Switch CLI help](#)
- [Port map configuration](#)
  - [Switch NOS port mapping](#)
  - [Selecting a port map configuration](#)
    - [Description of available port maps](#)
    - [Listing port map configurations](#)
    - [Selecting a port map configuration](#)
- [Verifying link status](#)
  - [Verifying link status using the CLI](#)
  - [Verifying link status using the Web UI](#)
- [Enabling a switch port](#)
  - [Enabling a switch port using the CLI](#)
  - [Enabling a switch port using the Web UI](#)
- [Disabling a switch port](#)
  - [Disabling a switch port using the CLI](#)
  - [Disabling a switch port using the Web UI](#)
- [Changing link speed](#)
  - [Changing link speed using the CLI](#)
  - [Changing link speed using the Web UI](#)
- [Configuring switch VLANs](#)
  - [Displaying VLANs](#)
    - [Displaying VLANs using the CLI](#)
    - [Displaying VLANs using the Web UI](#)
  - [Creating a VLAN](#)
    - [Creating a VLAN using the CLI](#)
    - [Creating a VLAN using the Web UI](#)
  - [Removing a VLAN](#)
    - [Removing a VLAN using the CLI](#)
    - [Removing a VLAN using the Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring VLAN port membership](#)
    - [Configuring port membership using the CLI](#)
    - [Configuring port membership using the Web UI](#)
- [Configuring static routing](#)
  - [Configuring static routing using the CLI](#)
  - [Configuring static routing using the Web UI](#)
- [Managing the switch configuration](#)
  - [Managing the switch configuration using the CLI](#)
    - [Displaying the running configuration using the CLI](#)
    - [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#)
    - [Restoring the default configuration using the CLI](#)
  - [Managing the switch configuration using the Web UI](#)
    - [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#)
    - [Restoring the default configuration using the Web UI](#)

## Relevant sections:

- [Accessing the switch NOS](#)
- [Accessing the operating system of a server](#)
- [Configuring and managing users](#)



Changes to the switch NOS configuration are not persistent after rebooting the switch NOS.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config.

From the switch NOS Web UI:

- Select **Maintenance**, **Configuration** and then **Save startup-config**. Click on **Save Configuration** to confirm the change.

From the switch NOS CLI:

- LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# end
- LocalSwitchNOS\_OSPrompt:~# copy running-config startup-config

## Help tools

### Switch Web user interface help

The Help menu of the switch Web user interface is comprehensive. It should be used to configure the system.

### Switch CLI help

The switch CLI contains a context-sensitive help feature. Use the ? symbol to display the next possible parameters or commands and their descriptions. Almost all configuration commands have a corresponding 'no' form. The 'no' form is syntactically similar (but not necessarily identical) to the configuration command; however, it either resets the parameters to default values for the configurable item or disables the item altogether.

```
NOS00A0A5E01CF4# show interface * ?
<port_type_list>  Port list for all port types
capabilities       Display capabilities.
description        Description of interface
statistics         Display statistics
status            Display status.
switchport        Show interface switchport information
transceiver       Show SFP transceiver properties
verify           Display the latest cable diagnostic results.
NOS00A0A5E01CF4# show interface * |
```

## Port map configuration


### Switch NOS port mapping

The following table lists the physical ports of the Ethernet switch of a ME1310 with the appropriate IO module. Note that, in the switch NOS, physical ports are a category of interfaces. The port designation is used in CLI commands, denoted by **[INTERFACE\_ID]** below, to monitor or configure the corresponding port. As shown below, the switch NOS has a configurable port map. Active ports from the table below differ from the selected port map.

NOS port designation	Connection device	Integrated server PCIe bus
Ethernet 1/1	SFP Sw 1	N/A
Ethernet 1/2	SFP Sw 2	N/A
Ethernet 1/3	SFP Sw 3	N/A
Ethernet 1/4	SFP Sw 4	N/A
Ethernet 1/5	SFP Sw 5	N/A
Ethernet 1/6	SFP Sw 6	N/A
Ethernet 1/7	SFP Sw 7	N/A
Ethernet 1/8	SFP Sw 8	N/A
Ethernet 1/9	SFP Sw 9	N/A
Ethernet 1/10	SFP Sw 10	N/A
Ethernet 1/11	SFP Sw 11	N/A
Ethernet 1/12	SFP Sw 12	N/A
Ethernet 1/13	eno1 *	00:89:00.3
Ethernet 1/14	eno2 *	00:89:00.2
Ethernet 1/15	eno3 *	00:89:00.1
Ethernet 1/16	eno4 *	00:89:00.0

\* eno1-4 is the typical Linux nomenclature as seen in the integrated server operating system.


### Selecting a port map configuration



Unlike other configuration elements, a port map configuration change cannot be applied immediately and requires rebooting the switch. As such, it has no impact on running-config, and there is therefore no need to copy running-config to startup-config to make the change permanent. For the same reason, reloading the switch default configuration does not affect port map selection as default settings are reloaded to running-config and are volatile until copied to startup-config. Default port map configuration must be manually selected by running **portmap cfg 0** in configuration mode, then rebooting the switch.

### Description of available port maps

Port map	Active front panel SFP ports		Internal server ports
0	12x SFP+ 10GbE	SFP1-12	4x 10GBASE-KR
1	7x SFP+ 10GbE	SFP1-7	4x 10GBASE-KR
	2x SFP28 25GbE	SFP9-10	
2	2x SFP+ 10GbE	SFP1-2	4x 10GBASE-KR
	4x SFP28 25GbE	SFP9-12	
3	4x SFP28 25GbE	SFP9-12	4x 25GBASE-KR



SFP ports not in the active list cannot be used or configured. CLI configuration commands will respond with a message explaining this. Web UI elements will not offer the unavailable selections. The port map can only be configured using the CLI.

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

## Listing port map configurations

Different port map configurations are available, allowing for combinations of 10GbE and 25GbE ports without exceeding the switch total bandwidth allocation limit.

There are two methods to list the possible port map configurations and report the one currently active:

### From EXEC mode

Step_1	Show available port map configuration options and the port map configuration currently active. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# show portmap	<pre># show portmap ID 10G ports 25G ports Unused ports ----- 0 1/1-16 None None 1 1/1-7,13-16 1/9-10 1/8,11-12 2 1/1-2,13-16 1/9-12 1/3-8 3 None 1/9-16 1/1-8 Active port map configuration: 0</pre>
--------	---	---

### From Configuration mode

Step_1	Access the configuration setup menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# configure terminal	# configure terminal
Step_2	Show available port map configuration options and the port map configuration currently active. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# portmap list  <b>NOTE:</b> The ID is the value of parameter [PORTMAP_ID] used in the commands.	<pre>(config)# portmap list ID 10G ports 25G ports Unused ports ----- 0 1/1-16 None None 1 1/1-7,13-16 1/9-10 1/8,11-12 2 1/1-2,13-16 1/9-12 1/3-8 3 None 1/9-16 1/1-8 Active port map configuration: 0</pre>

In both cases, if a port map configuration that differs from the active one is selected, but not yet applied because the switch has not been rebooted yet, it will be indicated as follows:

<pre># show portmap ID 10G ports 25G ports Unused ports ----- 0 1/1-16 None None 1 1/1-7,13-16 1/9-10 1/8,11-12 2 1/1-2,13-16 1/9-12 1/3-8 3 None 1/9-16 1/1-8 Active port map configuration: 0 Selected port map configuration: 1 (Selected port map will take effect following switch reboot)</pre>
---

## Selecting a port map configuration

Step_1	Access the configuration setup menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# configure terminal	# configure terminal
Step_2	Select the desired port map configuration ID based on port map list. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# portmap cfg [PORTMAP_ID]	(config)# portmap cfg 2 Switch must be rebooted for new port map to take effect
Step_3	Exit configuration mode and reboot the switch NOS to make the new configuration effective. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# end LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# reload cold	(config)# end # reload cold % Cold reload in progress, please stand by.

## Verifying link status

Link status can be verified using:

- The CLI
- The switch Web UI

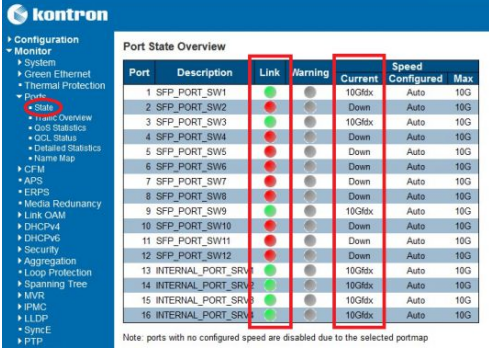
### Verifying link status using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Verify every link status. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# show interface * status	<pre>NOS00A0A5E24F56# show interface * status Interface Mode Speed Max Aneg Media Type SFP Family Link Operational Warnings ----- Eth 1/1 Enabled Auto 10G No SFP 10G Optical 10Gfdx Eth 1/2 Enabled Auto 10G No SFP None Down Eth 1/3 Enabled Auto 10G No SFP 10G Optical 10Gfdx Eth 1/4 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/5 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/6 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/7 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/8 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/9 Enabled Auto 10G No SFP 10G DAC 10Gfdx Eth 1/10 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/11 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/12 Enabled Auto 10G Unknown SFP None Down Eth 1/13 Enabled Auto 10G Yes (C173) SFP 10G CuBP 10Gfdx Eth 1/14 Enabled Auto 10G Yes (C173) SFP 10G CuBP 10Gfdx Eth 1/15 Enabled Auto 10G Yes (C173) SFP 10G CuBP 10Gfdx Eth 1/16 Enabled Auto 10G Yes (C173) SFP 10G CuBP 10Gfdx</pre>
--------	---	---

## Verifying link status using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

<p>Step_1</p> <p>From the left-side menu, select <b>Monitor</b> , then <b>Ports</b> and then <b>State</b>.  <b>NOTE:</b> This is also the default landing page when accessing the switch NOS Web UI.</p>		 <table border="1"> <caption>Port State Overview</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>Port</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Link</th> <th>Warning</th> <th>Current</th> <th>Speed Configured</th> <th>Max</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW1</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW2</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW3</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW4</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW5</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW6</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW7</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW8</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW9</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW10</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW11</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>SFP_PORT_SW12</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>INTERNAL_PORT_SRV1</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>INTERNAL_PORT_SRV2</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>INTERNAL_PORT_SRV3</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> <tr><td>16</td><td>INTERNAL_PORT_SRV4</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Auto</td><td>10G</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note: ports with no configured speed are disabled due to the selected portmap</p>	Port	Description	Link	Warning	Current	Speed Configured	Max	1	SFP_PORT_SW1	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G	2	SFP_PORT_SW2	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	3	SFP_PORT_SW3	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G	4	SFP_PORT_SW4	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	5	SFP_PORT_SW5	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	6	SFP_PORT_SW6	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	7	SFP_PORT_SW7	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	8	SFP_PORT_SW8	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	9	SFP_PORT_SW9	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G	10	SFP_PORT_SW10	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	11	SFP_PORT_SW11	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	12	SFP_PORT_SW12	●	●	Down	Auto	10G	13	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV1	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G	14	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV2	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G	15	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV3	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G	16	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV4	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G
Port	Description	Link	Warning	Current	Speed Configured	Max																																																																																																																			
1	SFP_PORT_SW1	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
2	SFP_PORT_SW2	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
3	SFP_PORT_SW3	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
4	SFP_PORT_SW4	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
5	SFP_PORT_SW5	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
6	SFP_PORT_SW6	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
7	SFP_PORT_SW7	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
8	SFP_PORT_SW8	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
9	SFP_PORT_SW9	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
10	SFP_PORT_SW10	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
11	SFP_PORT_SW11	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
12	SFP_PORT_SW12	●	●	Down	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
13	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV1	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
14	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV2	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
15	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV3	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			
16	INTERNAL_PORT_SRV4	●	●	10Gfx	Auto	10G																																																																																																																			

## Enabling a switch port

Switch ports can be enabled using:

- The CLI
- The switch Web UI

### Enabling a switch port using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

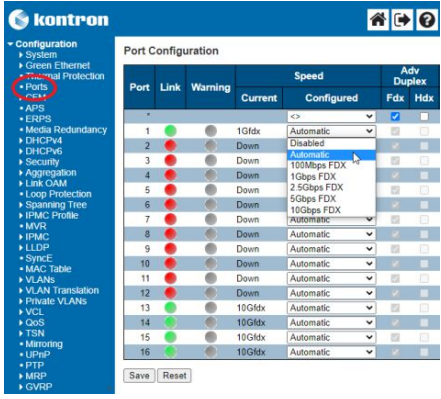
To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Access the interface setup menu.          LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# configure terminal          LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# interface [INTERFACE_ID]</p>	<pre># configure terminal (config)# interface Ethernet 1/6 (config-if)#</pre>
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>Enable the interface.          LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# no shutdown</p>	<pre>(config-if)# no shutdown</pre>
<p>Step_3</p>	<p>(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.</p>	

### Enabling a switch port using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> and then <b>Ports</b> .</p>	 <table border="1"> <caption>Port Configuration</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>Port</th> <th>Link</th> <th>Warning</th> <th>Current</th> <th>Configured</th> <th>Speed</th> <th>Adv. Duplex</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Disabled</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>100Mbps FDX</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>10Gbps FDX</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>2.5Gbps FDX</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>10Gbps FDX</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>Down</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> <tr><td>16</td><td>●</td><td>●</td><td>10Gfx</td><td>Automatic</td><td>↓</td><td>☑</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Port	Link	Warning	Current	Configured	Speed	Adv. Duplex	1	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑	2	●	●	Down	Disabled	↓	☑	3	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑	4	●	●	Down	100Mbps FDX	↓	☑	5	●	●	Down	10Gbps FDX	↓	☑	6	●	●	Down	2.5Gbps FDX	↓	☑	7	●	●	Down	10Gbps FDX	↓	☑	8	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑	9	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑	10	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑	11	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑	12	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑	13	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑	14	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑	15	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑	16	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑
Port	Link		Warning	Current	Configured	Speed	Adv. Duplex																																																																																																																		
1	●		●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																		
2	●	●	Down	Disabled	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
3	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
4	●	●	Down	100Mbps FDX	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
5	●	●	Down	10Gbps FDX	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
6	●	●	Down	2.5Gbps FDX	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
7	●	●	Down	10Gbps FDX	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
8	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
9	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
10	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
11	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
12	●	●	Down	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
13	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
14	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
15	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
16	●	●	10Gfx	Automatic	↓	☑																																																																																																																			
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>Enable a switch port by selecting its speed configuration.</p>																																																																																																																								
<p>Step_3</p>	<p>Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.</p>																																																																																																																								
<p>Step_4</p>	<p>(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.</p>																																																																																																																								

## Disabling a switch port

Switch ports can be disabled using:

- The CLI
- The switch Web UI

### Disabling a switch port using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

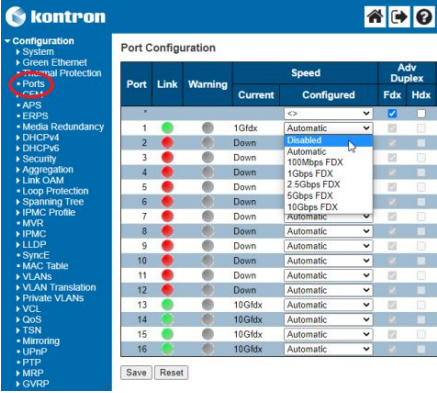


Step_1	Access the interface setup menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>interface [INTERFACE_ID]</b>	<pre># configure terminal (config)# interface Ethernet 1/6 (config-if)#</pre>
Step_2	Disable the interface. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# <b>shutdown</b>	<pre>(config-if)# shutdown</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Disabling a switch port using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> and then <b>Ports</b> .	
Step_2	Disable a switch port by changing its speed configuration to <b>Disabled</b> .	
Step_3	Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Changing link speed

Link speed can be changed using:

- The CLI
- The switch Web UI

### Changing link speed using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

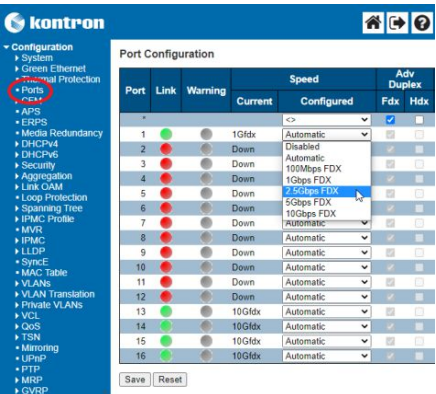
To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Enter the configuration terminal. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Enter the interface configuration menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>interface [INTERFACE]</b>	<pre>(config)# interface Eth 1/8</pre>
Step_3	Change the speed. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# <b>speed [SPEED]</b>	<pre>(config-if)# speed auto 1000</pre>
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Changing link speed using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , and then <b>Ports</b> .	
Step_2	Select a value from the <b>Speed</b> dropdown menu.	
Step_3	Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

# Configuring switch VLANs

Several VLAN configurations can be performed using the CLI or the switch Web UI:

- Displaying a VLAN
- Creating a VLAN
- Removing a VLAN
- Configuring the port membership

## Displaying VLANs

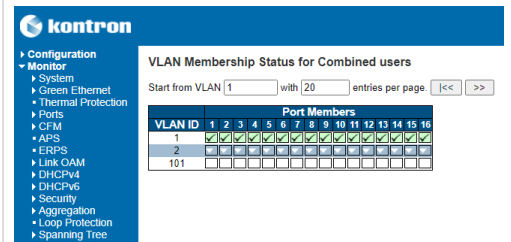
### Displaying VLANs using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Display the VLAN status for every switch port. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# show vlan	<pre>NOS00A0A5E01C4F# show vlan VLAN  Name                               Interfaces ----- 1      default                                Eth 1/1-6 2      VLAN0002                               Eth 1/7 3      VLAN0003                               Eth 1/8-9</pre>
--------	--	---

### Displaying VLANs using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Monitor</b> , <b>VLANs</b> and then <b>Membership</b> . The VLAN port membership should be displayed.	
--------	--	---

## Creating a VLAN

### Creating a VLAN using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

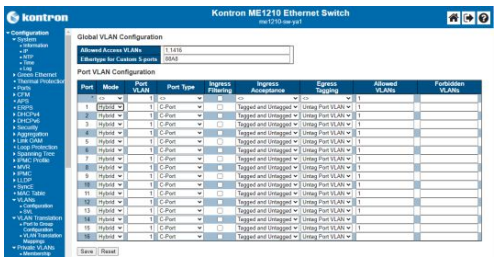
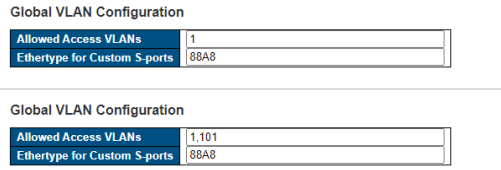
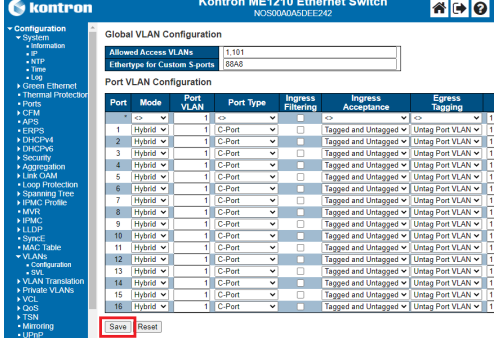
To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# configure terminal	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Create a new VLAN. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# vlan [VLAN_ID]	<pre>(config)# vlan 9 (config-vlan)#</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Creating a VLAN using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>VLANs</b> and then <b>Configuration</b> .	
Step_2	From the <b>Global VLAN Configuration</b> , add the desired VLAN(s) to the <b>Allowed Access VLANs</b> list. <b>NOTE:</b> The list of VLANs needs to be delimited by commas between each interface ID.	
Step_3	Click on the <b>Save</b> button.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Removing a VLAN

### Removing a VLAN using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

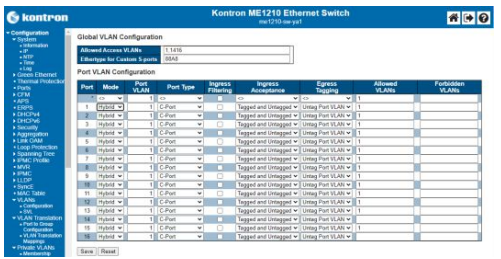
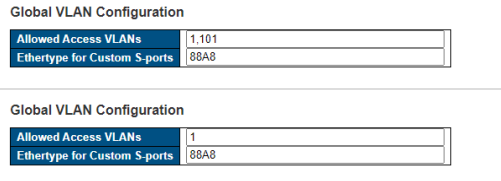
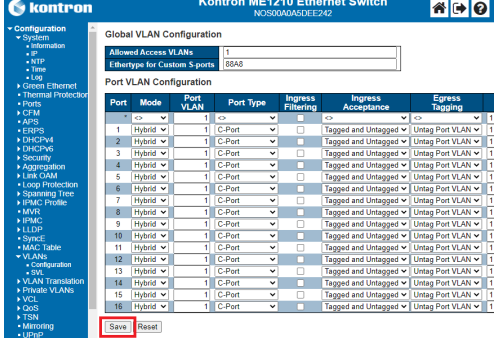
To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b>	
Step_2	Remove a VLAN using the following command. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>no vlan [VLAN_ID]</b>	
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	


### Removing a VLAN using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, navigate to <b>Configuration</b> , <b>VLANs</b> , and then <b>Configuration</b> .	
Step_2	From the <b>Global VLAN Configuration</b> , remove the desired VLANs from the <b>Allowed Access VLANs</b> list.	
Step_3	Click on the <b>Save</b> button.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring VLAN port membership

 The default configuration for the platform NOS switch port mode is "hybrid". Therefore the documentation does not detail commands related to "access" or "trunk".

### Configuring port membership using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

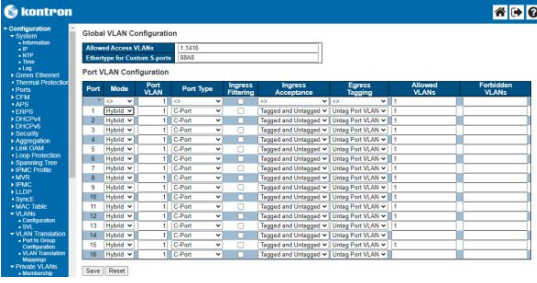
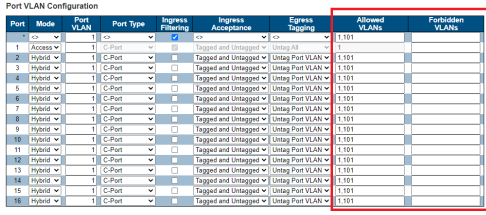
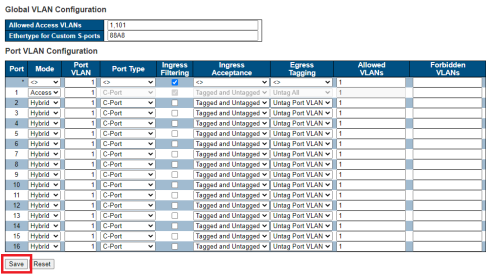
To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Access the desired interface configuration menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>configure terminal</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# <b>interface [INTERFACE_ID]</b>	<pre># configure terminal (config)# interface Ethernet 1/3</pre>
Step_2	Proceed with port membership configuration. Use the built-in help feature using " ? " to see the possible configurations. VLAN membership configuration command descriptions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adding one or multiple VLANs using the <b>add</b> command.</li> <li>• Adding all currently defined VLANs using the <b>all</b> command.</li> <li>• Excluding one or multiple VLANs using the <b>except</b> command.</li> <li>• Excluding all currently defined VLANs using the <b>none</b> command.</li> <li>• Removing one or multiple VLANs using the <b>remove</b> command.</li> </ul> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config-if)# <b>switchport hybrid allowed vlan add [VLAN_ID]</b>	<pre>(config-if)# switchport hybrid allowed vlan &lt;vlan_list&gt; add all except none remove (config-if)# switchport hybrid allowed vlan add 1</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring port membership using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, navigate to Configuration , VLANs and then Configuration .	
Step_2	Proceed with port membership configuration using the last two columns. The list of VLANs is constructed using a comma to separate elements or a hyphen to describe a range. Example: 1,101-103,4093 Which is equivalent to: 1,101,102,103,4093	
Step_3	Press on the Save button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring static routing

Static routing can be configured using:

- The CLI
- The switch Web UI

### Configuring static routing using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

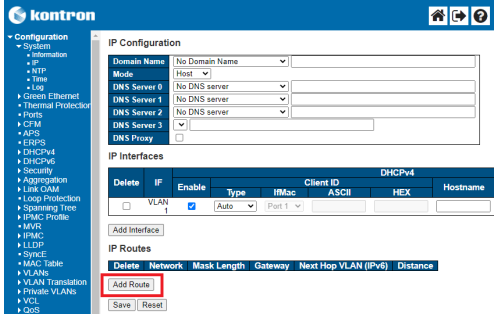
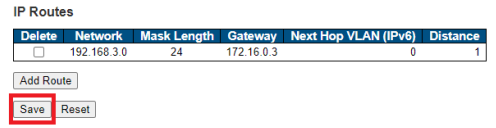
To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the CLI](#).

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# configure terminal	<pre># configure terminal</pre>
Step_2	Configure static routing. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# ip route [HOST_ADDRESS] [NETWORK_MASK] [GATEWAY_ADDRESS]	<pre>(config)# ip route 192.168.3.0 255.255.255.0 172.16.0.3</pre>
Step_3	Exit the configuration menu. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~(config)# exit	
Step_4	Display the list of routes to confirm the static route was added. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# show ip route	<pre># show ip route Codes: C - connected, S - static * - FIB route, D - DHCP installed route D* 0.0.0.0/0 [253/0] via 172.16.0.1, VLAN 1, 18:33:31 C* 172.16.0.0/16 is directly connected, VLAN 1, 18:33:31 S* 192.168.3.0/24 [1/0] via 172.16.0.3, VLAN 1, 18:33:31</pre>
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring static routing using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> , <b>System</b> and then <b>IP</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the <b>Add Route</b> button.	
Step_3	Proceed with configuration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter host address in the <b>Network</b> column.</li> <li>• Enter network mask in number of bits in the <b>Mask Length</b> column.</li> <li>• Enter the gateway address in the <b>Gateway</b> column.</li> <li>• Configure the <b>Next Hop VLAN (IPv6)</b> and <b>Distance</b> parameters, if needed.</li> </ul>	
Step_4	Press on the <b>Save</b> button to confirm.	
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Managing the switch configuration

The switch configuration can be managed using:

- The CLI
- The switch Web UI

### Managing the switch configuration using the CLI

Access the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

### Displaying the running configuration using the CLI

Step_1	Display the current configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# show running-config	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10E54# show running-config Building configuration... username admin privilege 15 password encrypted 4114dc09c554cbc78c5d5916ca7d0267a 66c020fb4abeac88b9085f91dea74e127c29e0f5fd14e100c82f46d2410c830045931f03770adda c2c9f1bf89d4227 ! vlan 1 ! ! spanning-tree mst name 00-a0-a5-e1-0e-54 revision 0 ! ! ptp ext output auto ptp rs422 main-auto ser proto nmc ! -- more --, next page: Space, continue: g, quit: ^C</pre>
--------	--	---

### Saving the current configuration using the CLI

Changes to the switch configuration are not persistent after rebooting the switch. To preserve custom configurations, use the following command.

Step_1	Save the current configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# copy running-config startup-config	<pre># copy running-config startup-config Building configuration... % Saving 1555 bytes to flash:startup-config #</pre>
--------	--	---

### Restoring the default configuration using the CLI

NOTE: This procedure is equivalent to a factory reset for switch configuration. All configuration changes will be lost.


Step_1	Restore the default configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# reload defaults	<pre># reload defaults % Reloading defaults. Please stand by.</pre>
Step_2	To make the revert to default values permanent, use the following command. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# copy running-config startup-config	<pre># copy running-config startup-config Building configuration... % Saving 1555 bytes to flash:startup-config</pre>

### Managing the switch configuration using the Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

### Saving the current configuration using the Web UI

Changes to the switch configuration are not persistent after rebooting the switch. To preserve custom configurations, use the following command.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Maintenance</b> , <b>Configuration</b> , and then <b>Save startup-config</b> .	
Step_2	Press on the <b>Save Configuration</b> button.	

## Restoring the default configuration using the Web UI

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Maintenance</b> and then <b>Factory Defaults</b> .	
Step_2	Press on the <b>Yes</b> button to confirm the choice.	

# Configuring synchronization

## Table of contents

- [Integrated GNSS receiver](#)
  - [Factory configuration](#)
  - [Configuring the antenna cable delay](#)
    - [Verifying the status of the USB port connecting the GNSS receiver to the internal server](#)
    - [Configuring the antenna delay](#)
- [PTP based on IEEE 1588](#)
  - [PPS output](#)
  - [Switch NOS PTP External Clock Mode configuration](#)
  - [Creating a switch NOS PTP instance](#)
    - [Configuring the switch as a telecom grandmaster as per ITU-T G.8275.1](#)
      - [Prerequisite](#)
      - [Configuring the switch as a telecom grandmaster using the CLI](#)
      - [Configuring the switch as a telecom grandmaster using the Web UI](#)
    - [Configuring the switch as a telecom boundary clock as per ITU-T G.8275.1](#)
      - [Prerequisite](#)
      - [Configuring the switch as a telecom boundary clock using the CLI](#)
      - [Configuring the switch as a telecom boundary clock using the Web UI](#)
  - [Configuring the internal server as a telecom time slave clock as per ITU-T G.8275.1](#)
    - [Synchronizing the E823 PTP hardware clock](#)
      - [Prerequisite](#)
      - [Procedure](#)
    - [Synchronizing the integrated server system time](#)
      - [Prerequisite](#)
      - [Procedure](#)
- [Configuring synchronous Ethernet](#)
  - [Prerequisite](#)
  - [Configuring synchronous Ethernet using the CLI](#)
  - [Configuring synchronous Ethernet using the Web UI](#)

 This section only applies to platforms with the Ethernet switch IO module.

Platform synchronization must be configured for all components to communicate effectively. On this platform, the Time of Day (ToD) and phase synchronization can be obtained from the integrated GNSS receiver or a PTP grandmaster (GM) accessible by the NOS via a switch network connection.

- When the GNSS is used, it transfers the information to the NOS, which can become a PTP grandmaster if configured accordingly.
- When a PTP grandmaster accessible via a network connection is used, it transfers the information to the NOS to synchronize its boundary or slave clock instance.

The switch can then source synchronization to other components using combinations of Precision Time Protocol (PTP) and Synchronous Ethernet (SyncE).

The following components can also be synchronized:

- PTP/SyncE slave devices connected to the platform switch ports
- Platform integrated server's E823 Ethernet controller PTP hardware clock
- NOS system time (using PTP)

This section will describe how to configure synchronization for the various components involved.

## Relevant sections:

- [Accessing the switch NOS](#)
- [Accessing the operating system of a server](#)
- [Configuring and managing users](#)

## Integrated GNSS receiver

### Factory configuration

The NEO-M9N GNSS receiver is configured during platform manufacturing. The following minimal configurations are performed to ensure it operates properly with the Ethernet switch NOS.

Item	Description	Default value	Value in this platform
CFG-NAVSPG-DYNMODEL	Dynamic platform model	0 (Portable)	2 (Stationary)
CFG-UART1-BAUDRATE	Baud rate for UART1	38400	115200




### Configuring the antenna cable delay



Configuring compensation of the antenna cable delay is highly recommended to get precise synchronization.

Item	Description	Default value	Value in this platform
CFG-TP-ANT_CABLEDELAY	Antenna cable delay	50 ns	User-defined

To change the GNSS receiver (NEO-M9N) settings, use **ubxtool** from the **gpsd** software package for Linux running on the integrated server.

-  Version 3.22 of the **gpsd** software package is required. Please refer to <https://gpsd.gitlab.io/gpsd/index.html> for more information.
-  Changes to any other settings are not supported. For example, if a change is made to the baud rate, this will prevent the switch NOS from receiving the Time of Day from the GNSS receiver.
-  It is highly recommended to verify the delay compensation using the platform PPS output and/or PTP against a reference from a test equipment on site at installation time.

### Verifying the status of the USB port connecting the GNSS receiver to the internal server

By default, the USB port connecting the integrated server to the GNSS receiver is disabled. Log in to the UEFI/BIOS setup menu. Refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Platform Configuration</b> tab and select <b>PCH Configuration</b> .	
Step_2	Select <b>USB Configuration</b> .	
Step_3	Select <b>USB HS (IO Board USB2)</b> and ensure its status is set to <b>Enable</b> .	

### Configuring the antenna delay

Log in to the server. Refer to [Accessing the operating system of a server](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Configure the antenna cable delay. In this example, the value will be set to 145 ns. Server_OSPrompt:~# ubxtool -f /dev/ttyACM0 -P32 -z CFG-TP-ANT_CABLEDELAY,[CABLE_DELAY]	<pre>root@ubuntu:~# ubxtool -f /dev/ttyACM0 -P32 -z CFG-TP-ANT_CABLEDELAY,145 sent: UBX-CFG-VALSET: version 0 layer 0x7 transaction 0x0 reserved 0 layers (ram bbr flash) transaction (Transactionless) item CFG-TP-ANT_CABLEDELAY/0x30050001 val 145</pre>
Step_2	Save the configuration to flash. Server_OSPrompt:~# ubxtool -f /dev/ttyACM0 -P32 -p SAVE	<pre>root@ubuntu:~# ubxtool -f /dev/ttyACM0 -P32 -p SAVE ubxtool: poll SAVE  sent: UBX-CFG-CFG: clearMask: 0x0 () saveMask: 0xf1f (ioPort msgConf infMsg navConf rxmConf senConf rinConf antConf logConf) loadMask: 0xf1f (ioPort msgConf infMsg navConf rxmConf senConf rinConf antConf logConf) deviceMask: 0x17 (devBBR devFlash devEEPROM devSpiFlash)</pre>

<input type="checkbox"/>	With the default configuration, the GNSS receiver is automatically available to be used by the Ethernet switch NOS. The GNSS receiver becomes the timing synchronization source when a PTP instance 0 is configured for master only mode. It can also be enabled as a synchronization source in boundary clock mode. This is described below.
<input type="checkbox"/>	The information given by the GNSS receiver can be used concurrently by the internal server through the USB interface if needed. This is mostly interesting for positioning or monitoring information for the user application. Using this interface for timing is not recommended since its accuracy is very limited. For tight timing requirements on the integrated server application, configure the Ethernet switch for PTP on one or more of ports 1/13 to 1/16 and use <a href="#">LinuxPTP</a> to synchronize time with the integrated server's E823 Ethernet controller. This is described below.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Linux applications can alter the configuration of the GNSS receiver. As such, usage of the USB connection to the GNSS receiver is not supported in the event that it causes issues in the Ethernet switch PTP operations.

## PTP based on IEEE 1588

### PPS output

Relevant section:

[SMA PPS output](#)

The PPS output is always enabled and outputs a 100 ms pulse whose rising edge is aligned with the PTP domain 0 ToD counter rollover.

The PPS output has less than 10 ns offset from the integrated switch PTP phase at the SMA connector. Any external cable length must be compensated when doing timing measurements.

### Switch NOS PTP External Clock Mode configuration

The sole configurable parameter is the clock adjustment method. The default setting of "auto" is equivalent to "common" for IEEE1588 and G.8275.1 profiles. The available methods are:

- **Common** : The PTP clock uses the hardware DPLL for PTP frequency adjustment with the SyncE frequency as a reference if available. Available for clock instance 0 only.
- **Independent** : The PTP clock uses the hardware DPLL for PTP frequency adjustment with only the local oscillator for frequency reference. This would only be for a deployment where the SyncE reference is not considered valid for the PTP clock instance. Available for clock instance 0 only.
- **LTC (Local Time Counter)** : The PTP clock instance uses the Ethernet switch local time counter for frequency adjustment. This is the only option for clock instance 1 to 3 since the hardware DPLL is bound to clock instance 0. Note that this also implies that if clock instance 0 is synchronized to a master, the LTCs for clock instances 1 to 3 will have their frequencies determined by that master.

NOS Web UI	NOS CLI
<p>PTP External Clock Mode</p> <p>Adjust Method: <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Auto</span></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>LTC</li> <li>Independent</li> <li>Common</li> <li style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">Auto</li> </ul>	<pre>NOS000BASE10EFG(config)# ptp ext ? auto          AUTO Select clock control, based on PTP profile and               available hardware resources common        Select second DPLL for PTP. Both DPLL have the same (SyncE               recovered) clock. independent   Select an oscillator independent of SyncE for frequency               control, if supported by the hardware ltc           Select Local Time Counter (LTC) frequency control output        Enable 1PPS output &lt;cr&gt;</pre>

### Creating a switch NOS PTP instance

<input type="checkbox"/>	The following information is based on the ITU-T G.8275.1 Telecom profile. However, other PTP profiles are available, and the commands can easily be adapted.
--------------------------	--

### Configuring the switch as a telecom grandmaster as per ITU-T G.8275.1

The switch can be configured as a telecom grandmaster (T-GM) (primary reference clock) using the switch NOS CLI or Web UI. The following examples show minimum configurations using default values for most parameters. Only critical values are included in the example. However, additional configurations are likely to be required.

#### Prerequisite

1	To obtain meaningful results, the integrated GNSS receiver must acquire timing information. An appropriate antenna must be connected to the chassis GNSS input. Please refer to <a href="#">SMA GNSS RF input pinout and electrical characteristics</a> .
---	---

## Configuring the switch as a telecom grandmaster using the CLI


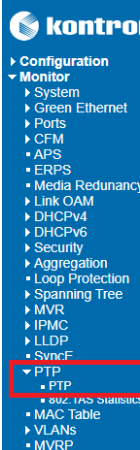
Log in to the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_Prompt# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6# configure terminal NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)#</pre>
Step_2	Create the PTP clock instance "0". Then add the desired interface(s) to "ptp 0", the clock instance created. LocalSwitchNOS_Prompt(config)# <b>ptp 0 mode master profile g8275.1</b>  <b>NOTE</b> : Changing the default <b>filter-type</b> is not supported in this configuration.	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# ptp 0 mode master profile g8275.1</pre>
Step_3	The following items configure the PTP dataset communicated by the instance. The values here are valid when the instance has achieved PHASE_LOCKED state. LocalSwitchNOS_Prompt(config)# <b>ptp 0 virtual-port time-property utc-offset 37 valid time-traceable freq-traceable ptp-timescale time-source 32 ptp 0 virtual-port class 6 ptp 0 virtual-port accuracy 33 ptp 0 virtual-port variance 20061</b> <b>NOTE</b> : The <b>utc-offset</b> value changes in time and should be chosen according to the current value.	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# \$req-traceable ptp-timescale time-source 32 NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# ptp 0 virtual-port class 6 NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# ptp 0 virtual-port accuracy 33 NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# ptp 0 virtual-port variance 20061</pre>
Step_4	(Optional) Set the NOS system time from the PTP instance. LocalSwitchNOS_Prompt(config)# <b>ptp system-time set</b> <b>NOTE</b> : NTP needs to be disabled in order to set the NOS system time from the PTP instance. Disable it with the command <b>no ntp</b> .	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# ptp system-time set System clock synch mode (Set System time from PTP time)</pre>
Step_5	Add interfaces to the PTP instance. LocalSwitchNOS_Prompt(config)# <b>interface Ethernet 1/1,9,12</b> LocalSwitchNOS_Prompt(config-if)# <b>ptp 0</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# interface Ethernet 1/1,9,12 NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config-if)# ptp 0</pre>
Step_6	End configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OS_PROMPT(config-if)# <b>end</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config-if)# end NOS00A0A5E10EF6#</pre>
Step_7	Verify the current ptp 0 status. LocalSwitchNOS_OS_PROMPT# <b>show ptp 0</b> <b>NOTE</b> : The desired "Slave state" status to be attained is <b>PHASE_LOCKED</b> . Interim steps that can be displayed are <b>FREQ_LOCKING</b> , <b>FREQ_LOCKED</b> and <b>HOLDOVER</b> . The time to reach <b>PHASE_LOCKED</b> varies depending on many factors including the status of the GNSS receiver. Five minutes is typical.	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6# show ptp 0 Dynamic data for PTP Clock Instance 0:  PTP Time:                2022-06-29T16:25:43+00:00 902,081,031  Clock Slave state: Slave Port:                0 Slave State:               PHASED_LOCKED Filter Mode:               PACKET Holdover (ppb):           N.A.  Clock Current DataSet: Steps Removed:             0 Offset From Master:        0.000,000,000,000 Mean Path Delay:           0.000,000,000,000</pre>
Step_8	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring the switch as a telecom grandmaster using the Web UI

Log in to the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> and then <b>PTP</b> .	
--------	--	--

																																																																																								
Step_2	From the PTP Clock Configuration section, configure the Clock Instance . Then, set the Device Type to Mastronly and the Profile to G8275.1. Finally, click on the Save button.	<b>PTP Clock Configuration</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Delete</th> <th>Clock Instance</th> <th>HW Domain</th> <th>Device Type</th> <th>Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Delete</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Mastronly</td> <td>G8275.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Add New PTP Clock Save Reset</p>	Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile	Delete	0	0	Mastronly	G8275.1																																																																												
Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile																																																																																				
Delete	0	0	Mastronly	G8275.1																																																																																				
Step_3	Click on the Clock Instance number in order to access the PTP Clock's Configuration and Status .  <b>NOTE</b> : Changing the default filter-type is not supported in this configuration.	<b>PTP Clock Configuration</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Delete</th> <th>Clock Instance</th> <th>HW Domain</th> <th>Device Type</th> <th>Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Mastronly</td> <td>G8275.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Add New PTP Clock Save Reset</p>	Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0	Mastronly	G8275.1																																																																												
Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile																																																																																				
<input type="checkbox"/>	0	0	Mastronly	G8275.1																																																																																				
Step_4	From the Port Enable and Configuration section, select the ports on which to enable PTP.	<b>Port Enable and Configuration</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="16">Port Enable</th> <th colspan="2">Configuration</th> </tr> <tr> <th>1</th><th>2</th><th>3</th><th>4</th><th>5</th><th>6</th><th>7</th><th>8</th><th>9</th><th>10</th><th>11</th><th>12</th><th>13</th><th>14</th><th>15</th><th>16</th> <th colspan="2">Ports Configuration</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Port Enable																Configuration		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	Ports Configuration		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																		
Port Enable																Configuration																																																																								
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	Ports Configuration																																																																								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																																																									
Step_5	From the Virtual Port Enable and Configuration section, configure the PTP Clock instance using the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable: True</li> <li>• Class: 6</li> <li>• Accuracy: 33</li> <li>• Variance: 20061</li> <li>• UtcOffset: 37</li> <li>• Valid: True</li> <li>• Time Trac: True</li> <li>• Freq Trac: True</li> <li>• ptp Time Scale: True</li> <li>• Time Source: 32</li> </ul> Ensure that the VID matches one of the allowed VLANs for the selected port(s).	<b>Virtual Port Enable and Configuration</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Enable</th> <th>Class</th> <th>Accuracy</th> <th>Variance</th> <th>Pri1</th> <th>Pri2</th> <th>Local Prio</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>True</td> <td>6</td> <td>33</td> <td>20061</td> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>UtcOffset</th> <th>Valid</th> <th>leap59</th> <th>leap61</th> <th>Time Trac</th> <th>Freq Trac</th> <th>ptp Time Scale</th> <th>Time Source</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>37</td> <td>True</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>True</td> <td>True</td> <td>True</td> <td>32</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Leap Pending</th> <th>Leap Date</th> <th>Leap Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>False</td> <td>1970-01-01</td> <td>leap61</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <b>Clock Default DataSet</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device Type</th> <th>One-Way</th> <th>2 Step Flag</th> <th>Ports</th> <th>Clock Identity</th> <th>Dom</th> <th>Clock Quality</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Mastronly</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>16</td> <td>00:a0:a5:ff:fe:e1:0e:f6</td> <td>24</td> <td>Ci:140:Ac:Unkn:n Va:65535</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Pri1</th> <th>Pri2</th> <th>Local Prio</th> <th>Protocol</th> <th>VID</th> <th>PCP</th> <th>DSCP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <b>Clock Time Properties DataSet</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>UtcOffset</th> <th>Valid</th> <th>leap59</th> <th>leap61</th> <th>Time Trac</th> <th>Freq Trac</th> <th>ptp Time Scale</th> <th>Time Source</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>True</td> <td>160</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Leap Pending</th> <th>Leap Date</th> <th>Leap Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>False</td> <td>1970-01-01</td> <td>leap61</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Save Reset</p>	Enable	Class	Accuracy	Variance	Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio	True	6	33	20061	128	128	128	UtcOffset	Valid	leap59	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source	37	True	False	False	True	True	True	32	Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type	False	1970-01-01	leap61	Device Type	One-Way	2 Step Flag	Ports	Clock Identity	Dom	Clock Quality	Mastronly	False	False	16	00:a0:a5:ff:fe:e1:0e:f6	24	Ci:140:Ac:Unkn:n Va:65535	Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio	Protocol	VID	PCP	DSCP	128	128	128	Ethernet	1	0	0	UtcOffset	Valid	leap59	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source	0	False	False	False	False	False	True	160	Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type	False	1970-01-01	leap61
Enable	Class	Accuracy	Variance	Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio																																																																																		
True	6	33	20061	128	128	128																																																																																		
UtcOffset	Valid	leap59	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source																																																																																	
37	True	False	False	True	True	True	32																																																																																	
Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type																																																																																						
False	1970-01-01	leap61																																																																																						
Device Type	One-Way	2 Step Flag	Ports	Clock Identity	Dom	Clock Quality																																																																																		
Mastronly	False	False	16	00:a0:a5:ff:fe:e1:0e:f6	24	Ci:140:Ac:Unkn:n Va:65535																																																																																		
Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio	Protocol	VID	PCP	DSCP																																																																																		
128	128	128	Ethernet	1	0	0																																																																																		
UtcOffset	Valid	leap59	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source																																																																																	
0	False	False	False	False	False	True	160																																																																																	
Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type																																																																																						
False	1970-01-01	leap61																																																																																						
Step_6	Click on the Save button.																																																																																							
Step_7	Set the system time source to PTP by clicking on Synchronize to System Clock.	<b>Local Clock Current Time</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>PTP Time</th> <th>Clock Adjustment method</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2022-09-18T21:51:11+00:00 273.943.936</td> <td>Syncce DPLL</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Synchronize to System Clock</p> <b>Clock Current DataSet</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>stpRm</th> <th>Offset From Master</th> <th>Mean Path Delay</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>-0.000.000.002.177</td> <td>0.000.000.005.126</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	PTP Time	Clock Adjustment method	2022-09-18T21:51:11+00:00 273.943.936	Syncce DPLL	stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay	2	-0.000.000.002.177	0.000.000.005.126																																																																												
PTP Time	Clock Adjustment method																																																																																							
2022-09-18T21:51:11+00:00 273.943.936	Syncce DPLL																																																																																							
stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay																																																																																						
2	-0.000.000.002.177	0.000.000.005.126																																																																																						
Step_8	From the left-side menu, select Monitor, then PTP and then PTP again . Click on the instance number of the desired PTP clock.	 <b>PTP External Clock Mode</b> <p>Adjust Method Auto</p> <b>PTP Clock Configuration</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Inst</th> <th>ClkDom</th> <th>Device Type</th> <th colspan="16">Port List</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Slaveonly</td> <td colspan="16"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Inst	ClkDom	Device Type	Port List																0	0	Slaveonly																																																																
Inst	ClkDom	Device Type	Port List																																																																																					
0	0	Slaveonly																																																																																						
Step_9	From the Clock Current DataSet section, ensure that the Slave State is in the desired state.  <b>NOTE</b> : The desired "Slave state" status to be attained is PHASE_LOCKED . Interim steps that can be displayed are <b>FREQ_LOCKING</b> , <b>FREQ_LOCKED</b> and <b>HOLDOVER</b> . The time to reach <b>PHASE_LOCKED</b> varies depending on many factors. As a reference, less than 5 minutes is typical.	<b>Clock Current DataSet</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>stpRm</th> <th>Offset From Master</th> <th>Mean Path Delay</th> <th>Slave Por</th> <th>Slave State</th> <th>Holdover(ppb)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0.000.000.000.000</td> <td>0.000.000.000.000</td> <td>0</td> <td>PHASED_LOCKED</td> <td>N.A</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay	Slave Por	Slave State	Holdover(ppb)	0	0.000.000.000.000	0.000.000.000.000	0	PHASED_LOCKED	N.A																																																																										
stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay	Slave Por	Slave State	Holdover(ppb)																																																																																			
0	0.000.000.000.000	0.000.000.000.000	0	PHASED_LOCKED	N.A																																																																																			
Step_10	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.																																																																																							

The switch can be configured as a telecom boundary clock (T-BC) using the switch NOS CLI or Web UI.

The virtual port can be enabled for the telecom boundary clock as for the grand master configuration. In this case, it participates in the BMCA as any other PTP foreign masters.

### Prerequisite

1 A G.8275.1 telecom grandmaster must be connected to the platform via an integrated switch SFP port to get meaningful results.

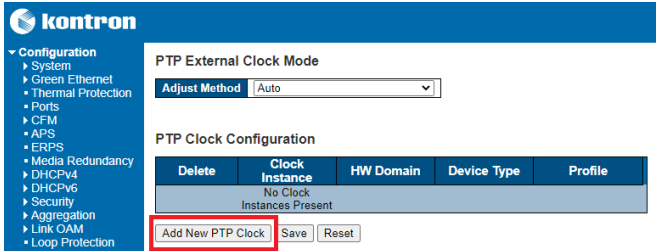
### Configuring the switch as a telecom boundary clock using the CLI

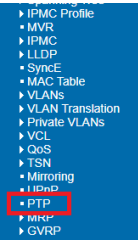
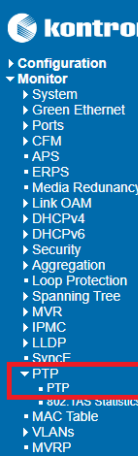
Log in to the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6# configure terminal NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)#</pre>
Step_2	Create the PTP clock instance "0". Then add the desired interface(s) to "ptp 0", the clock instance created. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config)# <b>ptp 0 mode boundary profile g8275.1</b> <b>NOTE</b> : Changing the default <b>filter-type</b> is not supported in this configuration.	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# ptp 0 mode boundary profile g8275.1</pre>
Step_3	(Optional) Set the NOS system time from the PTP instance. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config)# <b>ptp system-time set</b> <b>NOTE</b> : NTP needs to be disabled in order to set the NOS system time from the PTP instance. Disable it with the command <b>no ntp</b> .	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# ptp system-time set System clock synch mode (Set System time from PTP time)</pre>
Step_4	Add interfaces to the PTP instance. This includes interfaces connected to the potential network T-GM as well as interfaces connected to downstream slave clocks (T-BC or T-SL). Ports will assume master or slave mode automatically. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config)# <b>interface Ethernet 1/1,9,12</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config-if)# <b>ptp 0</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config)# interface Ethernet 1/1,9,12 NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config-if)# ptp 0</pre>
Step_5	End configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config-if)# <b>end</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6(config-if)# end NOS00A0A5E10EF6#</pre>
Step_6	Verify the current ptp 0 status. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt# <b>show ptp 0</b> <b>NOTE</b> : The desired "Slave state" status to be attained is <b>PHASE_LOCKED</b> . Interim steps that can be displayed are <b>FREQ_LOCKING</b> , <b>FREQ_LOCKED</b> and <b>HOLDOVER</b> . The time to reach <b>PHASE_LOCKED</b> varies depending on many factors. As a reference, less than 5 minutes is typical.	<pre>NOS00A0A5E10EF6# show ptp 0 Dynamic data for PTP Clock Instance 0:  PTP Time:                2022-06-29T16:25:43+00:00 902,081,031  Clock Slave state: Slave Port:                0 Slave State:                PHASED_LOCKED Filter Mode:                PACKET Holdover (ppb):            N.A.  Clock Current DataSet: Steps Removed:              0 Offset From Master:         0.000,000,000,000 Mean Path Delay:            0.000,000,000,000</pre>
Step_7	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

### Configuring the switch as a telecom boundary clock using the Web UI

Log in to the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> and then <b>PTP</b> . Click, on the <b>Add New PTP Clock</b> button.	
--------	---	--

																																																								
Step_2	From the PTP Clock Configuration section, configure the Clock Instance . Then, set the Device Type to Ord-Bound and the Profile to G8275.1. Finally, click on the Save button.	<p><b>PTP Clock Configuration</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Delete</th> <th>Clock Instance</th> <th>HW Domain</th> <th>Device Type</th> <th>Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Delete</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Ord-Bound</td> <td>G8275.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Add New PTP Clock Save Reset</p>	Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile	Delete	0	0	Ord-Bound	G8275.1																																												
Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile																																																				
Delete	0	0	Ord-Bound	G8275.1																																																				
Step_3	Click on the Clock Instance number in order to navigate to the PTP Clock's Configuration and Status .	<p><b>PTP Clock Configuration</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Delete</th> <th>Clock Instance</th> <th>HW Domain</th> <th>Device Type</th> <th>Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Ord-Bound</td> <td>G8275.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Add New PTP Clock Save Reset</p>	Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile		0	0	Ord-Bound	G8275.1																																												
Delete	Clock Instance	HW Domain	Device Type	Profile																																																				
	0	0	Ord-Bound	G8275.1																																																				
Step_4	From the Port Enable and Configuration section, select the ports on which to enable PTP. This includes interfaces connected to the potential network T-GM as well as interfaces connected to downstream slave clocks (T-BC or T-SL). Ports will assume master or slave mode automatically.	<p><b>Port Enable and Configuration</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="16">Port Enable</th> <th colspan="2">Configuration</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td><td>5</td><td>6</td><td>7</td><td>8</td><td>9</td><td>10</td><td>11</td><td>12</td><td>13</td><td>14</td><td>15</td><td>16</td> <td colspan="2">Ports Configuration</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Port Enable																Configuration		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	Ports Configuration		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
Port Enable																Configuration																																								
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	Ports Configuration																																								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>																																									
Step_5	From the Virtual Port Enable and Configuration section, configure the PTP Clock instance. Ensure that the VID matches one of the allowed VLANs for the selected port(s).	<p><b>Virtual Port Enable and Configuration</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Enable</th> <th>Class</th> <th>Accuracy</th> <th>Variance</th> <th>Pri1</th> <th>Pri2</th> <th>Local Prio</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>True</td> <td>6</td> <td>33</td> <td>20061</td> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>UtcOffset</th> <th>Valid</th> <th>leap69</th> <th>leap61</th> <th>Time Trac</th> <th>Freq Trac</th> <th>ptp Time Scale</th> <th>Time Source</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>37</td> <td>True</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>True</td> <td>True</td> <td>True</td> <td>32</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Leap Pending</th> <th>Leap Date</th> <th>Leap Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>False</td> <td>1970-01-01</td> <td>leap61</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Enable	Class	Accuracy	Variance	Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio	True	6	33	20061	128	128	128	UtcOffset	Valid	leap69	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source	37	True	False	False	True	True	True	32	Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type	False	1970-01-01	leap61																		
Enable	Class	Accuracy	Variance	Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio																																																		
True	6	33	20061	128	128	128																																																		
UtcOffset	Valid	leap69	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source																																																	
37	True	False	False	True	True	True	32																																																	
Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type																																																						
False	1970-01-01	leap61																																																						
Step_6	Click on the Save button.	<p><b>Clock Default DataSet</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Device Type</th> <th>One-Way</th> <th>2 Step Flag</th> <th>Ports</th> <th>Clock Identity</th> <th>Dom</th> <th>Clock Quality</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Ord-Bound</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>16</td> <td>00:a0:a5:ff:fe:e1:0e:f6</td> <td>24</td> <td>Cl:140:Ac:Unknwn:Va:65535</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Pri1</th> <th>Pri2</th> <th>Local Prio</th> <th>Protocol</th> <th>VID</th> <th>PCP</th> <th>DSCP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> <td>128</td> <td>Ethernet</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Clock Time Properties DataSet</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>UtcOffset</th> <th>Valid</th> <th>leap69</th> <th>leap61</th> <th>Time Trac</th> <th>Freq Trac</th> <th>ptp Time Scale</th> <th>Time Source</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>False</td> <td>True</td> <td>160</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Leap Pending</th> <th>Leap Date</th> <th>Leap Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>False</td> <td>1970-01-01</td> <td>leap61</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Save Reset</p>	Device Type	One-Way	2 Step Flag	Ports	Clock Identity	Dom	Clock Quality	Ord-Bound	False	False	16	00:a0:a5:ff:fe:e1:0e:f6	24	Cl:140:Ac:Unknwn:Va:65535	Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio	Protocol	VID	PCP	DSCP	128	128	128	Ethernet	1	0	0	UtcOffset	Valid	leap69	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source	0	False	False	False	False	False	True	160	Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type	False	1970-01-01	leap61				
Device Type	One-Way	2 Step Flag	Ports	Clock Identity	Dom	Clock Quality																																																		
Ord-Bound	False	False	16	00:a0:a5:ff:fe:e1:0e:f6	24	Cl:140:Ac:Unknwn:Va:65535																																																		
Pri1	Pri2	Local Prio	Protocol	VID	PCP	DSCP																																																		
128	128	128	Ethernet	1	0	0																																																		
UtcOffset	Valid	leap69	leap61	Time Trac	Freq Trac	ptp Time Scale	Time Source																																																	
0	False	False	False	False	False	True	160																																																	
Leap Pending	Leap Date	Leap Type																																																						
False	1970-01-01	leap61																																																						
Step_7	Set the system time source to PTP by clicking on Synchronize to System Clock.	<p><b>Local Clock Current Time</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>PTP Time</th> <th>Clock Adjustment method</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2022-09-18T21:51:11+00:00 273.943.936</td> <td>Synce DPLL</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Synchronize to System Clock</p> <p><b>Clock Current DataSet</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>stpRm</th> <th>Offset From Master</th> <th>Mean Path Delay</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>-0.000.000.002.177</td> <td>0.000.000.005.126</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	PTP Time	Clock Adjustment method	2022-09-18T21:51:11+00:00 273.943.936	Synce DPLL	stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay	2	-0.000.000.002.177	0.000.000.005.126																																												
PTP Time	Clock Adjustment method																																																							
2022-09-18T21:51:11+00:00 273.943.936	Synce DPLL																																																							
stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay																																																						
2	-0.000.000.002.177	0.000.000.005.126																																																						
Step_8	From the left-side menu, select Monitor, then PTP and then PTP again . Click on the instance number of the desired PTP clock.																																																							
Step_9	From the Clock Current DataSet section, ensure that the Slave State is in the desired state. NOTE: The desired "Slave state" status to be attained is PHASE_LOCKED . Interim steps that can be displayed are FREQ_LOCKING , FREQ_LOCKED and HOLDOVER . The time to reach PHASE_LOCKED varies depending on many factors. As a reference, less than 5 minutes is typical.	<p><b>Clock Current DataSet</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>stpRm</th> <th>Offset From Master</th> <th>Mean Path Delay</th> <th>Slave Por</th> <th>Slave State</th> <th>holdover(ppb)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0.000.000.000.000</td> <td>0.000.000.000.000</td> <td>0</td> <td>PHASED_LOCKED</td> <td>N.A.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay	Slave Por	Slave State	holdover(ppb)	0	0.000.000.000.000	0.000.000.000.000	0	PHASED_LOCKED	N.A.																																										
stpRm	Offset From Master	Mean Path Delay	Slave Por	Slave State	holdover(ppb)																																																			
0	0.000.000.000.000	0.000.000.000.000	0	PHASED_LOCKED	N.A.																																																			
Step_10	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.																																																							

**Configuring the internal server as a telecom time slave clock as per ITU-T G.8275.1**

To synchronize the internal server's network interfaces and system time precisely, use [LinuxPTP](#).

**NOTE:** A recent version of LinuxPTP is required for G.8275.1 support, version 3.1 is used here. It must be downloaded and compiled since Linux distributions may only offer older versions in package repositories.

**NOTE:** Examples are provided for demonstration purposes only. Refer to your Linux distribution documentation to properly configure the PTP services through the OS initialization system.



The masterOnly and slaveOnly options below are respectively renamed serverOnly and clientOnly in the current LinuxPTP source tree. If a version more recent than 3.1 is used, the configuration below has to be adapted.

## Synchronizing the E823 PTP hardware clock

### Prerequisite

- 1 The switch must be configured as a T-GM or a T-BC as explained above. In the example below, interface 1/13 of the integrated switch is used and must be configured for the proper PTP clock instance. This connects to the integrated server **eno1** network connection.

### Procedure

Log in to the server. Refer to [Accessing the operating system of a server](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Make sure the network interface is up. Server_OSPrompt:~# ifconfig eno1 up	
Step_2	Create a configuration file named <b>g8275_client.conf</b> with the following content. Server_OSPrompt:~# cat g8275_client.conf [global] verbose 1 dataset_comparison G.8275.x G.8275.defaultDS.localPriority 128 maxStepsRemoved 255 logAnnounceInterval -3 logSyncInterval -4 logMinDelayReqInterval -4 masterOnly 0 slaveOnly 1 G.8275.portDS.localPriority 128 network_transport L2 domainNumber 24 [eno1]	
Step_3	Run ptp4l. Server_OSPrompt:~# ./linuxptp/ptp4l -f g8275_client.conf	

## Synchronizing the integrated server system time

### Prerequisite

- 1 A **ptp4l** instance running on the platform's operating system is required prior to this test.



Make sure there is no time synchronization daemon (NTP or other) running since it will interfere.

### Procedure

Log in to the server. Refer to [Accessing the operating system of a server](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Verify the running ptp4l status. Server_OSPrompt:~# ./linuxptp/pmc -u -d24 'GET CURRENT_DATA_SET'	
Step_2	Synchronize the physical hardware clock (PHC) with the system clock. Server_OSPrompt:~# ./linuxptp/phc2sys -arm -f g8275_client.conf	

## Configuring synchronous Ethernet

Synchronous Ethernet (SyncE) (ITU-T G.8262) is supported along with the synchronization status message (SSM) over Ethernet Synchronization Message Channel (ESMC) as defined in ITU-T G.8264. To enable distribution of frequency to some or all ports, two ports should be chosen as SyncE sources. In this example, ports 1/1 and 1/2 will be used.

### Prerequisite

1	A valid SyncE clock source from an external network equipment is needed.
---	--

	Synchronization of the integrated server's switch ports (interfaces 1/13-1/16) is not relevant since the platform clocking architecture achieves this automatically.
--	--

## Configuring synchronous Ethernet using the CLI

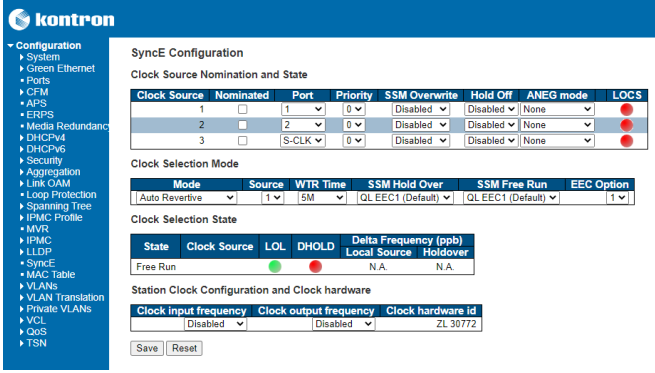
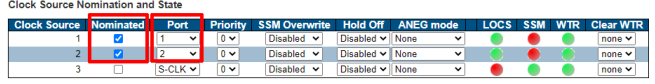
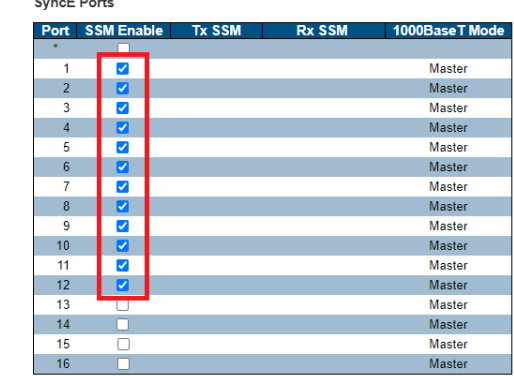
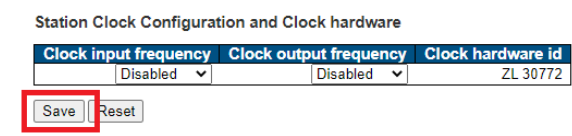
Log in to the switch NOS CLI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Enter configuration mode. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt# <b>configure terminal</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5DEE15C# configure terminal NOS00A0A5DEE15C(config)#  </pre>
Step_2	Nominate interfaces where clock synchronization sources will be connected. Up to two sources can be configured. <b>NOTE:</b> Clock source number 3 is locked to the station clock which is not used in this platform. SSM can be enabled on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clock source interfaces where the source will be sending status messages. Note that source interfaces will not be used by the switch unless the appropriate SSM messages are received.</li> <li>• Interfaces where the platform integrated switch will be a SyncE source to link partners expecting SSM messages to enable their synchronization.</li> </ul> In the example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interfaces 1/1 and 1/2 are connected to SyncE sources sending SSM status information. So they are nominated and configured for SSM to monitor the sources.</li> <li>• Interfaces 1/3-1/12 configured for SSM can be used by link partners requiring a SyncE source and expecting SSM status information.</li> </ul> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config)# <b>network-clock clk-source 1 nominate interface Ethernet 1/1</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config)# <b>network-clock clk-source 2 nominate interface Ethernet 1/2</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config)# <b>interface Ethernet 1/1-12</b> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config-if)# <b>network-clock synchronization ssm</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5DEE15C(config)# net\$clk-source 1 nominate interface Ethernet 1/1 NOS00A0A5DEE15C(config)# net\$ock clk-source 2 nominate interface Ethernet 1/2 NOS00A0A5DEE15C(config)# interface Ethernet 1/1-12 NOS00A0A5DEE15C(config-if)# network-clock synchronization ssm NOS00A0A5DEE15C(config-if)#  </pre>
Step_3	End configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt(config-if)# <b>end</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5DEE15C(config-if)# end NOS00A0A5DEE15C#  </pre>
Step_4	Verify the port status. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt# <b>show network-clock</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A5DEE15C# show network-clock Selector State is: Locked to 1  Alarm State is: Clk:      1      2      3 LOCS:    FALSE  TRUE   TRUE SSM:     FALSE  FALSE  FALSE WTR:     FALSE  FALSE  FALSE  LOL:     FALSE DHOLD:   FALSE  SSM State is: Interface      Tx SSM      Rx SSM Mode Ethernet 1/1   QL_DNU     QL_PRC Master Ethernet 1/2   QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/3   QL_PRC     QL_FAIL Master Ethernet 1/4   QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/5   QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/6   QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/7   QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/8   QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/9   QL_PRC     QL_FAIL Master Ethernet 1/10  QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/11  QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master Ethernet 1/12  QL_LINK    QL_LINK Master NOS00A0A5DEE15C#  </pre>
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Configuring synchronous Ethernet using the Web UI

Log in to the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.



Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Configuration</b> and then <b>SyncE</b> .	
Step_2	<p>From the <b>Clock Source Nomination and State</b> section, nominate and select the interface number (general nomenclature 1/x where x is the targeted selection here) where clock synchronization sources will be connected. Up to two sources can be configured.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Clock source number 3 is locked to the station clock which is not used in this platform.</p> <p>In the example, interfaces 1/1 and 1/2 are connected to SyncE sources, so are configured to clock sources 1 and 2.</p>	
Step_3	<p>From the <b>SyncE Ports</b> section, SSM can be enabled on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clock source interfaces where the source will be sending status messages. Note that source interfaces will not be used by the switch unless the appropriate SSM messages are received.</li> <li>• Interfaces where the platform integrated switch will be a SyncE source to link partners expecting SSM messages to enable their synchronization.</li> </ul> <p>In the example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Interfaces 1/1 and 1/2 are connected to SyncE sources sending SSM status information. So they are configured for SSM to monitor the sources.</li> <li>• Interfaces 1/3-1/12 can be used by link partners requiring a SyncE source and expecting SSM status information.</li> </ul>	
Step_4	Click on the <b>Save</b> button.	
Step_5	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

# Configuring UEFI/BIOS options

Table of contents

- [Configuring UEFI/BIOS options via the UEFI/BIOS menu](#)
  - [Changing the boot order](#)
  - [Overriding the boot order](#)
  - [Enabling Secure Boot](#)
  - [Performing an HDD Security Freeze Lock](#)
  - [Configuring the TPM](#)
  - [Configuring the server Power Control Policy](#)
  - [Configuring option Application Ready LED](#)
  - [Disabling server access to the I210 Ethernet controller](#)
  - [Disabling USB ports](#)
- [Configuring UEFI/BIOS options via the BMC using Redfish](#)
- [Specifying the next boot device via the BMC using Redfish](#)

Relevant section:

[Platform power management](#)

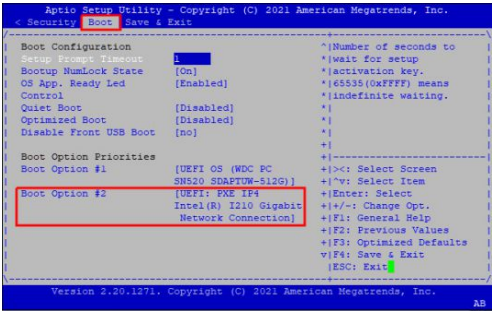
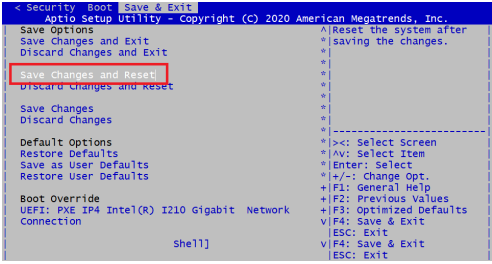
Options can be configured:

- Using the UEFI/BIOS menu
- Via the BMC using Redfish

## Configuring UEFI/BIOS options via the UEFI/BIOS menu

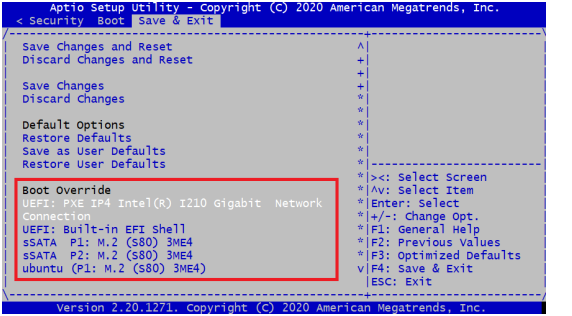
Access the UEFI/BIOS. Refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#) for access instructions.

### Changing the boot order

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Boot</b> menu. Configure the boot order as desired.	
Step_2	Select the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu, go to <b>Save Changes and Reset</b> and press Enter to confirm and save the new boot order.	

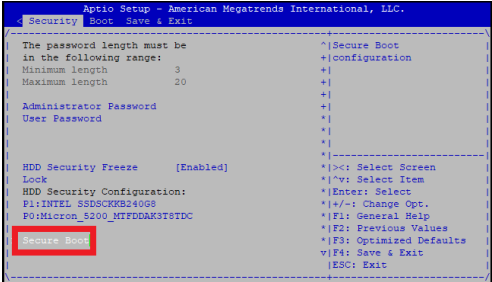

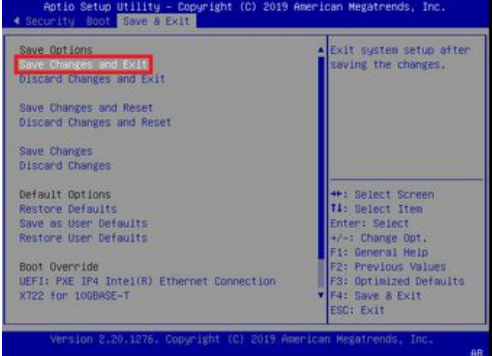
### Overriding the boot order

This is a non-persistent option to allow booting to a specific device while maintaining the normal boot order.


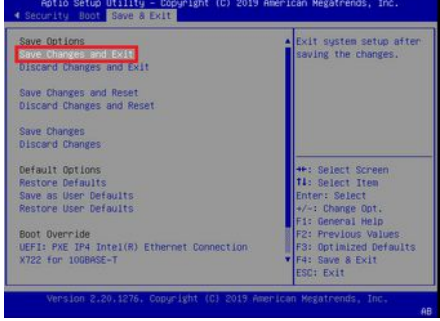
Step_1	Reboot the platform and access the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.	
Step_2	Navigate to the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu and then to the <b>Boot Override</b> section.	

### Enabling Secure Boot

The following application notes are required to generate secure boot keys and configure them: [Generating custom secure boot keys](#) and [Provisioning custom](#)

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Navigate to the Security tab and access the Secure Boot submenu.</p>	
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>Select the Secure Boot option and change it to Enabled .</p>	
<p>Step_3</p>	<p>Use the application notes mentioned above as reference to generate and configure secure boot keys.</p>	
<p>Step_4</p>	<p>Navigate to the Save &amp; Exit menu, go to Save Changes and Exit and press Enter to confirm.</p>	

### Performing an HDD Security Freeze Lock

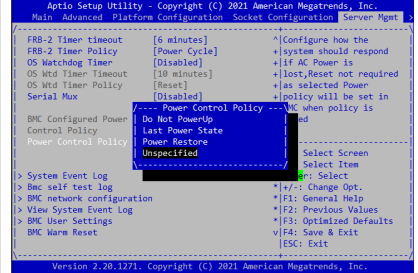
<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Navigate to the Security tab, and enable or disable the HDD Security Freeze Lock .</p>	
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>Navigate to the Save &amp; Exit menu, go to Save Changes and Exit and press Enter to confirm.</p>	

### Configuring the TPM

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Navigate to the <b>Advanced</b> menu, go to <b>Trusted Computing</b> and then <b>Security Device Support</b>. Verify that it is set to <b>Enable</b> . Possible values: [ <u>Enable</u> / Disable ]</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The TPM has to be inserted to see the menu.</p>	
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>From the <b>Advanced</b> menu and the <b>Trusted Computing</b> section, select <b>TPM2.0 UEFI Spec Version</b> and set the applicable spec. Possible values: [ <u>TCG_1_2</u> / <u>TCG_2</u> ]</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The TPM has to be inserted to see the menu.</p>	
<p>Step_3</p>	<p>From the <b>Advanced</b> menu and the <b>Trusted Computing</b> section, select <b>Device Select</b> and set the applicable device. Possible values: [ TPM 1.2 / TPM 2.0 / <u>Auto</u> ]</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The TPM has to be inserted to see the menu.</p>	
<p>Step_4</p>	<p>Navigate to the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu, go to <b>Save Changes and Exit</b> and press <b>Enter</b> to confirm.</p>	

### Configuring the server Power Control Policy

This option is used to configure the system's response to a system input power loss.

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Navigate to the <b>Server Mgmt</b> menu. Select <b>Power Control Policy</b> and choose the option according to the response desired. Possible values: [ Do Not PowerUp / Last Power State / Power Restore / Unspecified ]</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This configuration is saved in the BMC and does not require a server reset. <b>NOTE:</b> Selecting Do Not PowerUp or Last Power State means that a command must be sent to the BMC to power up and boot the integrated server as there is no power button on the unit.</p>	
---------------	---	---

### Configuring option Application Ready LED

This option changes the behavior of the green power LED. Refer to [Platform components](#) for behavior information. Refer to [Platform resources for customer application](#) for information on how to control this behavior from your application.

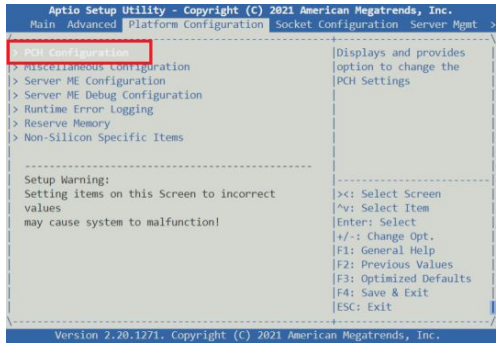
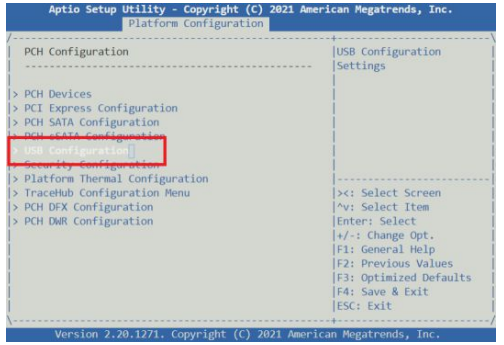
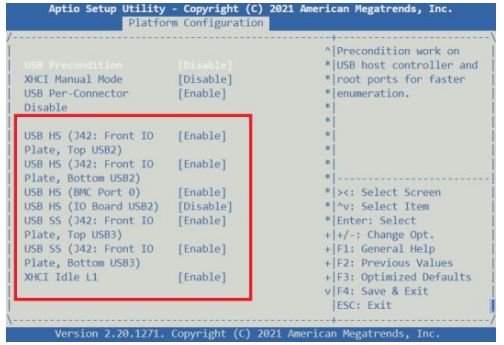
Step_1	Navigate to the <b>Boot</b> menu, and enable or disable the <b>OS App. Ready Led Control</b> given to the UEFI/BIOS.	
--------	--	--

### Disabling server access to the I210 Ethernet controller

Step_1	Navigate to the <b>Platform Configuration</b> tab and select <b>PCH-IO Configuration</b> .	
Step_2	Navigate to <b>PCI Express Configuration</b> .	
Step_3	Navigate to device <b>PCI Express Root Port 12 (i210)</b> and select <b>Disabled</b> . This will effectively disconnect the I210 Ethernet controller from the server.	

### Disabling USB ports

NOTE: Enabling or disabling platform USB ports may cause the system to malfunction. Proceed with caution.

Step_1	Navigate to the <b>Platform Configuration</b> tab and select <b>PCH-IO Configuration</b> or <b>PCH Configuration</b> depending on the UEFI/BIOS firmware version.	
Step_2	Select <b>USB Configuration</b> .	
Step_3	<p>All USB ports are identified in this menu. Enable or disable ports as needed according to the following considerations:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. It is not recommended to change the USB port configuration except for the ports described below. Otherwise, it may leave the platform inoperable.</li> <li>2. Front panel USB ports are labeled as <b>Front IO Plate</b>. Support for USB 3.0 and USB 2.0 must be enabled/disabled separately.</li> <li>3. Do not disable <b>BMC Port 0</b> unless you wish to disable Redfish functionality for the UEFI/BIOS firmware. This would also disable the front-panel MGMTUSB port.</li> </ol>	

## Configuring UEFI/BIOS options via the BMC using Redfish

This option will be available in a future platform software release.

## Specifying the next boot device via the BMC using Redfish


Step_1	<p>Get a list of available boot devices.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .Boot</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .Boot {   "AutomaticRetryAttempts": 3,   "AutomaticRetryConfig": "RetryAttempts",   "AutomaticRetryConfig@Redfish.AllowableValues": [     "Disabled",     "RetryAttempts"   ],   "BootSourceOverrideEnabled": "Continuous",   "BootSourceOverrideTarget": "BiosSetup",   "BootSourceOverrideTarget@Redfish.AllowableValues": [     "None",     "Pxe",     "Hdd",     "Cd",     "Diags",     "BiosSetup",     "Usb"   ],   "TrustedModuleRequiredToBoot": "Disabled" } </pre>
Step_2	<p>Change the next boot device.</p> <p>The <b>OVERRIDE_TYPE</b> value can take one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous</li> <li>• Once</li> <li>• None</li> </ul> <p>RemoteComputer_OS Prompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Boot": {"BootSourceOverrideTarget": "[BOOT_DEVICE]", "BootSourceOverrideEnabled": "[OVERRIDE_TYPE]"}}'   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"Boot": {"BootSourceOverrideTarget": "Hdd", "BootSourceOverrideEnabled": "Continuous"}}'   jq </pre>


# Configuring sensors and thermal parameters

## Table of contents

- [Performing configurations using Redfish](#)
  - [Configuring sensor thresholds](#)
  - [Configuring minimum fan speed](#)
  - [Configuring maximum fan speed](#)
  - [Configuring a threshold offset](#)
  - [Configuring a start point offset from threshold](#)
  - [Configuring the minimum ambient temperature](#)
- [Performing configurations using IPMI](#)
  - [Configuring thresholds](#)

<b>NOTICE</b>	Default platform sensor thresholds should not be changed. They have been set to ensure proper operation. Should you decide to change them, use caution as inappropriate settings could cause a property damage.
---------------	---

	Changes made to thermal parameters will be lost when the BMC is upgraded. However, they are persistent upon rebooting the BMC.
---	--

	<p>The information provided in this section is to configure sensors related to the end user PCIe add-in cards. Only the following sensors should be configured by the end user:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Temp PCIe 1 mbox</li> <li>• Temp PCIe 2 mbox</li> <li>• Temp PCIe 1</li> <li>• Temp PCIe 2</li> <li>• Temp Chassis</li> </ul>
---	--

Refer to [Installing a thermal probe for the PCIe add-in card](#) for installation information and to [Platform resources for customer application](#) for code to integrate into the application to communicate customer-specific sensor information to the BMC.

For more information on sensors, refer to the [Sensor list](#).

For event data interpretation instructions, refer to [Interpreting sensor data](#).

There are several methods to configure platform sensors, including:

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

	Sensor threshold Upper critical must be bigger than Upper non-critical for the fan controller to properly operate.
---	--

## Performing configurations using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Refer to [Creating URLs](#) and [Sensor list](#) for sensor information required.

### Configuring sensor thresholds

**NOTE:** Sensor thresholds that are not populated by default can neither be populated nor configured.


Step_1	Identify the URL to use in order to change the thresholds and the sensor name.
Step_2	<p>Change the threshold value of the desired sensor.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/[SENSOR_URL] --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"[RESOURCE]": [{"MemberId": "[SENSOR_NAME]", "[THRESHOLD]": [VALUE]}]}'   jq</p> <p>Supported values for parameter [THRESHOLD] are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LowerThresholdCritical</li> <li>• LowerThresholdNonCritical</li> <li>• UpperThresholdCritical</li> <li>• UpperThresholdNonCritical</li> </ul> <p>To modify customer-specific PCIe add-in card related sensors, the value for parameter [RESOURCE] is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Temperatures</li> </ul> <pre style="background-color: #2e3436; color: #eeeeec; padding: 10px;">\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.102.31/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1210 Baseboard/Thermal --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Temperatures": [{"MemberId": "Temp PCIe 1", "UpperThresholdNonCritical": 77}]}'   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1210 Baseboard/Thermal",   "@odata.type": "#Thermal.v1_4_0.Thermal",   "Fans": [],   "Id": "Thermal",   "Name": "Thermal",   "Temperatures": [] }</pre>

### Configuring minimum fan speed

	Minimum fan speed should never be under 30%.
---	--

Step_1	<p>Set minimum fan speed.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS_PROMPT:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"FanControllers": {"Fan_Controller": {"OutLimitMin": [MINIMUM_FAN_SPEED]}}}}}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"FanControllers": {"Fan_Controller": {"OutLimitMin": 30.0}}}}}}'   jq</pre>
--------	---

### Configuring maximum fan speed

	<p>The maximum fan speed cannot be set over 100%.</p> <p>A value of less than 100% can affect system performance and operating temperature range.</p>
---	---

Step_1	<p>Set maximum fan speed.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS_PROMPT:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"FanControllers": {"Fan_Controller": {"OutLimitMax": [MAXIMUM_FAN_SPEED]}}}}}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"FanControllers": {"Fan_Controller": {"OutLimitMax": 90.0}}}}}}'   jq</pre>
--------	---

### Configuring a threshold offset

A threshold offset is an offset applied to the Upper non-critical and Upper critical thresholds to start the fans before getting to the actual threshold. This ensures events are not sent for nothing near threshold values.

Step_1	<p>Set a threshold offset.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS_PROMPT:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"LinearControllers": [{"SENSOR_ID}": {"ThresholdOffset": [VALUE]}]}}}'   jq</p> <p>NOTE: The ThresholdOffset value must be negative.</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"LinearControllers": [{"Temp_Pcie_1": {"ThresholdOffset": -3}}]}}}'   jq</pre>
--------	--

### Configuring a start point offset from threshold

A start point offset from threshold is an offset applied to the "Upper non-critical + Threshold offset" to start the fans at a lower temperature value. This ensures a smoother curve from minimal fan speed before getting to the Upper non-critical threshold.

Step_1	<p>Set a start point offset from the threshold.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS_PROMPT:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"LinearControllers": [{"SENSOR_ID}": {"StartPointOffsetFromThreshold": [VALUE]}]}}}'   jq</p> <p>NOTE: The StartPointOffsetFromThreshold value must be negative.</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"LinearControllers": [{"Temp_Pcie_1": {"StartPointOffsetFromThreshold": -9}}]}}}'   jq</pre>
--------	---

### Configuring the minimum ambient temperature

For information on the functionalities linked to the minimum ambient temperature, refer to [Platform cooling and thermal management](#).

The minimum ambient temperature is the Temp Inlet sensor value at which fans will start running at minimum speed. Below this value, fans are stopped so the heater can do its work in a cold environment.

Step_1	<p>Set the minimum ambient temperature.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OS_PROMPT:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"FanControllers": {"Fan_Controller": {"AmbientTempMin": [VALUE]}}}}}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"Oem": {"OpenBmc": {"Fan": {"FanControllers": {"Fan_Controller": {"AmbientTempMin": 12}}}}}}'   jq</pre>
--------	---

## Performing configurations using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 .

### Configuring thresholds



Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port, change the threshold value of the desired sensor.</p> <pre>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sensor thresh " [SENSOR_ID]" [THRESH_TYPE] [VALUE]</pre> <p>Supported THRESHOLDS are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• unr = upper non-recoverable</li><li>• ucr = upper critical</li><li>• unc = upper non-critical</li><li>• lnc = lower non-critical</li><li>• lcr = lower critical</li><li>• lnr = lower non-recoverable</li></ul>	<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor thresh "Temp BMC" ucr 180 Locating sensor record "Temp BMC"... Setting sensor "Temp BMC" Upper Critical threshold to 180,000</pre>
--------	--	--

## Operating

# Platform power management

## Table of contents

- [Integrated server power management](#)
  - [Integrated server power management using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Integrated server power management using Redfish](#)
  - [Integrated server power management using IPMI over LAN \(IOL\)](#)
- [Rebooting the BMC](#)
  - [Rebooting the BMC using the Web UI](#)
  - [Rebooting the BMC using Redfish](#)
- [Rebooting the switch NOS](#)
  - [Rebooting the switch NOS using the NOS CLI](#)
  - [Rebooting the switch NOS using the NOS Web UI](#)

## Integrated server power management

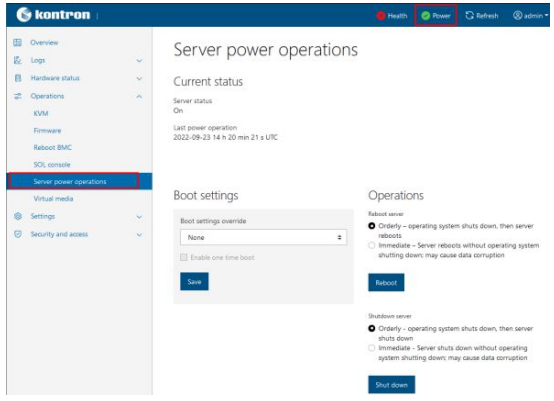
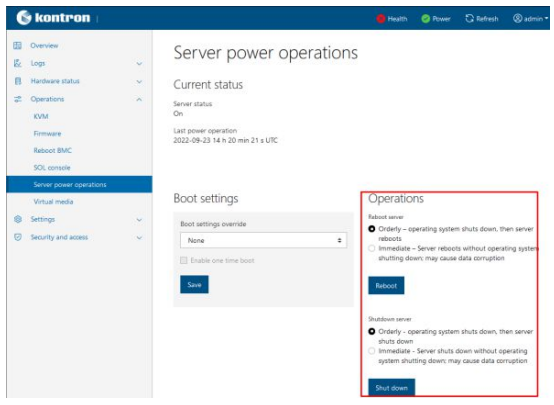
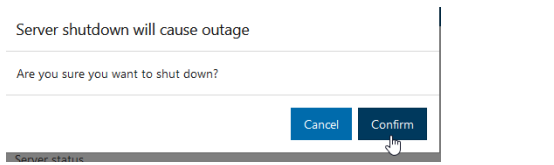
A power action command can be executed using:

- The [BMC Web UI](#)
- [Redfish](#)
- [IPMI over LAN](#)

### Integrated server power management using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

**NOTE:** Performing a server power action using the Web UI will make the user exit the current window.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Operations</b> and then <b>Server power operations</b> or simply click on the <b>Power</b> status icon at the top of the page.	
Step_2	Click on the desired power action button.	
Step_3	Click the <b>Confirm</b> button to continue. The platform will perform the power action.	

### Integrated server power management using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Execute the following command to manage platform power.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Actions/ComputerSystem.Reset --header 'Content-Type: application/json' - --data '{"ResetType":"[POWER_ACTION]"}'   jq</p> <p>Supported values for parameter [POWER_ACTION] are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On</li> <li>• ForceOff</li> <li>• ForceOn</li> <li>• ForceRestart</li> <li>• GracefulRestart</li> <li>• GracefulShutdown</li> <li>• PowerCycle</li> </ul> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Actions/ComputerSystem.Reset --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"ResetType":"GracefulRestart"}'   jq {   "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "Successfully Completed Request",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Success",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Verify the current power state.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .PowerState</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .PowerState "On"</pre>

## Integrated server power management using IPMI over LAN (IOL)

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using IPMI over LAN \(IOL\)](#) for access instructions.

Power actions can be executed from the integrated server operating system using IPMI via KCS.

**NOTE:** Performing a power off from the integrated server will make it inaccessible. A power on command would need to be executed using another BMC access method.

Step_1	<p>List every power action command.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 chassis power</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool -I lanplus -H 172.16.182.31 -U admin -P ready2go -C 17 chassis power Chassis Commands: status, power, policy, restart_cause pob, identify, selftest, bootdev, bootparam, bootbox</pre>
Step_2	<p>Execute the power action command from the commands listed.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 chassis power [POWER_ACTION]</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool -I lanplus -H 172.16.182.31 -U admin -P ready2go -C 17 chassis power off Chassis Power Control: Down/Off</pre>
Step_3	<p>Verify the power status.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 chassis power status</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool -I lanplus -H 172.16.182.31 -U admin -P ready2go -C 17 chassis power status Chassis Power is off</pre>

**NOTE:** IPMI power command reset will not perform a hardware reset. It will perform a simple server power down and then will power up the server automatically.

## Rebooting the BMC

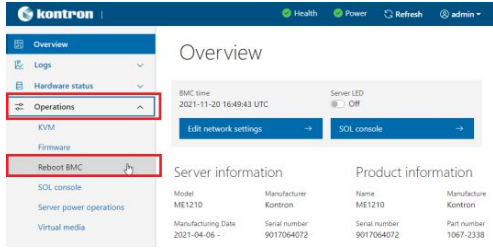
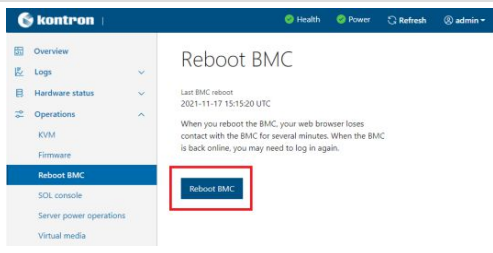
A BMC reboot can be executed using:

- the [BMC Web UI](#)
- [Redfish](#)

### Rebooting the BMC using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

**NOTE:** Rebooting the BMC using the Web UI might terminate the current user session.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Operations</b> and then <b>Reboot BMC</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the <b>Reboot BMC</b> button and then confirm.	
Step_3	Wait for the BMC to boot. It may take a moment.	

## Rebooting the BMC using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Execute the following command to reboot BMC.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/Actions/Manager.Reset --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"ResetType":"GracefulRestart"}'   jq</pre> 
Step_2	Wait for the BMC to reboot. It may take a moment.

## Rebooting the switch NOS

A switch NOS reboot can be executed using:

- the [switch NOS CLI](#)
- the [switch NOS Web UI](#)

### Rebooting the switch NOS using the NOS CLI

**NOTE:** This procedure applies only to a platform equipped with the Ethernet switch IO module .

**NOTE:** Make sure all changes to the configuration are saved prior to rebooting the switch NOS. Refer to [Configuring the switch](#).

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

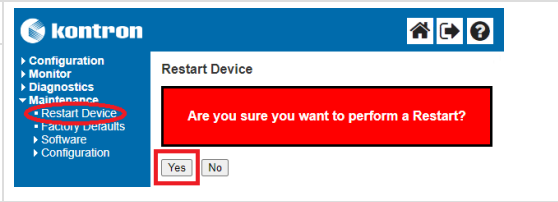
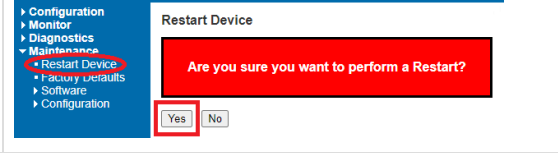
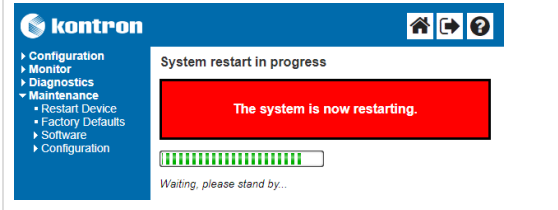
Step_1	<p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# reload cold</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Rebooting the switch NOS may take several seconds.</p>
--------	--

### Rebooting the switch NOS using the NOS Web UI

**NOTE:** This procedure applies only to a platform equipped with the Ethernet switch IO module.

**NOTE:** Make sure all changes to the configuration are saved prior to rebooting the switch NOS. Refer to [Configuring the switch](#).

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Maintenance</b> and then <b>Restart Device</b> .	 <p>The screenshot shows the Kontron web interface with a blue header and a left-side navigation menu. The menu items are: Configuration, Monitor, Diagnostics, Maintenance, Factory Defaults, Software, and Configuration. The 'Maintenance' item is expanded, and 'Restart Device' is highlighted with a red circle.</p>
Step_2	Click on the <b>Yes</b> button to begin the restart procedure.	 <p>The screenshot shows the Kontron web interface with a blue header and a left-side navigation menu. The menu items are: Configuration, Monitor, Diagnostics, Maintenance, Factory Defaults, Software, and Configuration. The 'Maintenance' item is expanded, and 'Restart Device' is highlighted with a red circle. A red dialog box is displayed in the center of the screen with the text 'Are you sure you want to perform a Restart?' and two buttons: 'Yes' and 'No'.</p>
Step_3	Wait for the switch to be available again. <b>NOTE:</b> Rebooting the switch NOS may take several seconds.	 <p>The screenshot shows the Kontron web interface with a blue header and a left-side navigation menu. The menu items are: Configuration, Monitor, Diagnostics, Maintenance, Factory Defaults, Software, and Configuration. The 'Maintenance' item is expanded, and 'Restart Device' is highlighted with a red circle. A red dialog box is displayed in the center of the screen with the text 'The system is now restarting.' Below the dialog box is a progress bar and the text 'Waiting, please stand by...'.</p>

# BMC session management

Table of contents

- [Viewing BMC sessions](#)
  - [Viewing BMC sessions using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Viewing BMC sessions using Redfish](#)
- [Disconnecting BMC sessions](#)
  - [Disconnecting BMC sessions using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Disconnecting a BMC session using Redfish](#)
- [Configuring BMC session timeout](#)
  - [Configuring BMC session timeout using Redfish](#)
- [Redfish token-based authentication](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Creating a session token](#)

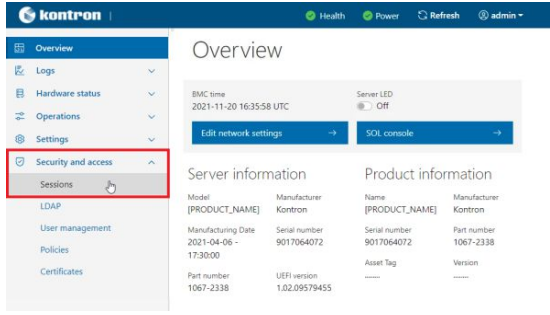
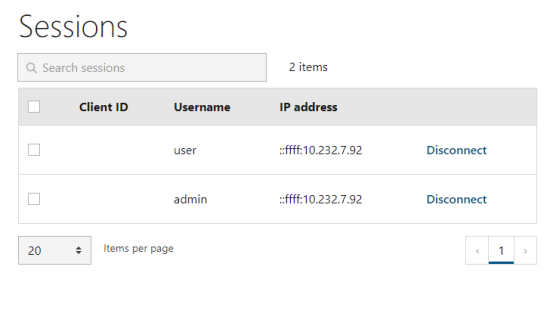
## Viewing BMC sessions

BMC sessions can be accessed:

- Using the BMC Web UI
- Using Redfish

### Viewing BMC sessions using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Security and access</b> and then <b>Sessions</b> .</p>	
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>The session list should be displayed.</p>	

### Viewing BMC sessions using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Display the list of active sessions using the following command. Note the session URL.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/",   "@odata.type": "#SessionCollection.SessionCollection",   "Description": "Session Collection",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/TzsDHTSiJk"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/ppt1YBKbx7"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 2,   "Name": "Session Collection" }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Access the information on a specific session using the following command.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/[SESSION_URL]   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/TzsDHTSiJk   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/TzsDHTSiJk",   "@odata.type": "#Session.v1_3_0.Session",   "ClientOriginIPAddress": "::ffff:10.232.7.92",   "Description": "Manager User Session",   "Id": "TzsDHTSiJk",   "Name": "User Session",   "UserName": "User" }</pre>

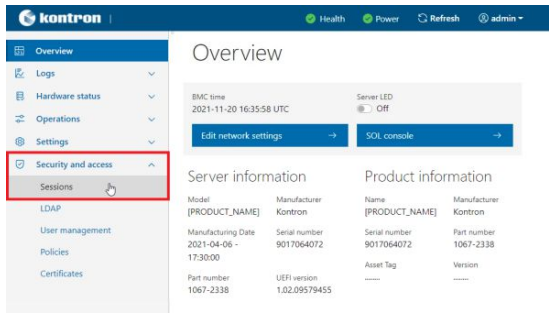
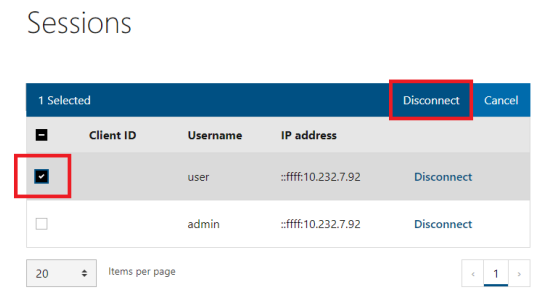
## Disconnecting BMC sessions

BMC sessions can be accessed:

- Using the BMC Web UI
- Using Redfish

### Disconnecting BMC sessions using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Security and access</b> and then <b>Sessions</b> .</p>	
Step_2	<p>Select the session(s) to disconnect using the checkboxes and then click on <b>Disconnect</b> .  <b>NOTE:</b> This procedure could end the current BMC session.</p>	

### Disconnecting a BMC session using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.



Step_1	<p>Display the list of active sessions using the following command. Note the session URL of the session to disconnect. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/",   "@odata.type": "#SessionCollection.SessionCollection",   "Description": "Session Collection",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/TzsDHTSiJk"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/ppt1YBKbx7"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 2,   "Name": "Session Collection" } </pre>
Step_2	<p>Delete the session using the following command. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request DELETE --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/[SESSION_URL]   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request DELETE --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/TzsDHTSiJk   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/TzsDHTSiJk",   "@odata.type": "#Session.v1_3_0.Session",   "ClientOriginIPAddress": "rffif:10.232.7.92",   "Description": "Manager User Session",   "Id": "TzsDHTSiJk",   "Name": "User Session",   "UserName": "user" } </pre>

## Configuring BMC session timeout

A BMC session will automatically be disconnected after the session timeout expires. This value can be changed if needed.

The default BMC session timeout is 1800 seconds.

The BMC session timeout can only be configured using Redfish.

### Configuring BMC session timeout using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Display the current BMC session timeout value. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/SessionService   jq .SessionTimeout</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/SessionService   jq .SessionTimeout 1800 </pre>
Step_2	<p>Change the current BMC session timeout to the new desired value. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/SessionService --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"SessionTimeout': [TIMEOUT]}'   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/SessionService --header 'Content-Type:application/json' --data '{"SessionTimeout': 3600}'   jq {   "SessionTimeout@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "The property SessionTimeout was assigned the value 3600 due to modification by the service.",       "MessageArgs": [         "SessionTimeout",         "3600"       ],       "MessageId": "Base.1.0.1.PropertyValueModified",       "MessageSeverity": "Warning",       "Resolution": "No resolution is required."     }   ] } </pre>

## Redfish token-based authentication

This section describes how an HTTPS client can obtain an authentication token through the Redfish API. Throughout the user documentation, basic authentication is used in order to simplify documentation. However, hard-coding user names and passwords can become a security impediment. In order to improve platform security, token-based authentication can be used.

Token-based Redfish authentication can also reduce BMC response time.

### Prerequisites

1	The BMC IP address is known.
2	An HTTP client tool is installed on the remote computer.

### Creating a session token

Relevant section:

[Default user names and passwords](#)

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Request a session token from the session service. The Id of the newly created session should be displayed.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --insecure --request POST --url https:// [ BMC MNGMT_IP ] /redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"UserName": "[ BMC_USERNAME ]", "Password": "[ BMC_PASSWORD ]}' --dump-header [FILE_NAME]   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --insecure --request POST --url https://172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"UserName": "admin", "Password": "ready2go"}' --dump-header header.temp   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/FGDMLVtxfv",   "@odata.type": "#Session.v1_3_0.Session",   "ClientOriginIPAddress": "::ffff:10.232.7.82",   "Description": "Manager User Session",   "Id": "FGDMLVtxfv",   "Name": "User Session",   "UserName": "admin" }</pre>
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>Extract the token from the response header from the temporary file and delete it.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ cat [ FILE_NAME ]   grep X-Auth-Token &amp;&amp; rm [FILE_NAME]</p> <pre>\$ cat header.temp   grep X-Auth-Token &amp;&amp; rm header.temp X-Auth-Token: nygIYz35op1r8LcP5MC</pre>
<p>Step_3</p>	<p>Verify that the token is valid by accessing a Redfish resource. Add the token as an additional header.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https:// [ BMC MNGMT_IP ] /redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'X-Auth-Token: [ TOKEN ]'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://172.16.168.122/redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'X-Auth-Token: 6rX1SAv1R1JvXhQeB0zK'   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService",   "@odata.type": "#UpdateService.v1_5_0.UpdateService",   "Description": "Service For Software Update",   "FirmwareInventory": {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory"   },   "HttpPushUri": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService",   "HttpPushUriOptions": {     "HttpPushUriApplyTime": {       "ApplyTime": "Immediate"     }   },   "Id": "UpdateService",   "MaxImageSizeBytes": 73400320,   "Name": "Update Service",   "ServiceEnabled": true }</pre>

# System inventory

Table of contents

- [Collecting the FRU information](#)
  - [Collecting the FRU information using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Collecting the FRU information using Redfish](#)
  - [Collecting the FRU information using IPMI](#)
- [Collecting the BMC, UEFI and FPGA firmware versions](#)
  - [Collecting the BMC, UEFI and FPGA firmware versions using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Collecting the BMC, UEFI and FPGA firmware versions using Redfish](#)
- [Collecting hardware configuration information](#)
  - [Collecting power supply type \(AC or DC\)](#)
    - [Collecting power supply type using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Collecting power supply type using Redfish](#)
    - [Collecting power supply type using IPMI](#)
  - [Collecting product IO module information](#)
    - [Collecting product IO module information using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Collecting product IO module information using Redfish](#)
    - [Collecting product IO module information using IPMI](#)
  - [Collecting processor device information](#)
    - [Collecting processor device information using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Collecting processor device information using Redfish](#)
  - [Collecting memory device configuration](#)
    - [Collecting memory device configuration using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Collecting memory device configuration using Redfish](#)
- [Collecting the UEFI/BIOS configuration](#)
- [Collecting the Ethernet switch running configuration](#)
  - [Collecting the Ethernet switch running configuration using the switch NOS CLI](#)
  - [Collecting the Ethernet switch running configuration using the switch NOS Web UI](#)
- [Collecting the Ethernet switch firmware version](#)
  - [Collecting the Ethernet switch firmware version using the switch NOS CLI](#)
  - [Collecting the Ethernet switch firmware version using the switch NOS Web UI](#)

Here is the information that can be collected to create a system inventory:

- FRU information
- BMC, UEFI, FPGA firmware versions
- Power supply type
- Product IO module information
- Processor device information
- Memory device configuration
- UEFI/BIOS configuration
- Ethernet switch running configuration
- Ethernet switch version

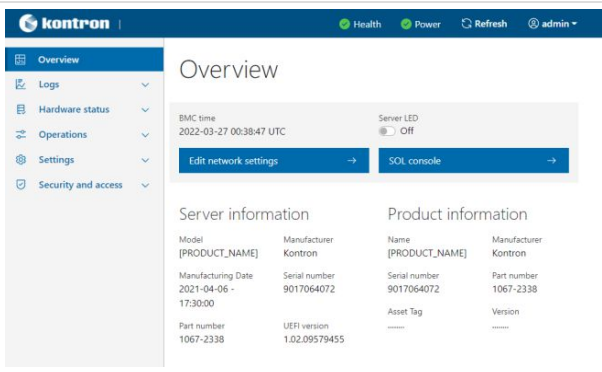
## Collecting the FRU information

FRU information can be collected:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

### Collecting the FRU information using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Overview</b> . The FRU information should be displayed.	 <p>The screenshot shows the Kontron BMC Web UI 'Overview' page. The left sidebar contains a menu with 'Overview' selected. The main content area displays 'Server information' and 'Product information' sections. The 'Server information' section includes fields for Model, Manufacturer, Manufacturing Date, Serial number, and Part number. The 'Product information' section includes fields for Name, Manufacturer, Serial number, Part number, Asset Tag, and Version. The BMC time is shown as 2022-03-27 00:38:47 UTC and the Server LED is OFF.</p>
--------	--	---

### Collecting the FRU information using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Use the following command to collect the FRU information.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq ".Manufacturer, .ManufactureDate, .Model, .PartNumber, .ProductManufacturer, .ProductName, .ProductPartNumber, .ProductSerialNumber"</pre> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq ".Manufacturer, .ManufactureDate, .Model, .PartNumber, .ProductManufacturer, .ProductName, .ProductPartNumber, .ProductSerialNumber"</pre> <pre>"Kontron" "2021-04-06 - 17:30:00" "ME1310" "1067-2338" "Kontron" "ME1310" "1067-2338" "9017064072"</pre>
--------	---

### Collecting the FRU information using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17`.

Step_1	<p>Use the following command to collect the FRU information.</p> <pre>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool fru print</pre> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This command will return all detected FRU devices including PCIe add-on cards with FRU EEPROM.</p>	<pre># ipmitool fru print FRU Device Description : Builtin FRU Device (ID 0) Chassis Type           : Main Server Chassis Chassis Part Number    : XXXX-XXXX Chassis Serial         : XXXXXXXXXXXX Chassis Extra          : ME1310 Board Mfg Date         : Wed Apr 7 13:30:00 2021 Board Mfg              : Kontron Board Product          : ME1310 Board Serial           : 9017064072 Board Part Number      : 1067-2338 Board Extra            : MAC=00:A0:A5:E1:0E:20/07 Product Manufacturer   : Kontron Product Name           : ME1310 Product Part Number    : 1067-2338 Product Version        : ..... Product Serial         : 9017064072 Product Asset Tag      : .....  FRU Device Description : ME1310-PSU-DC (ID 74) Board Mfg Date         : Mon Jun 1 04:00:00 2020 Board Mfg              : Kontron Board Product          : ME1310-PSU-DC Board Serial           : 9017067765 Board Part Number      : 1067-4309  FRU Device Description : ME1310-SW-X (ID 212) Board Mfg Date         : Mon Aug 12 11:55:00 2019 Board Mfg              : Kontron Board Product          : ME1310-SW-X Board Serial           : XXXXXXXXXXXX Board Part Number      : ..... Board Extra            : MAC=CC:CC:CC:CC:CC:CC/DD</pre>
--------	---	---

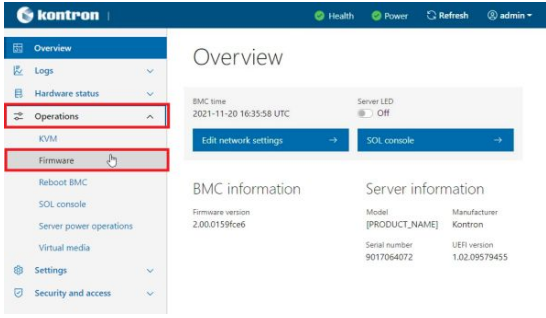
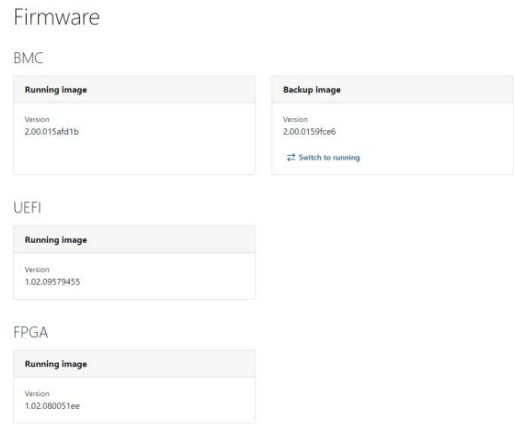
### Collecting the BMC, UEFI and FPGA firmware versions

The BMC, UEFI and FPGA firmware versions can be collected:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)

### Collecting the BMC, UEFI and FPGA firmware versions using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Operations</b> and then <b>Firmware</b> .	
Step_2	The BMC, UEFI/BIOS and FPGA firmware versions will be displayed.	

## Collecting the BMC, UEFI and FPGA firmware versions using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Collect the current BMC firmware version using the following command.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .FirmwareVersion</pre> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .FirmwareVersion "2.00.0159fce6"</pre>
Step_2	<p>Compile the firmware in the BMC Redfish Firmware Inventory. The URLs given by the command below will be used in Step_3.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory   jq</pre> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory",   "@odata.type": "#SoftwareInventoryCollection.SoftwareInventoryCollection",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/8c50fd55"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/c172d3d8"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/d6bcd2a6"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/ebb5d7b"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 4,   "Name": "Software Inventory Collection" }</pre>
Step_3	<p>For each URL in the list generated at Step_2, run this command to obtain more information about the firmware images.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/ [URL_FROM_STEP_2 ]   jq</pre> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/d6bcd2a6   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/d6bcd2a6",   "@odata.type": "#SoftwareInventory.v1_0.SoftwareInventory",   "Description": "Host image",   "Id": "d6bcd2a6",   "Members@odata.count": 1,   "Name": "Software Inventory",   "RelatedItem": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Bios"     }   ],   "Status": {     "Health": "OK",     "HealthRollup": "OK",     "State": "Enabled"   },   "Updateable": true,   "Version": "1.02.09579455" }</pre>

## Collecting hardware configuration information

Hardware configuration information might be required to make the proper board health diagnostics. The following list contains basic examples of information

that could help the Kontron support team.

- Power supply type (AC or DC)
- Product IO board configuration
- Processor device information
- Memory device configuration

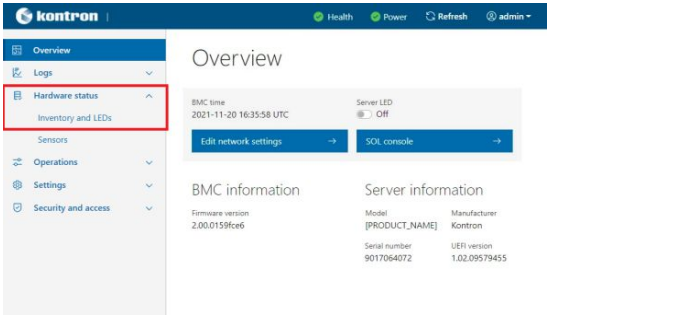
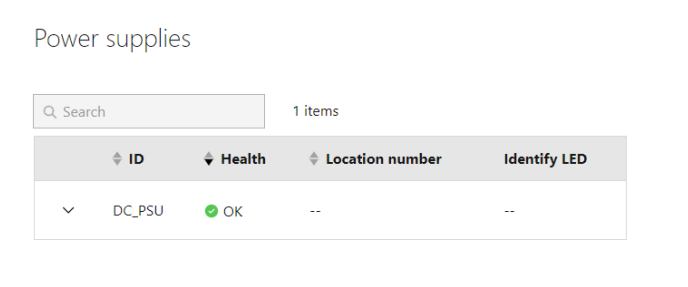
### Collecting power supply type (AC or DC)

The power supply type can be collected:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

### Collecting power supply type using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Hardware status</b> and then <b>Inventory and LEDs</b> .</p>	
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>From the <b>Power supplies</b> section, collect the power supply type.</p>	

### Collecting power supply type using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Collect the power supply type using the following command. The power supply type can either be DC or AC.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1310_Baseboard/Power   jq .PowerSupplies</pre> 
---------------	--

### Collecting power supply type using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17` .

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>Use the following command to collect the FRU information. The power supply should appear in the devices listed by the command.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool fru print</p> <p>Power supply types: AC PSU: M1877 DC PSU: ME1310-PSU-DC</p>	<pre># ipmitool fru print FRU Device Description : Builtin FRU Device (ID 0) Chassis Type           : Main Server Chassis Chassis Part Number    : XXXX-XXXX Chassis Serial         : XXXXXXXXXX Chassis Extra          : ME1310 Board Mfg Date         : Wed Apr  7 13:30:00 2021 Board Mfg              : Kontron Board Product          : ME1310 Board Serial           : 9017064072 Board Part Number      : 1067-2338 Board Extra            : MAC=00:A0:A5:E1:0E:20/07 Product Manufacturer   : Kontron Product Name           : ME1310 Product Part Number    : 1067-2338 Product Version        : ..... Product Serial         : 9017064072 Product Asset Tag      : .....  FRU Device Description : ME1310-PSU-DC (ID 74) Board Mfg Date         : Mon Jun  1 04:00:00 2020 Board Mfg              : Kontron Board Product          : ME1310-PSU-DC Board Serial           : 9017067765 Board Part Number      : 1067-4309  FRU Device Description : ME1310-SW-X (ID 212) Board Mfg Date         : Mon Aug 12 11:55:00 2019 Board Mfg              : Kontron Board Product          : ME1310-SW-X Board Serial           : XXXXXXXXXX Board Part Number      : ..... Board Extra            : MAC=CC:CC:CC:CC:CC:CC/DD</pre>
---------------	--	---

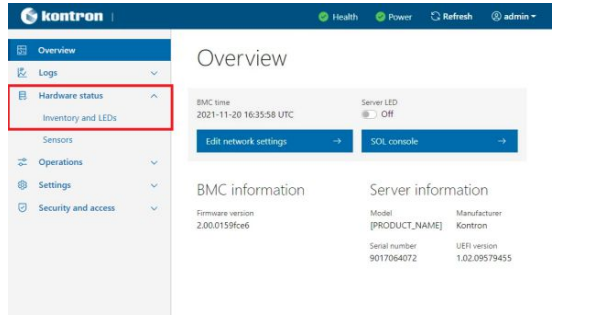
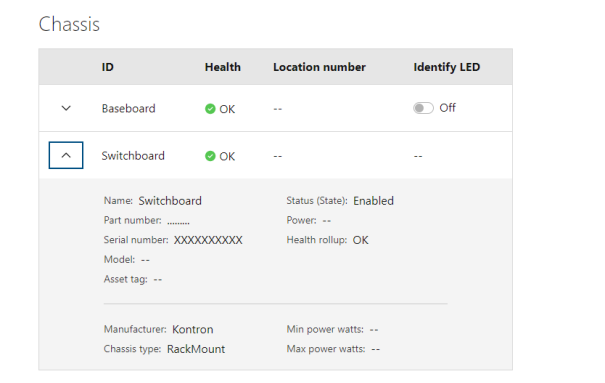
### Collecting product IO module information

The product IO module information can be collected:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

### Collecting product IO module information using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

<p>Step_1</p>	<p>From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Hardware status</b> and then <b>Inventory and LEDs</b>.</p>	
<p>Step_2</p>	<p>From the <b>Chassis</b> section, collect the IO module information. If needed, expand the IO module board information by using the left-side arrow.</p>	

### Collecting product IO module information using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Identify the type of IO module using the following command.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Chassis   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Chassis   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis",   "@odata.type": "#ChassisCollection.ChassisCollection",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1310_Baseboard"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/Switchboard"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 2,   "Name": "Chassis Collection" } </pre>
Step_2	<p>Collect the IO module information using the following command and the URL obtained at the previous step.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Chassis/[IO_MODULE_URL]   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Chassis/S witchboard   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/Switchboard",   "@odata.type": "#Chassis.v1_14_0.Chassis",   "Actions": {     "#Chassis.Reset": {       "@Redfish.ActionInfo": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/Switchboard/ResetActionInfo",       "target": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/Switchboard/Actions/Chassis.Reset"     }   },   "ChassisType": "RackMount",   "Id": "Switchboard",   "Links": {     "ComputerSystems": [       {         "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system"       }     ],     "ManagedBy": [       {         "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc"       }     ]   },   "Manufacturer": "Kontron",   "Model": "ME1310-SW-X",   "Name": "Switchboard",   [...] } </pre>

## Collecting product IO module information using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17`.

Step_1	<p>Use the following command to collect the FRU information.  LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool fru print</p> <p>IO module type:  Switchboard = ME1310-SW-X  IOBoard = ME1310-IOS</p>	<pre> # ipmitool fru print FRU Device Description : Builtin FRU Device (ID 0) Chassis Type          : Main Server Chassis Chassis Part Number   : XXXX-XXXX Chassis Serial        : XXXXXXXXXX Chassis Extra         : ME1310 Board Mfg Date        : Wed Apr 7 13:30:00 2021 Board Mfg             : Kontron Board Product         : ME1310 Board Serial          : 9017064072 Board Part Number     : 1067-2338 Board Extra           : MAC-00:A0:A5:E1:0E:20/07 Product Manufacturer  : Kontron Product Name          : ME1310 Product Part Number   : 1067-2338 Product Version       : ..... Product Serial        : 9017064072 Product Asset Tag     : .....  FRU Device Description : ME1310-PSU-DC (ID 74) Board Mfg Date        : Mon Jun 1 04:00:00 2020 Board Mfg             : Kontron Board Product         : ME1310-PSU-DC Board Serial          : 9017067765 Board Part Number     : 1067-4309  FRU Device Description : ME1310-SW-X (ID 212) Board Mfg Date        : Mon Aug 12 11:55:00 2019 Board Mfg             : Kontron Board Product         : ME1310-SW-X Board Serial          : XXXXXXXXXX Board Part Number     : ..... Board Extra           : MAC=CC:CC:CC:CC:CC:CC/DD </pre>
--------	--	---

## Collecting processor device information

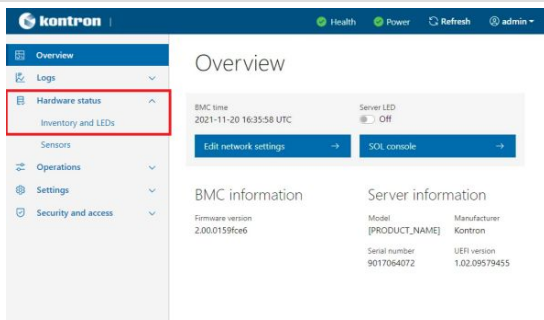
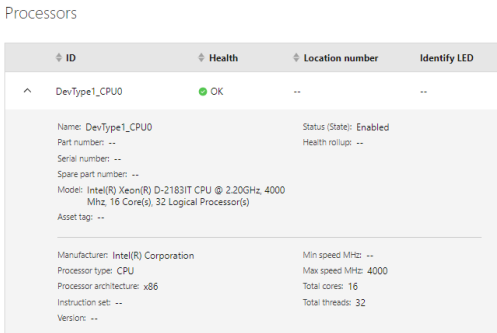
The processor device information can be collected:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)

## Collecting processor device information using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.



Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Hardware status</b> and then <b>Inventory and LEDs</b> .	
Step_2	From the <b>Processors</b> section, collect the processor configuration information.	

## Collecting processor device information using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>List all the processor devices using the following command.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Systems/system/Processors   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Processors   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Processors",   "@odata.type": "#ProcessorCollection.ProcessorCollection",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Processors/DevType1_CPU0"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 1,   "Name": "Processor Collection" } </pre>
Step_2	<p>Collect processor device information using the following command.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Systems/system/Processors/[DEVICE_URL]   jq</p> <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Processors/DevType1_CPU0   jq {   "@odata.context": "/redfish/v1/\$metadata#Processor.Processor",   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Processors/DevType1_CPU0",   "@odata.type": "#Processor.v1_1_0.Processor",   "CurrentFrequency": 2200,   "Id": "DevType1_CPU0",   "Manufacturer": "Intel(R) Corporation",   "MaxSpeedMHz": 4000,   "Model": "Intel(R) Xeon(R) D-2183IT CPU @ 2.20GHz, 4000 Mhz, 16 Core(s), 32 Logical Processor(s)",   "Name": "DevType1_CPU0",   "ProcessorArchitecture": "x86",   "ProcessorId": {     "EffectiveFamily": "Intel(R) Xeon(R) D-2183IT CPU @ 2.20GHz"   },   "ProcessorType": "CPU",   "Socket": "CPU0",   "Status": {     "Health": "OK",     "State": "Enabled"   },   [...] } </pre>

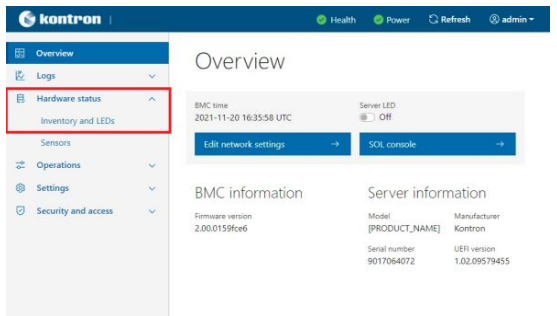
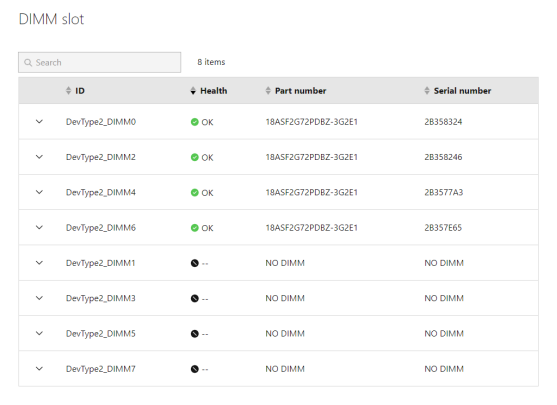
## Collecting memory device configuration

The memory device configuration can be collected:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)

## Collecting memory device configuration using the BMC Web UI

Access the BMC Web UI. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Hardware status</b> and then <b>Inventory and LEDs</b> .																																					
Step_2	From the DIMM slot section, collect the memory configuration information.	 <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Health</th> <th>Part number</th> <th>Serial number</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM0</td> <td>OK</td> <td>18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1</td> <td>2B358324</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM2</td> <td>OK</td> <td>18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1</td> <td>2B358246</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM4</td> <td>OK</td> <td>18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1</td> <td>2B3577A3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM6</td> <td>OK</td> <td>18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1</td> <td>2B357E65</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM1</td> <td>..</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM3</td> <td>..</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM5</td> <td>..</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DevType2_DIMM7</td> <td>..</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> <td>NO DIMM</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Health	Part number	Serial number	DevType2_DIMM0	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B358324	DevType2_DIMM2	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B358246	DevType2_DIMM4	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B3577A3	DevType2_DIMM6	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B357E65	DevType2_DIMM1	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM	DevType2_DIMM3	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM	DevType2_DIMM5	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM	DevType2_DIMM7	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM
ID	Health	Part number	Serial number																																			
DevType2_DIMM0	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B358324																																			
DevType2_DIMM2	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B358246																																			
DevType2_DIMM4	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B3577A3																																			
DevType2_DIMM6	OK	18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1	2B357E65																																			
DevType2_DIMM1	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM																																			
DevType2_DIMM3	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM																																			
DevType2_DIMM5	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM																																			
DevType2_DIMM7	..	NO DIMM	NO DIMM																																			

## Collecting memory device configuration using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	List all the memory devices using the following command. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory   jq	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory   jq {   "@odata.context": "/redfish/v1/\$metadata#MemoryCollection.MemoryCollection",   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory",   "@odata.type": "#MemoryCollection.MemoryCollection",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM0"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM1"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM2"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM3"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM4"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM5"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM6"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM7"     }   ],   "Members@odata.count": 8,   "Name": "Memory Module Collection" }</pre>
Step_2	Collect memory device information using the following command. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/[DEVICE_URL]   jq	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM0   jq {   "@odata.context": "/redfish/v1/\$metadata#Memory.Memory",   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/Memory/DevType2_DIMM0",   "@odata.type": "#Memory.v1_2_0.Memory",   "AllowedSpeedsMHz": [     3200   ],   "BaseModuleType": "RDIMM",   "BusWidthBits": 72,   "CapacityMiB": 16384,   "DataWidthBits": 64,   "DeviceLocator": "CPU1_DIMM_A1",   "Id": "DevType2_DIMM0",   "Manufacturer": "Micron",   "MemoryDeviceType": "DDR4",   "MemoryLocation": {     "Channel": 0,     "MemoryController": 0,     "Slot": 0,     "Socket": 0   },   "Name": "DevType2_DIMM0",   "OperatingSpeedMHz": 2400,   "PartNumber": "18ASF2G72PDBZ-3G2E1",   "RankCount": 2,   "Regions": [     {       "SecurityCapabilities": {         "ConfigurationLockCapable": false,         "DataLockCapable": false,         "ErasePraseCapable": false       },       "SerialNumber": "2B358324",       "Status": {         "Health": "OK",         "State": "Enabled"       }     }   ] }</pre>

## Collecting the UEFI/BIOS configuration

The UEFI/BIOS configuration can only be collected using Redfish. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

At each boot, the UEFI/BIOS firmware sends its current UEFI/BIOS configuration to the BMC. If the UEFI/BIOS is configured from another source (for example, the UEFI/BIOS menu), the updated UEFI/BIOS options are sent automatically to the BMC.

Step_1	<p>Obtain the current UEFI/BIOS settings.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Systems/system/Bios   jq .Attributes</pre>  <pre>{   "Attributes": {     "ACPI003": false,     "ACPI004": false,     "CRCS001": "2G",     "CRCS002": "256M",     "CRCS003": "56T",     "CRCS004": "64G",     "IIOS001": "Enable",     "IIOS002": "Disable",     "IIOS018": "Auto",     "IIOS019": "Auto",     [ALL UEFI SETTINGS ARE LISTED ...]   } }</pre> <p>NOTE: The output of this command is quite large and may be more useful directed into a local file. The curl option <code>-o, --output [FILE_NAME]</code> can be used to do this.</p>
--------	--

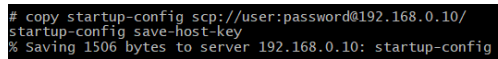
## Collecting the Ethernet switch running configuration

The Ethernet switch running configuration can be collected:

- Using the [switch NOS CLI](#)
- Using the [switch NOS Web UI](#)

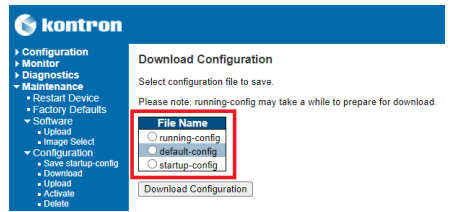
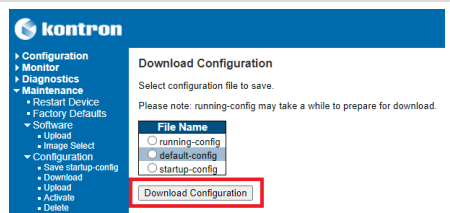
### Collecting the Ethernet switch running configuration using the switch NOS CLI

Refer to [Accessing the switch network operating system](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Access the switch network operating system using SSH or a serial connection.
Step_2	<p>Copy the desired configuration to the remote server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>running-config</b> : configuration currently active (may differ from startup-config if changes were made since the last boot, but not saved).</li> <li>• <b>startup-config</b> : saved configuration applied at switch boot.</li> </ul> <pre>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# copy &lt;running-config startup-config&gt; scp://&lt;SERVER_USERNAME&gt;:&lt;SERVER_PASSWORD&gt;@&lt;SERVER_IP&gt;/&lt;FILE_PATH&gt; save-host-key</pre>  <pre># copy startup-config scp://user:password@192.168.0.10/startup-config save-host-key % Saving 1506 bytes to server 192.168.0.10: startup-config</pre>

### Collecting the Ethernet switch running configuration using the switch NOS Web UI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>From the left-side menu of the switch NOS Web UI, select <b>Maintenance</b> , then <b>Configuration</b> , and then <b>Download</b> . Choose the configuration to back up:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>running-config</b> : Configuration currently active (may differ from startup-config if changes were made since the last boot, but not saved).</li> <li>• <b>default-config</b> : Configuration applied when the default configuration is reloaded.</li> <li>• <b>startup-config</b> : Saved configuration applied at switch boot.</li> </ul>	
Step_2	Click <b>Download Configuration</b> , then select where to save the configuration file.	

## Collecting the Ethernet switch firmware version

The Ethernet switch firmware version can be collected:

- Using the [switch NOS CLI](#)

- Using [switch NOS Web UI](#)

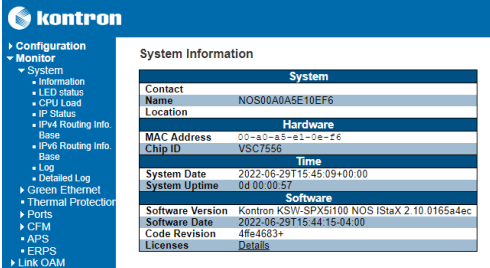
## Collecting the Ethernet switch firmware version using the switch NOS CLI

Refer to [Accessing the switch network operating system](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Display versions. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# show version</p>	<pre>NOS00A0A5E24F56# show version MAC Address      : 00-a0-a5-e2-4f-56 Previous Restart : Cool  System Contact   : System Name      : NOS00A0A5E24F56 System Location  : System Time      : 2022-06-29T15:44:55+00:00 System Uptime    : 00:00:43  Bootloader ----- Image            : UBoot Version          : 2019.10 Date            : (May 09 2022 - 09:41:57 -0400) KSW-SPX51100  Primary Image ----- Image           : linux (Active) Version        : Kontron KSW-SPX51100 NOS IStax 2.10.0165a4ec Date          : 2022-06-29T15:44:15-04:00  Backup Image ----- Image          : linux_bk Version       : Kontron KSW-SPX51100 NOS IStax 2.09.016564cb Date         : 2022-06-21T15:11:51-04:00  ----- SID : 1 ----- Chipset ID     : VSC47558 Rev. B Board Type     : Kontron KSW-SPX51100 Flash Type    : NOR-only Port Count    : 16 Product       : Kontron KSW-SPX51100 ME series Ethernet Switch Software Version : Kontron KSW-SPX51100 NOS IStax 2.10.0165a4ec Build Date    : 2022-06-29T15:44:15-04:00 Code Revision  : 4ff4683+</pre>
--------	--	---

## Collecting the Ethernet switch firmware version using the switch NOS Web UI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>From the left-side menu, select Monitor , System and then Information .</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the Kontron Web UI interface. On the left is a navigation menu with 'Monitor' expanded to show 'System Information'. The main content area displays 'System Information' with a table of system details:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">System Information</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>System</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Contact</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Name</td> <td>NOS00A0A5E10EFG</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Location</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>Hardware</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAC Address</td> <td>00-a0-a5-e1-0e-z6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Chip ID</td> <td>VSC7556</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>Time</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>System Date</td> <td>2022-06-29T15:45:09+00:00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>System Uptime</td> <td>0d 00:00:57</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"><b>Software</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Software Version</td> <td>Kontron KSW-SPX51100 NOS IStax 2.10.0165a4ec</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Software Date</td> <td>2022-06-29T15:44:15-04:00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Code Revision</td> <td>4ff4683+</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Licenses</td> <td>Details</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	System Information		<b>System</b>		Contact		Name	NOS00A0A5E10EFG	Location		<b>Hardware</b>		MAC Address	00-a0-a5-e1-0e-z6	Chip ID	VSC7556	<b>Time</b>		System Date	2022-06-29T15:45:09+00:00	System Uptime	0d 00:00:57	<b>Software</b>		Software Version	Kontron KSW-SPX51100 NOS IStax 2.10.0165a4ec	Software Date	2022-06-29T15:44:15-04:00	Code Revision	4ff4683+	Licenses	Details
System Information																																		
<b>System</b>																																		
Contact																																		
Name	NOS00A0A5E10EFG																																	
Location																																		
<b>Hardware</b>																																		
MAC Address	00-a0-a5-e1-0e-z6																																	
Chip ID	VSC7556																																	
<b>Time</b>																																		
System Date	2022-06-29T15:45:09+00:00																																	
System Uptime	0d 00:00:57																																	
<b>Software</b>																																		
Software Version	Kontron KSW-SPX51100 NOS IStax 2.10.0165a4ec																																	
Software Date	2022-06-29T15:44:15-04:00																																	
Code Revision	4ff4683+																																	
Licenses	Details																																	

# Monitoring

# Monitoring sensors

Table of contents

- [General monitoring procedure for unit-based sensors](#)
  - [Monitoring using the BMC Web UI](#)
  - [Monitoring using Redfish](#)
    - [Creating URL extensions](#)
    - [Viewing sensor details](#)
  - [Monitoring using IPMI](#)
- [Discrete sensor monitoring procedure](#)
  - [Board Reset](#)
    - [Possible values \(IPMI only\)](#)
    - [Monitoring Board Reset using IPMI](#)
    - [Monitoring last reset time](#)
  - [Heaters](#)
    - [Possible values](#)
    - [Monitoring heaters using Redfish](#)
    - [Monitoring heaters using IPMI](#)
  - [Intrusion](#)
    - [Event assertion](#)
    - [Event deassertion](#)
  - [IPMIWatchdog](#)
  - [Jumpers Status](#)
    - [Monitoring Jumpers Status sensor using Redfish](#)
    - [Monitoring Jumpers Status sensor using IPMI](#)
  - [TelcoAlarms](#)
    - [Monitoring TelcoAlarms using Redfish](#)
    - [Monitoring TelcoAlarms using IPMI](#)
    - [Event assertion](#)
    - [Event deassertion](#)

The platform has many sensors, you can refer to the [Sensor list](#) for details and to determine the sensor ID.

Sensors can be separated in two categories and both types are described in the Sensor list:

- Unit-based sensors – use the general monitoring procedure
- Discrete sensors – use the discrete sensor monitoring procedure

## General monitoring procedure for unit-based sensors

There are several methods to monitor platform sensors, including:

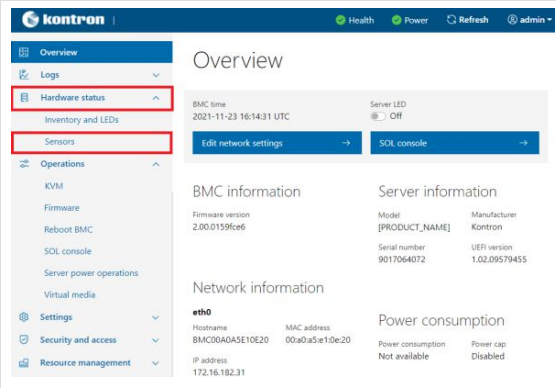
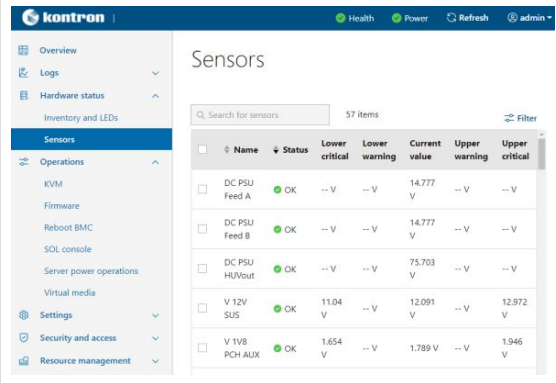
- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

For sensor data interpretation instructions, refer to [Interpreting sensor data](#).

For instructions on how to access the BMC, refer to [Accessing a BMC](#).

### Monitoring using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Access the BMC Web UI.	
Step_2	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Hardware status</b> and then <b>Sensors</b> .	
Step_3	The sensor list will be displayed. Scroll down to see the list of sensors or use the dedicated search bar to filter the sensors.	

## Monitoring using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

## Creating URL extensions

For the list of all the URL extensions, refer to [Sensor list](#). This table contains the main categories of sensors and their location.

Type	URL extensions	Parser arguments
Fan sensors	Chassis/ ME1310_Baseboard /Thermal	jq ".Fans"
Temperature sensors (including PSU sensors)	Chassis/ ME1310_Baseboard /Thermal	jq ".Temperatures"
Voltage sensors (including PSU sensors)	Chassis/ ME1310_Baseboard /Power	jq ".Voltages"
Power sensors (including PSU sensors)	Chassis/ ME1310_Baseboard /Sensors	jq
Other unit-based sensors	Chassis/ ME1310_Baseboard /Sensors	jq
Discrete sensors	Managers/bmc	jq ".Oem.Kontron.Discrete"
Pass-through IO module sensors	Chassis /IOBoard/Thermal	jq ".Temperatures"
Ethernet switch IO module sensors	Chassis /Switchboard/Thermal	jq ".Temperatures"

## Viewing sensor details

Step_1	<p>Append the root URL with the appropriate extension depending on the type of sensor. Refer to the URL extensions table above.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/[URL_EXTENSION] [PARSER_ARGUMENT]</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1310_Baseboard/Thermal   jq ".Fans" {   "Fans": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1210_Baseboard/Thermal#/Fans/0",       "@odata.type": "#Thermal.v1_3_0.Fan",       "MaxReadingRange": 27000,       "MemberId": "Fan 1",       "MinReadingRange": 0,       "Name": "Fan 1",       "Oem": {         "RunningTime": 8387014.545065252       },       "Reading": 12321,       "ReadingUnits": "RPM",       "Status": {         "Health": "OK",         "State": "Enabled"       }     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1210_Baseboard/Thermal#/Fans/1",       "@odata.type": "#Thermal.v1_3_0.Fan",       "MaxReadingRange": 27000,       "MemberId": "Fan 2",       "MinReadingRange": 0,       "Name": "Fan 2",       "Oem": {         "RunningTime": 8387016.783241839       },       "Reading": 12321,       "ReadingUnits": "RPM",       "Status": {         "Health": "OK",         "State": "Enabled"       }     }   ] }</pre>
--------	---

## Monitoring using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 .

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the server OS through SSH, RDP or the platform serial port , e nter the command.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sensor</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor Fan 1          10600.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Fan 2          10494.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Fan 3          10918.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Fan 4          11130.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Fan 5          10918.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Fan 6          10494.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Fan 7          10918.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Fan 8          10600.000  RPM      ok      na      na      na Temp BMC       27.000     degrees C ok      na      -41.000 na Temp CPU       28.000     degrees C ok      na      -41.000 na Temp CPU Area  30.000     degrees C ok      na      -41.000 na [...]</pre>
Step_2	<p>Use the sdr command to see more details about a specific sensor.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sdr get [SENSOR_ID]</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool sdr get "Temp CPU" Sensor ID      : Temp CPU (0x16) Entity ID      : 0.1 (Unspecified) Sensor Type (Threshold) : Temperature (0x01) Sensor Reading : 27 (+/- 0) degrees C Status         : OK Positive Hysteresis : Unspecified Negative Hysteresis : Unspecified Minimum sensor range : Unspecified Maximum sensor range : Unspecified Event Message Control : Per-threshold Readable Thresholds : lcr unc ucr Settable Thresholds : lcr unc ucr Threshold Read Mask : lcr unc ucr Assertion Events   : Event Enable       : Event Messages Disabled Assertions Enabled : lcr- unc+ ucr+ Deassertions Enabled : lcr+ unc- ucr-</pre>

## Discrete sensor monitoring procedure

This section describes the specific behaviors and monitoring methods for the platform's discrete sensors. The platform comes equipped with the following discrete sensors:

- Board Reset
- Heater CPU, Heater PCIe1, Heater PCIe2
- Intrusion
- IPMIWatchdog
- Jumpers Status
- TelcoAlarm1-7

### Board Reset

The Board Reset sensor will report the last reset cause in the system event log.

Relevant sections:

[Sensor list](#)

[System event log](#)

### Possible values (IPMI only)

The cause of the last board reset can only be found in the system event log entries.



Event offset	Description
0x01	Unexpected power loss
0x02	Power cycle or serial port reset
0x06	Cold reset
0x07	Power reset from IPMI command

## Monitoring Board Reset using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17`.

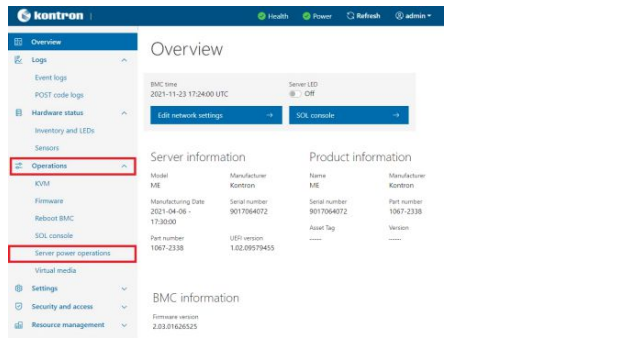
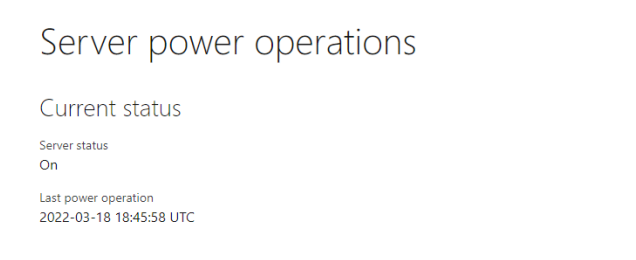
Step_1	Access the system event log and identify the ID of the desired event from the first column. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sel list	<pre>\$ ipmitool sel list 1   2022-04-29   13:12:54 EDT   Board Reset #0x01   Unknown   Asserted 2   2022-04-29   13:13:02 EDT   Board Reset #0x01   Cold Reset   Asserted 3   2022-04-29   13:14:22 EDT   Board Reset #0x01   Unknown   Asserted</pre>
Step_2	Display the details of the system event log entry. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool get [ID] The value is represented by the most significant byte of the <b>Event Data (RAW)</b> value. Note that bit 7 of the most significant byte is reserved and always equal to 1 (or 0x8 in hexadecimal). Refer to the list of possible values.	<pre>\$ ipmitool get 3 SEL Record ID       : 0003 Record Type         : 02 Timestamp           : 2022-04-29 2022-04-29 Generator ID        : 0020 EvM Revision        : 04 Sensor Type         : Board Reset Sensor Number       : 01 Event Type          : Sensor-specific Discrete Event Direction     : Assertion Event Event Data (RAW)    : 82ffff Event Interpretation : Missing Description         : Unknown  Sensor ID           : BoardReset (0x1) Entity ID           : 0.1 (Unspecified) Sensor Type         : Board Reset (0xc4)</pre>

## Monitoring last reset time

The last reset time can be found using the BMC Web UI and Redfish.

## Monitoring the last reset time using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, click on <b>Operations</b> and then <b>Server power operations</b> , or simply click on the <b>Power</b> button at the top of the page.	
Step_2	The last power operation time will be displayed.	

## Monitoring the last reset time using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .LastResetTime	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .LastResetTime "2022-03-18T18:45:58+00:00"</pre>
--------	---	---

## Heaters

The BMC will register events indicating a heater status change. There are three heater sensors present in the platform:

- Heater CPU

- Heater PCIe1 (optional)
- Heater PCIe2 (optional)

For information about the PCIe heaters, contact the Kontron support team. Refer to [Support information](#).

**Relevant sections:**

[Platform cooling and thermal management - Behavior upon startup at temperatures below 0 degrees Celsius](#)  
[Sensor list](#)

**Possible values**

Value	Description
0	Device disabled
1	Device enabled

**Monitoring heaters using Redfish**

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

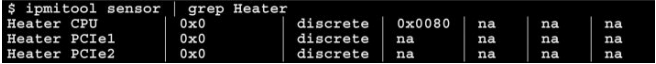
Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

**NOTE:** Redfish will not report the presence of heaters.

Step_1	<p>Display the heaters' statuses using the following command.  RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.Discrete</p>  <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.Discrete {   "Heater_CPU": "0",   "Heater_PCIe1": "0",   "Heater_PCIe2": "0",   "Jumpers_Status": {     "JMP1 (JPx p1-2)": "?",     "JMP2 (JPx p3-4)": "OUT",     "JMP3 (JPx p5-6)": "OUT",     "JMP4 (JPx p7-8)": "OUT",     "JMP5 (JPx p9-10)": "OUT",     "JMP6 (JPx p11-12)": "OUT",     "JMP7 (JPx p13-14)": "OUT"   },   "TelcoAlarm1": "1",   "TelcoAlarm2": "1",   "TelcoAlarm3": "1",   "TelcoAlarm4": "1" } </pre>
--------	---

**Monitoring heaters using IPMI**

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 .

Step_1	<p>Display the heaters' statuses using the following command.  LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sensor   grep Heater</p> <p>The value is represented by the second byte from the left in the fourth column. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x0080 if the heater is disabled</li> <li>• 0x0180 if the heater is enabled</li> <li>• na if the heater is not present</li> </ul>	 <pre> \$ ipmitool sensor   grep Heater Heater CPU          0x0      discrete  0x0080    na      na      na Heater PCIe1       0x0      discrete  na        na      na      na Heater PCIe2       0x0      discrete  na        na      na      na </pre>
--------	---	--

**Intrusion**

The chassis intrusion sensor will register an event if the chassis is opened. This sensor needs manual deassertion.

**Relevant sections:**

[Sensor list](#)  
[System event log](#)

**Event assertion**

The chassis intrusion sensor will register an event in the following circumstances:

- When the chassis is opened – the BMC will register a critical chassis intrusion event in the system event log.
- When the chassis intrusion sensor is manually deasserted – the BMC will register a chassis intrusion reset event in the system event log.

**Event deassertion**

This sensor needs manual deassertion. If a chassis intrusion occurs, the sensor's state needs to be manually reset. Redfish is the only supported way for event deassertion.

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Manually change the sensor's value using the following command:</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1310_Baseboard --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"PhysicalSecurity": {"IntrusionSensor": "Normal"}}'   jq</pre>
	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Chassis/ME1310_Baseboard --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"PhysicalSecurity": {"IntrusionSensor": "Normal"}}'   jq</pre>

**NOTE:** As of the current BMC firmware version, the BMC health status will be in a critical state as long as there are critical events in the system event log. Currently, the only supported way of restoring the BMC health status is by clearing the system event log. Refer to [System event log](#) for further instructions. It is recommended to export all system event log entries beforehand.

## IPMIWatchdog

The IPMIWatchdog sensor will report a critical event in the system event log when it expires because an error prevents the platform from booting correctly.

Relevant sections:

[Sensor list](#)

[System event log](#)

## Jumpers Status



Jumpers Status sensor values are reserved and should never differ from the default values shown below. Otherwise, it could render the platform inoperable.

Relevant section:

[Sensor list](#)

## Monitoring Jumpers Status sensor using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Display the Jumpers Status sensor values using the following command.</p> <pre>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.Discrete</pre>
	<pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.Discrete {   "Heater_CPU": "0",   "Heater_PCIE1": "0",   "Heater_PCIE2": "0",   "Jumpers Status": {     "JMP1 (JPx p1-2)": "?",     "JMP2 (JPx p3-4)": "OUT",     "JMP3 (JPx p5-6)": "OUT",     "JMP4 (JPx p7-8)": "OUT",     "JMP5 (JPx p9-10)": "OUT",     "JMP6 (JPx p11-12)": "OUT",     "JMP7 (JPx p13-14)": "OUT"   },   "TelcoAlarm1": "1",   "TelcoAlarm2": "1",   "TelcoAlarm3": "1",   "TelcoAlarm4": "1" }</pre>

## Monitoring Jumpers Status sensor using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17`.

Step_1	<p>Display the Jumpers Status sensor value using the following command.</p> <pre>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sensor   grep "Jumpers Status"</pre> <p>The value is represented by bytes in the fourth column. The value should always be 0x00fe .</p>	<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor   grep "Jumpers status" Jumpers Status   0x0   discrete   0x00fe   na   na   na</pre>
--------	---	---

## TelcoAlarms

TelcoAlarm sensors are normally-closed dry contacts between an **Alarm Input** signal and the **Alarm Common** signal. Those signals are located on the Alarm Port connector. The BMC will register an event indicating a status change. Refer to [Connector pinouts and electrical characteristics](#) for pinout.

**NOTE:** If no normally-closed contacts are connected to the front panel, the BMC will register a critical event in the system event log each time it reboots because it will assume it detects faulty hardware or a cut wire. Refer to [System event log](#) for a description of what happens in the SEL upon reboot with regards to TelcoAlarms.

There are seven TelcoAlarm sensors present in the platform:

- TelcoAlarm1
- TelcoAlarm2
- TelcoAlarm3
- TelcoAlarm4

- TelcoAlarm5
- TelcoAlarm6
- TelcoAlarm7

Relevant sections:

- [Sensor list](#)
- [System event log](#)

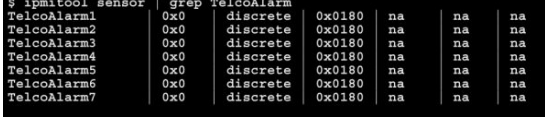
### Monitoring TelcoAlarms using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	<p>Display the TelcoAlarm statuses using the following command.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.Discrete</p> <p>Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 for a closed contact</li> <li>• 1 for an open contact</li> </ul>
 <pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .Oem.Kontron.Discrete {   "Heater_CPU": "0",   "Heater_PCIE1": "0",   "Heater_PCIE2": "0",   "Jumpers_Status": {     "JMP1 (JPx p1-2)": "?",     "JMP2 (JPx p3-4)": "OUT",     "JMP3 (JPx p5-6)": "OUT",     "JMP4 (JPx p7-8)": "OUT",     "JMP5 (JPx p9-10)": "OUT",     "JMP6 (JPx p11-12)": "OUT",     "JMP7 (JPx p13-14)": "OUT"   },   "TelcoAlarm1": "1",   "TelcoAlarm2": "1",   "TelcoAlarm3": "1",   "TelcoAlarm4": "1",   "TelcoAlarm5": "1",   "TelcoAlarm6": "1",   "TelcoAlarm7": "1" } </pre>	

### Monitoring TelcoAlarms using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: -I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT\_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17 .

Step_1	<p>Display the TelcoAlarm statuses using the following command.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sensor   grep TelcoAlarm</p> <p>The value is represented by the second byte from the left in the fourth column. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x0080 for a closed contact</li> <li>• 0x0180 for an open contact</li> </ul>	 <pre> \$ ipmitool sensor   grep TelcoAlarm TelcoAlarm1 0x0 discrete 0x0180 na na na TelcoAlarm2 0x0 discrete 0x0180 na na na TelcoAlarm3 0x0 discrete 0x0180 na na na TelcoAlarm4 0x0 discrete 0x0180 na na na TelcoAlarm5 0x0 discrete 0x0180 na na na TelcoAlarm6 0x0 discrete 0x0180 na na na TelcoAlarm7 0x0 discrete 0x0180 na na na </pre>
--------	--	---

### Event assertion

The TelcoAlarm sensors will register an event in the following circumstances:

- When a TelcoAlarm input changes from closed to open – the BMC will register a critical TelcoAlarm event in the system event log.
- When a TelcoAlarm input changes from open to closed – the BMC will register a TelcoAlarm restoration event in the system event log, but note that a restoration event does not deassert a critical TelcoAlarm event.

### Event deassertion

This event cannot be deasserted.

**NOTE:** As of the current BMC firmware version, the BMC health status will be in a critical state as long as there are critical events in the system event log. Currently, the only supported way of restoring the BMC health status is by clearing the system event log. Refer to [System event log](#) for further instructions. It is recommended to export all system event log entries beforehand.

# Sensor list

Table of contents

- [ME1310 sensors](#)
  - [Unit-based sensors](#)
    - [Fan sensors](#)
    - [Temperature sensors](#)
    - [Voltage sensors](#)
    - [Power sensors](#)
    - [Other unit-based sensors](#)
  - [Discrete sensors](#)
- [Power supply sensors](#)
  - [DC PSU sensors](#)
  - [AC PSU sensors](#)
- [IO module sensors](#)
  - [Ethernet switch IO module sensors](#)
  - [Pass-through IO module sensors](#)
- [Application-specific sensors](#)
  - [Silicom P3iMB sensors](#)

Refer to [Monitoring sensors](#) for monitoring instructions.

For Redfish URL extensions, refer to [Monitoring sensors using Redfish - Creating URL extensions](#).

For information about **Sensor type code** and **Event/Reading type code**, refer to [Interpreting sensor data](#).

## ME1310 sensors

ME1310 sensors are always present regardless of the platform hardware configuration.

### Unit-based sensors

#### Fan sensors

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
Fan 1	FAN 1 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Fan 2	FAN 2 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Fan 3	FAN 3 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Fan 4	FAN 4 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Fan 5	FAN 5 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Fan 6	FAN 6 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Fan 7	FAN 7 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Fan 8	FAN 8 Speed (RPM)	Fan (0x04)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

#### Temperature sensors

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
Temp CPU	Internal CPU temperature	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp BMC	Temperature under BMC	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp CPU Area	Temperature under CPU	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp Chassis	Temperature from chassis thermistor Refer to <a href="#">Installing a thermal probe for the PCIe add-in card</a> for thermal probe location.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp DIMMA1	Temperature of DIMM 1 on channel A	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp DIMMA2	Temperature of DIMM 2 on channel A	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp DIMMB1	Temperature of DIMM 1 on channel B	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp	Temperature of DIMM 2 on channel B	Temperature	0x01 (Threshold

DIMMB2		(0x01)	Based)
Temp DIMMC1	Temperature of DIMM 1 on channel C	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp DIMMC2	Temperature of DIMM 2 on channel C	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp DIMMD1	Temperature of DIMM 1 on channel D	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp DIMMD2	Temperature of DIMM 2 on channel D	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp FPGA	Temperature under FPGA	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp Inlet	Temperature of fresh air inlet	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp M2 Area	Temperature near M.2 J8 and J9	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp PCIe 1	Temperature from PCIe slot 1 thermistor Refer to <a href="#">Installing a thermal probe for the PCIe add-in card</a> for thermal probe location.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp PCIe 1 mbox	Temperature from PCIe slot 1 reported via mailbox Refer to <a href="#">Platform resources for customer application - Customer-specific temperature sensors</a> for reporting instructions.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp PCIe 2	Temperature from PCIe slot 2 thermistor Refer to <a href="#">Installing a thermal probe for the PCIe add-in card</a> for thermal probe location.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp PCIe 2 mbox	Temperature from PCIe slot 2 reported via mailbox Refer to <a href="#">Platform resources for customer application - Customer-specific temperature sensors</a> for reporting instructions.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp PSU Outlet	Temperature of system PSU outlet	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp VCCIN	Temperature near VCCIN switcher	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp VDDQ_AB	Temperature near VDDQ_AB switcher	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp VDDQ_CD	Temperature near VDDQ_CD switcher	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp V_3V3_SUS	Temperature near V_3V3_SUS switcher	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

## Voltage sensors

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
VBAT	RTC battery voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_3V3_M2	V_3V3_M2 voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_3V3_PCH_AUX	V_3V3_PCH_AUX voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_3V3_RGM_BMC	V_3V3_RGM_BMC voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_3V3_SLOT	V_3V3_SLOT voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_12V_SLOT1	V_12V_SLOT1 voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_12V_SLOT2	V_12V_SLOT2 voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_12V_SUS	V_12V_SUS voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_VTT_AB	V_VTT_AB voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
V_VTT_CD	V_VTT_CD voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

## Power sensors

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
P_12V_SLOT1	V_12V_SLOT1 power consumption	Power Supply (0x08)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
P_12V_SLOT2	V_12V_SLOT2 power consumption	Power Supply (0x08)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
Humidity	Relative humidity at air inlet	Other Units-based sensor (0x0B)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

## Discrete sensors

For information about discrete sensors, refer to [Discrete sensor monitoring procedure](#).

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
Heater CPU	Heater status indicator for CPU	Chassis (0x18)	0x9 ('digital' Discrete - Device Disabled/Device Enabled)
Heater PCIe1	Heater status indicator for PCIe1	Chassis (0x18)	0x9 ('digital' Discrete - Device Disabled/Device Enabled)
Heater PCIe2	Heater status indicator for PCIe2	Chassis (0x18)	0x9 ('digital' Discrete - Device Disabled/Device Enabled)
Intrusion	Alarm status from front panel connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
TelcoAlarm1	Status from front panel alarm connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
TelcoAlarm2	Status from front panel alarm connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
TelcoAlarm3	Status from front panel alarm connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
TelcoAlarm4	Status from front panel alarm connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
TelcoAlarm5	Status from front panel alarm connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
TelcoAlarm6	Status from front panel alarm connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
TelcoAlarm7	Status from front panel alarm connector	Platform Alert (0x24)	0x3 ('digital' Discrete - Assert/Deassert)
IPMIWatchdog	IPMI Watchdog action reporting	Watchdog 2 (0x23)	0x6f (Sensor Specific)
Board Reset	Reports the last reset source	Board Reset (Kontron OEM) (0xC4)	0x6f (Sensor Specific)
Jumpers Status	Reserved – event-based sensor	Jumpers Status - Kontron OEM (0xD3)	0x6f (Sensor Specific)

## Power supply sensors

The power supply sensors will differ according to the power supply unit configuration of the platform. The ME1310 comes equipped with either a DC or an AC power supply unit.

### DC PSU sensors

**NOTE:** The DC PSU sensors are only present when a DC PSU is connected.

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
DC PSU Pout	Output power from PSU	Power Supply (0x08)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU Vout	DC PSU 48V to 12V regulator output voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU Iout	DC PSU 48V to 12V regulator output current	Current (0x03)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU Regulator	Temperature in the DC PSU 48V to 12V regulator	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU HoldUp	Temperature in the DC PSU HoldUp generation regulator	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU Inlet	Temperature in the DC PSU feed ORing circuit	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU HUVout	DC PSU hold up voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU Vin	DC PSU QBrick input voltage	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU Feed A	DC PSU FPGA Feed A reading	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
DC PSU Feed B	DC PSU FPGA Feed A reading	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

## AC PSU sensors

NOTE: The AC PSU sensors are only present when an AC PSU is connected.

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
AC PSU Vout	Output voltage from PSU	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
AC PSU Pout	Output power from PSU	Power Supply (0x08)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
AC PSU Vin	Input voltage from PSU	Voltage (0x02)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
AC PSU Pin	Input power from PSU	Power Supply (0x08)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
AC PSU Temp1	Temperature from PSU	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

## IO module sensors

The IO module sensors will differ according to the IO module configuration of the platform.

### Ethernet switch IO module sensors

NOTE: The Ethernet switch IO module sensors are only present if the platform is equipped with an Ethernet switch IO module.

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
Temp SWB Clk	Temperature under ZL30772 DPLL on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB Inlet	Temperature at air inlet on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB OCXO	Temperature under OCXO on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP1	Temperature from SFP1 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP2	Temperature from SFP2 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP3	Temperature from SFP3 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP4	Temperature from SFP4 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP5	Temperature from SFP5 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP6	Temperature from SFP6 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP7	Temperature from SFP7 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP8	Temperature from SFP8 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP9	Temperature from SFP9 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP10	Temperature from SFP10 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP11	Temperature from SFP11 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB SFP12	Temperature from SFP12 module on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
Temp SWB Switch	Temperature from switch die on Ethernet switch IO module	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)

### Pass-through IO module sensors

NOTE: The pass-through IO module sensors are only present if the platform is equipped with a pass-through IO module. This option is planned for development. Please contact [Kontron sales](#).

## Application-specific sensors

### Silicom P3iMB sensors

Silicom P3iMB sensors are only present when Virtual PCIe FRU is configured for a P3iMB PCIe add-in card.

Sensor name [SENSOR_ID]	Description	Sensor type code	Event/Reading type code
T P3iMB Local S<X>	Local temperature for Silicom P3iMB PCIe add-in card Where <X> is the PCIe slot ID.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
T ACC100 TSDE S<X>	Intel ACC100 FEC accelerator TSDE East temperature for Silicom P3iMB PCIe add-in card Where <X> is the PCIe slot ID.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)
T ACC100 TSDW S<X>	Intel ACC100 FEC accelerator TSDW West temperature for Silicom P3iMB PCIe add-in card Where <X> is the PCIe slot ID.	Temperature (0x01)	0x01 (Threshold Based)



# Maintenance

# System event log

Table of contents

- [BMC system event logs](#)
  - [Relationship between BMC system event logs](#)
  - [TelcoAlarms registered in the SEL upon BMC reboot](#)
  - [Accessing the BMC SEL using the BMC Web UI](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC system event log](#)
    - [Clearing the BMC system event log](#)
    - [Exporting the BMC system event log](#)
  - [Accessing the BMC SEL using Redfish](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC system event log](#)
    - [Clearing the BMC system event log](#)
    - [Redfish supported event types](#)
  - [Accessing the BMC SEL using IPMI](#)
    - [Accessing the BMC system event log](#)
    - [Clearing the BMC system event log](#)
    - [Exporting the BMC system event log](#)
- [NOS system event log](#)
  - [Accessing the NOS SEL using the NOS Web UI](#)
    - [Accessing the NOS system event log](#)
    - [Clearing the NOS system event log](#)
  - [Accessing the NOS SEL using the NOS CLI](#)
    - [Accessing the NOS system event log](#)
    - [Clearing the NOS system event log](#)

## BMC system event logs

The BMC system event log can be accessed:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using [IPMI](#)

### Relationship between BMC system event logs

System event logs accessed via the BMC Web UI and Redfish are managed independently. This has two implications:

- The Web UI and Redfish logs may display events that are not supported by the IPMI event log.
- Using either the Web UI or Redfish methods described below to clear the logs will yield an empty log for both these interfaces. But the IPMI event log clear command must be used to clear the IPMI event log.

### TelcoAlarms registered in the SEL upon BMC reboot

TelcoAlarms are used to detect statuses of the inputs of the front panel alarm connector. If nothing is connected to the Alarm Port, TelcoAlarm events will be registered in the SEL if a BMC reboot occurs. This happens because in order to detect faulty wiring (a cut cable, etc.) the system considers an open loop as an event—and an empty Alarm Port creates an open loop.

If the Alarm Port is not used, a solution would be to install a loop back RJ45 connector assembly into the Alarm Port.

The TelcoAlarms generated will set the BMC health status in a critical state. Currently, the only supported way of restoring the BMC health status is by clearing the system event log. Kontron recommends exporting the SEL before clearing it.

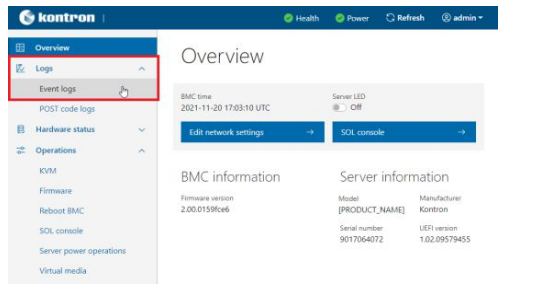
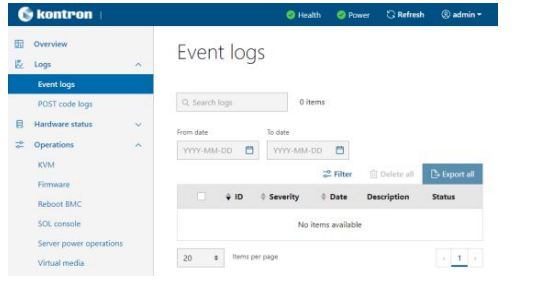
Relevant section:

[Platform components](#)

### Accessing the BMC SEL using the BMC Web UI

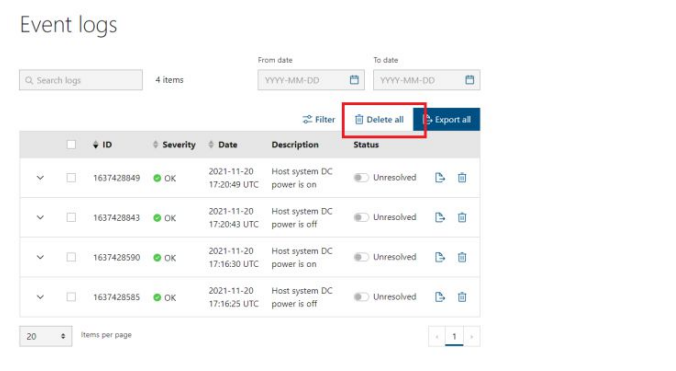
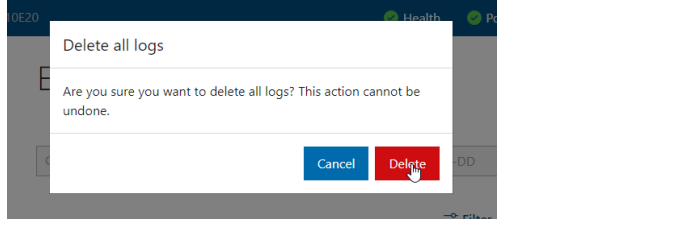
Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

### Accessing the BMC system event log

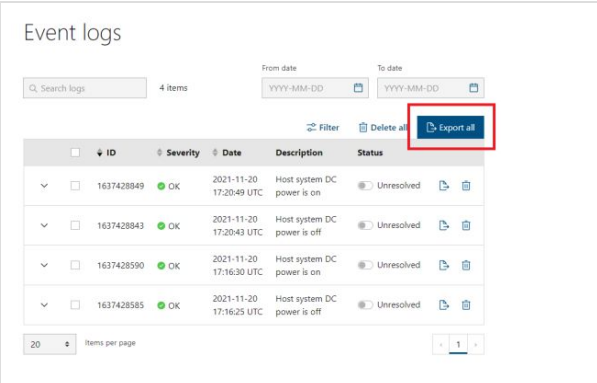
Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Logs</b> and then <b>Event Logs</b> .	
Step_2	The system event log is displayed. The following information can be collected: 1. Event ID 2. Severity 3. Date 4. Description 5. Status	

### Clearing the BMC system event log

**NOTE:** This method will clear the events visible via the Web UI and the Redfish interfaces. The IPMI event log must be cleared separately.

Step_1	Click on the <b>Delete all</b> button.	
Step_2	Confirm choice by clicking on the <b>Delete</b> button.	

### Exporting the BMC system event log

Step_1	Click on the <b>Export all</b> button to download the system event log.	
--------	---	--

### Accessing the BMC SEL using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system. Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.

### Accessing the BMC system event log

**NOTE:** Depending on the event, there may not be an associated sensor attribute. However, if this attribute is present, refer to [Interpreting sensor data](#) for Version 1.0 (March 2023)

further interpretation instructions.

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network subnet, open a command prompt and access the system event log. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries",   "@odata.type": "#LogEntryCollection.LogEntryCollection",   "Description": "Collection of System Event Log Entries",   "Members": [     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries/1647629153",       "@odata.type": "#LogEntry.v1_4_0.LogEntry",       "Created": "2022-03-18T18:45:53+00:00",       "EntryType": "Event",       "Id": "1647629153",       "Message": "Host system DC power is off",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "OpenBMC.0.1.DCPowerOff",       "Name": "System Event Log Entry",       "Severity": "OK"     },     {       "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries/1647629154",       "@odata.type": "#LogEntry.v1_4_0.LogEntry",       "Created": "2022-03-18T18:45:54+00:00",       "EntryType": "Event",       "Id": "1647629154",       "Message": "System Restart : Normal power down",       "MessageArgs": [         "Normal power down"       ],       "MessageId": "OpenBMC.0.1.BoardReset",       "Name": "System Event Log Entry",       "Severity": "OK"     },     [...]   ] }</pre>
--------	--

### Clearing the BMC system event log

NOTE: This method will clear the events visible via the Web UI and the Redfish interfaces. The IPMI event log must be cleared separately.

Step_1	<p>From a remote computer that has access to the management network subnet, open a command prompt and clear the system event log. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Actions/LogService.ClearLog   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Actions/LogService.ClearLog   jq {   "@Message.ExtendedInfo": [     {       "@odata.type": "#Message.v1_1_1.Message",       "Message": "Successfully Completed Request",       "MessageArgs": [],       "MessageId": "Base.1.8.1.Success",       "MessageSeverity": "OK",       "Resolution": "None"     }   ] }</pre>
Step_2	<p>Verify that the system event log was properly cleared. RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~# curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries",   "@odata.type": "#LogEntryCollection.LogEntryCollection",   "Description": "Collection of System Event Log Entries",   "Members": [],   "Members@odata.count": 0,   "Name": "System Event Log Entries" }</pre>

### Redfish supported event types

The event format is composed of the OpenBMC event schema version followed by the event type [SCHEMA VERSION].[EVENT TYPE].

The current schema version is OpenBMC.0.1 .

Event type	Description
InventoryAdded	Indicates that an inventory item with the specified model, type, and serial number was installed
InventoryRemoved	Indicates that an inventory item with the specified model, type, and serial number was removed
BoardReset	Indicates that the payload was reset
DCPowerOn	Indicates that the system DC power is on
DCPowerOff	Indicates that the system DC power is off
SensorThresholdCriticalLowGoingLow	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a critical low threshold going low
SensorThresholdCriticalLowGoingHigh	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a critical low threshold going high
SensorThresholdCriticalHighGoingLow	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a critical high threshold going low
SensorThresholdCriticalHighGoingHigh	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a critical high threshold going high
SensorThresholdWarningLowGoingLow	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a warning low threshold going low
SensorThresholdWarningLowGoingHigh	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a warning low threshold going high
SensorThresholdWarningHighGoingLow	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a warning high threshold going low
SensorThresholdWarningHighGoingHigh	Indicates that a threshold sensor has crossed a warning high threshold going high
FanRedundancyLost	Indicates that system fan redundancy has been lost
FanRedundancyRegained	Indicates that system fan redundancy has been regained
FanSpeedDeviated	Indicates that fan speed has deviated from target, could indicate a faulty fan
FanSpeedRestored	Indicates that fan speed is now back to normal
IPMIWatchdog	Indicates that IPMI watchdog timed out

## Accessing the BMC SEL using IPMI

The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17`.

## Accessing the BMC system event log

Step_1	List all the events. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sel list	<pre>\$ ipmitool sel list 1   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x04   Lower Critical going low   Asserted 2   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x04   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 3   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x07   Lower Critical going low   Asserted 4   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x07   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 5   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x0a   Lower Critical going low   Asserted 6   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x0a   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 7   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x05   Lower Critical going low   Asserted 8   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x05   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 9   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x08   Lower Critical going low   Asserted a   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x08   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted b   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x0b   Lower Critical going low   Asserted c   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x0b   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted d   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x06   Lower Critical going low   Asserted e   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x06   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted f   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x09   Lower Critical going low   Asserted 10   2020-08-05   01:04:10 EDT   Fan #0x09   Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted</pre>
Step_2	To obtain more details about a specific event, use the following command. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sel get [EVENT_ID]	<pre>\$ ipmitool sel get 1 SEL Record ID      : 0001 Record Type        : 02 Timestamp          : 2020-08-05 2020-08-05 Generator ID       : 0020 EVM Revision       : 04 Sensor Type        : Fan Sensor Number      : 04 Event Type         : Threshold Event Direction    : Assertion Event Event Data (RAW)   : 520011 Trigger Reading    : 0,000RPM Trigger Threshold  : 1666,000RPM Description        : Lower critical going low  Sensor ID          : Fan 1 (0x4) Entity ID          : 0,1 Sensor Type (Threshold) : Fan Sensor Reading     : 7252 (+/- 0) RPM Status            : ok Lower Non-Recoverable : na Lower Critical     : 1666,000 Lower Non-Critical  : 1960,000 Upper Non-Critical  : na Upper Critical     : na Upper Non-Recoverable : na Positive Hysteresis : Unspecified Negative Hysteresis : Unspecified Assertion Events   : Event Enable       : Event Messages Disabled Assertions Enabled : lnc- lcr- Deassertions Enabled : lnc+ lcr+</pre>

## Clearing the BMC system event log

NOTE: This method will only clear the IPMI event log. The Web UI and Redfish event logs must be cleared separately.

Step_1	Use the following command to clear the system event log. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sel clear	<pre>\$ ipmitool sel clear Clearing SEL. Please allow a few seconds to erase.</pre>
--------	--	---

## Exporting the BMC system event log

Step_1	Use the following command to save the system event log into a file. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool sel save [FILE_NAME]	<pre> \$ ipmitool sel save file 1 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x04 Lower Critical going low   Asserted 2 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x04 Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 3 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x07 Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 4 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x07 Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 5 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x0a Lower critical going low   Asserted 6 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x0a Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 7 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x05 Lower Critical going low   Asserted 8 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x05 Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted 9 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x08 Lower Critical going low   Asserted a 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x08 Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted b 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x06 Lower critical going low   Asserted c 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x06 Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted d 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x06 Lower Critical going low   Asserted e 2020-08-05 01:04:10 EDT Fan #0x06 Lower Non-critical going low   Asserted </pre>
--------	--	--

## NOS system event log

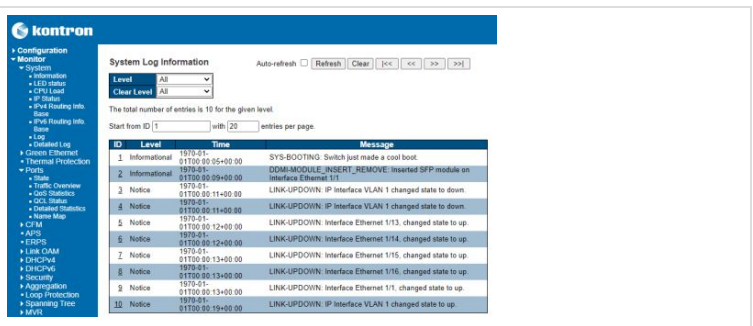
The NOS system event log can be accessed:

- Using the [NOS Web UI](#)
- Using the [NOS CLI](#)


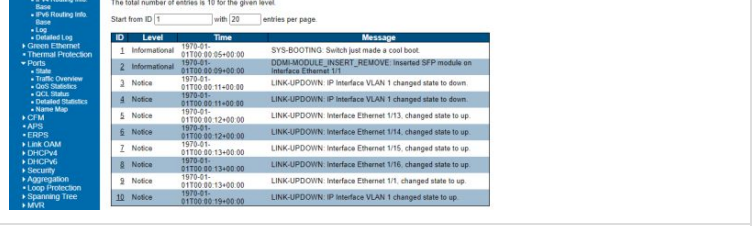

### Accessing the NOS SEL using the NOS Web UI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#) for access instructions.

### Accessing the NOS system event log

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Monitoring</b> , <b>System</b> , and then <b>Log</b> . The NOS system event log should be displayed.	
--------	---	---

### Clearing the NOS system event log

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Monitoring</b> , <b>System</b> , and then <b>Log</b> . The NOS system event log should be displayed.	
Step_2	Click on the <b>Clear</b> button.	
Step_3	The NOS system event log should be empty.	

### Accessing the NOS SEL using the NOS CLI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

### Accessing the NOS system event log

Step_1	Display the switch NOS event log. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>show logging</b>	<pre> Switch logging host mode is enabled Switch logging host address is null Switch logging level is notice  Number of entries on switch 1: Error       : 0 Warning    : 0 Notice     : 9 Informational: 1 All        : 10  ID          Level          Time &amp; Message ----- 1 Informational 1969-12-31T19:00:23-05:00 SVS-BOOTING: Switch just made a cool boot.  2 Notice       1969-12-31T19:00:32-05:00 LNK-UPDOWN: IP Interface VLAN 1 changed state to up.  3 Notice       1969-12-31T19:00:32-05:00 LNK-UPDOWN: IP Interface VLAN 1 changed state to up.  4 Notice       1969-12-31T19:00:32-05:00 LNK-UPDOWN: IP Interface VLAN 2 changed state to do  5 Notice       1969-12-31T19:00:32-05:00 LNK-UPDOWN: IP Interface VLAN 2 changed state to do </pre>
--------	---	--

### Clearing the NOS system event log

Step_1	Display the switch NOS event log. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>clear logging</b>	<pre> NOS00A0A5E10EF6# clear logging NOS00A0A5E10EF6# show logging Switch logging host mode is disabled Switch logging host address is null Switch logging level is informational  Number of entries on Switch 1: Error       : 0 Warning    : 0 Notice     : 0 Informational: 0 All        : 0  NOS00A0A5E10EF6# </pre>
Step_2	The NOS system event log should be empty. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>show logging</b>	

# POST code logs

Table of contents

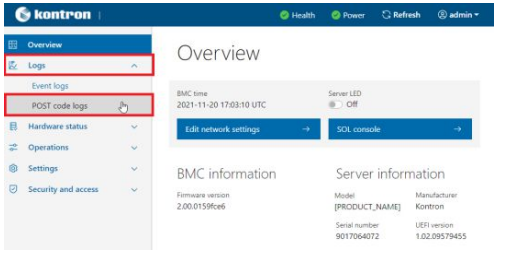
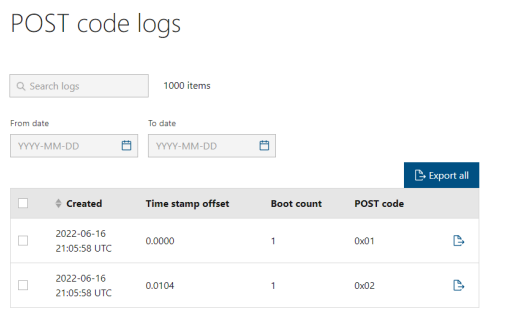
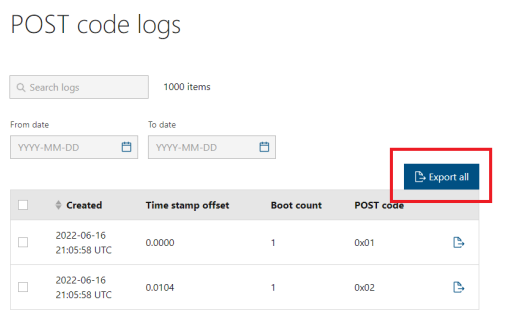
- [Accessing the POST code logs using the BMC Web UI](#)
- [Accessing the POST code logs using Redfish](#)

The POST codes can be accessed:

- Using the [BMC Web UI](#)
- Using [Redfish](#)

## Accessing the POST code logs using the BMC Web UI

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select Logs and then POST code logs .	
Step_2	The system event log is displayed. The following information can be collected: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Event ID</li> <li>2. Time stamp offset</li> <li>3. Boot count</li> <li>4. POST code</li> <li>5. Status</li> </ol>	
Step_3	Click on <b>Export all</b> to download the POST code logs.	

## Accessing the POST code logs using Redfish

The following procedures will be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for an external network connection. They can also be executed using the Redfish ROOT URL required for the internal Redfish host interface if the commands are initiated locally from the server operating system.

Refer to [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#) for access instructions.



Step\_1

Access the POST code logs using the following command.

RemoteComputer\_OS Prompt: -# curl -k -s --request GET --url

[ROOT\_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/PostCodes/Entries | jq

```
$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/PostCodes/Entries | jq
{
  "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/PostCodes/Entries",
  "@odata.type": "#LogEntryCollection.LogEntryCollection",
  "Description": "Collection of POST Code Log Entries",
  "Members": [
    {
      "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/PostCodes/Entries/B1-1",
      "@odata.type": "#LogEntry.v1_4_0.LogEntry",
      "Created": "2022-06-16T21:05:58+00:00",
      "EntryType": "Event",
      "Id": "B1-1",
      "Message": "Boot Count: 1; Time Stamp Offset: 0.0000 seconds; POST Code: 0x01",
      "MessageArgs": [
        "",
        "0.0000",
        "0x01"
      ],
      "MessageId": "OpenBMC.0.2.BIOSPOSTCode",
      "Name": "POST Code Log Entry",
      "Severity": "OK"
    },
    {
      "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/PostCodes/Entries/B1-2",
      "@odata.type": "#LogEntry.v1_4_0.LogEntry",
      "Created": "2022-06-16T21:05:58+00:00",
      "EntryType": "Event",
      "Id": "B1-2",
      "Message": "Boot Count: 1; Time Stamp Offset: 0.0104 seconds; POST Code: 0x02",
      "MessageArgs": [
        "",
        "0.0104",
        "0x02"
      ],
      "MessageId": "OpenBMC.0.2.BIOSPOSTCode",
      "Name": "POST Code Log Entry",
      "Severity": "OK"
    }
  ],
  [...]
}
```

# Interpreting sensor data

Table of contents

- [Interpretation procedure](#)
- [Interpretation information](#)
  - [Sensor type](#)
  - [Sensor event and reading type](#)
    - [Threshold-based event and reading type](#)

## Interpretation procedure

Before beginning the interpretation procedure, make sure to collect the following event information:

- Event ID
- Associated sensor
- Description

Refer to [System event log](#) for instructions.

NOTE: IOL and IPMI/KCS are the preferred methods for interpretation.

<p>Step_1</p> <p>In <code>ipmitool</code>, the <code>sensor</code> command returns a table. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool sensor</p> <p>The columns are defined as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Name</li> <li>• Numerical reading</li> <li>• Event/reading type/unit</li> <li>• Unit-based sensors status/discrete sensors reading</li> <li>• Lower non-recoverable threshold value</li> <li>• Lower critical threshold value</li> <li>• Lower noncritical threshold value</li> <li>• Upper noncritical threshold value</li> <li>• Upper critical threshold value</li> <li>• Upper non-recoverable threshold value</li> </ul>		<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor DC PSU Iout      5,000    Amps      discrete 0x0080  na  na  na  na  na  na Heater CPU      0x0      discrete 0x0080  na  na  na  na  na  na Heater PCIe1    na        discrete  na      na  na  na  na  na  na Heater PCIe2    na        discrete  na      na  na  na  na  na  na Intrusion       0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na Jumpers Status  0x0      discrete 0x00fe  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm1     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm2     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm3     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm4     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 1           10388,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 2           10388,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 3           10706,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 4           10600,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 5           10388,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 6           10600,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 7           10282,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 8           10282,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Temp BMC        26,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp CPU        28,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp CPU Area   28,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp Chassis    na        degrees C na       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp DIMM1      23,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp DIMM2      23,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na</pre>
<p>Step_2</p> <p>The numerical reading value is shown in the second column. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool sensor</p>		<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor DC PSU Iout      5,000    Amps      discrete 0x0080  na  na  na  na  na  na Heater CPU      0x0      discrete 0x0080  na  na  na  na  na  na Heater PCIe1    na        discrete  na      na  na  na  na  na  na Heater PCIe2    na        discrete  na      na  na  na  na  na  na Intrusion       0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na Jumpers Status  0x0      discrete 0x00fe  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm1     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm2     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm3     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm4     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 1           10388,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 2           10388,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Temp BMC        26,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp CPU        28,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp CPU Area   28,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp Chassis    na        degrees C na       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na</pre>
<p>Step_3</p> <p>The fourth column indicates whether a threshold value has been surpassed by the numerical reading value or not. If the numerical reading value is within the expected range, the fourth column displays OK. Otherwise, the last threshold reached is displayed.</p> <p>Refer to <a href="#">Threshold-based event and reading type</a> for the definitions of threshold states.</p>		<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor DC PSU Iout      5,000    Amps      discrete 0x0080  na  na  na  na  na  na Heater CPU      0x0      discrete 0x0080  na  na  na  na  na  na Heater PCIe1    na        discrete  na      na  na  na  na  na  na Heater PCIe2    na        discrete  na      na  na  na  na  na  na Intrusion       0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na Jumpers Status  0x0      discrete 0x00fe  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm1     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm2     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm3     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na TelcoAlarm4     0x0      discrete 0x0180  na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 1           10388,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Fan 2           10388,000 RPM      ok       na  na  na  na  na  na Temp BMC        26,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp CPU        28,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp CPU Area   28,000    degrees C ok       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na Temp Chassis    na        degrees C na       na  -41,000 76,000 86,000 na</pre>
<p>Step_4</p> <p>An event will be created according to the assertion enabled for the specified sensor. LocalServer_OS Prompt:~# ipmitool sensor get "[SENSOR_ID]"</p>		<pre>\$ ipmitool sensor get "Temp BMC" Locating sensor record... Sensor ID       : Temp BMC (0x1b) Entity ID      : 0.1 Sensor Type (Threshold) : Temperature Sensor Reading  : 26 (+/- 0) degrees C Status         : ok Lower Non-Recoverable : na Lower Critical   : -41,000 Lower Non-Critical : na Upper Non-Critical : 76,000 Upper Critical   : 86,000 Upper Non-Recoverable : na Positive Hysteresis : Unspecified Negative Hysteresis : Unspecified Assertion Events : Event Enable    : Event Messages Disabled Assertions Enabled : lcr- unc+ ucr+ Deassertions Enabled : lcr+ unc- ucr-</pre>

## Interpretation information

Each sensor has a [Sensor type](#) attribute and a [Sensor event and reading type](#) attribute. For more information about IPMI sensors refer to the IPMI documentation.

### Sensor type

The sensor type attribute defines what the sensor is monitoring. The following table lists all the IPMI sensor types present on the platform.

Sensor type	Description
01h (Temperature)	Report the temperature of a platform component.
02h (Voltage)	Report a voltage present either on the power supply or the platform.
03h (Current)	Report a current output of a platform component.
04h (Fan)	General information about the fan(s) of the platform (e.g. speed, presence, failure).
08h (Power supply)	General information about the power supply (e.g. presence, failure, health status).
0Bh (Other Unit-based sensor)	Report a sensor-specific unit.
18h (Chassis)	Report the presence of an item in the chassis.
C4h (Board Reset - Kontron OEM)	Report the last restart/reboot source.
D3h (Jumpers status - Kontron OEM)	Reserved.
23h (Watchdog 2)	General information about the IPMI watchdog.
24h (Platform alert)	Report information about alerts generated by the BMC.

## Sensor event and reading type

The sensor event/reading type attribute defines how the reading of the value should be interpreted and how the sensor-related events are triggered. The following table describes the different event/reading types present on the platform.

Event/reading type	7-bit event type code	Description	Offset
Threshold based	01h	Unit-based sensors, meaning it has a numerical reading and event triggers	Offsets are standard and defined in the <a href="#">Threshold-based event and reading type table</a>

## Threshold-based event and reading type

This type of sensor creates events as the numerical reading of a sensor reaches a pre-established threshold value. Threshold-based sensors on this platform can either report a voltage, a temperature, a fan speed or a discrete state.

Event offset	Event trigger	State
00h	Lower noncritical - going low	nc
01h	Lower noncritical - going high	
02h	Lower critical - going low	cr
03h	Lower critical - going high	
04h	Lower non-recoverable - going low	nr
05h	Lower non-recoverable - going high	
06h	Upper noncritical - going low	nc
07h	Upper noncritical - going high	
08h	Upper critical - going low	cr
09h	Upper critical - going high	
0Ah	Upper non-recoverable - going low	nr
0Bh	Upper non-recoverable - going high	

## Component replacement

Refer to [Components installation and assembly](#) for component replacement procedures.

# Backup and restore

Table of contents

- [UEFI/BIOS](#)
  - [Backing up the UEFI/BIOS](#)
  - [Restoring the UEFI/BIOS](#)
  - [Getting information on the latest UEFI/BIOS backup](#)
  - [Description of creation and restoration steps](#)
- [Switch NOS configuration](#)
  - [Backing up and restoring the switch NOS configuration using SCP](#)
  - [Backing up and restoring the switch NOS configuration using the switch NOS Web UI](#)

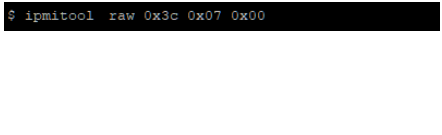
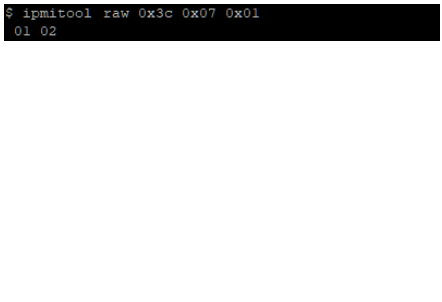
On an ME1310 platform, UEFI/BIOS and switch NOS configurations can be backed up and restored.

## UEFI/BIOS

This section describes how to create a UEFI/BIOS backup that includes the current UEFI/BIOS user settings and perform a restore from the backup created. The following procedures will be executed using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI via KCS](#) method, but some configurations can also be performed using IOL. To use IOL, add the IOL parameters to the command: `-I lanplus -H [BMC MNGMT_IP] -U [IPMI user name] -P [IPMI password] -C 17`.

### Backing up the UEFI/BIOS

For information on [BYTE1], refer to [Description of creation and restoration steps](#).

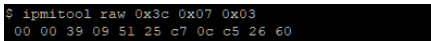
Step_1	<p>Back up the UEFI/BIOS. This action saves the UEFI/BIOS and the configuration.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt: <code>~# ipmitool raw 0x3c 0x07 0x00</code></p> <p>Completion code:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x00: Recovery process started successfully</li> <li>• 0xd5: Recovery process cannot be started</li> </ul>	
Step_2	<p>Verify the UEFI/BIOS backup status.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt: <code>~# ipmitool raw 0x3c 0x07 0x01</code></p> <p>The completion code is always 0x00.</p> <p>[BYTE0] Status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x00: Success/Idle</li> <li>• 0x01: In-progress</li> <li>• 0x02: Failure</li> </ul> <p>[BYTE1] Current step:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refer to the table in section Description of creation and restoration steps.</li> </ul> <p>In the image to the right, the status of the backup creation is <b>In-progress</b> and the current step is <b>Set Server to Power Off state</b>.</p>	

### Restoring the UEFI/BIOS

For information on [BYTE1], refer to [Description of creation and restoration steps](#).

Step_1	<p>Restore the UEFI/BIOS. This action restores the UEFI/BIOS and the configuration.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt: <code>~# ipmitool raw 0x3c 0x07 0x02</code></p> <p>Completion code:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x00: Recovery process started successfully</li> <li>• 0xd5: Recovery process cannot be started</li> </ul>	
Step_2	<p>Verify the status of the restoration.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt: <code>~# ipmitool raw 0x3c 0x07 0x01</code></p> <p>The completion code is always 0x00.</p> <p>[BYTE0] Status:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x00: Success/Idle</li> <li>• 0x01: In-progress</li> <li>• 0x02: Failure</li> </ul> <p>[BYTE1] Current step:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refer to the table in section Description of creation and restoration steps.</li> </ul> <p>In the image to the right, the status of the restoration is <b>In-progress</b> and the current step is <b>Set Server to Power Off state</b>.</p>	

### Getting information on the latest UEFI/BIOS backup

Step_1	<p>Get information on the backed up UEFI/BIOS.</p> <p>LocalServer_OSPrompt: ~# <code>ipmitool raw 0x3c 0x07 0x03</code></p> <p>Completion code:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x00: Backup is valid</li> <li>• 0xff: Backup is invalid</li> </ul> <p>[BYTE0-BYTE5] Version:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• [1B] Major</li> <li>• [1B] Minor</li> <li>• [4B] Aux</li> </ul> <p>[BYTE6] Status</p> <p>[BYTE7-BYTE10] Unix timestamp</p> <p>In the image to the right, the version is 0.57.095125C7 , the status is 0x00 and the timestamp is 1613153548 .</p>	
--------	--	--

## Description of creation and restoration steps

Step description	Step value (BYTE1)	Details
No step	0x00	Nothing is currently going on, no failure to report.
Get UEFI/BIOS version	0x01	Retrieve UEFI/BIOS version over DBUS.
Server Power Off	0x02	Set server to Power Off state.
Force Intel ME Recovery mode	0x03	Force Intel ME to recovery mode.
MTD partition detect	0x04	Check flash device and partition are detected.
MTD Flash erase	0x05	Target flash being erased. Target depends on whether action is CREATE or RESTORE.
MTD Flash write	0x06	Target flash being written. Target depends on whether action is CREATE or RESTORE.
MTD Flash verify	0x07	Target flash being verified. Target depends on whether action is CREATE or RESTORE.
Reset Intel ME to Normal mode	0x08	Reset Intel ME to return to normal mode.
Server Power On	0x09	Set server to Power On state.

## Switch NOS configuration


This section describes how to backup and restore the switch NOS configuration. These operations can be achieved:

- Using [SCP](#)
- Using the [switch NOS Web UI](#)

### Backing up and restoring the switch NOS configuration using SCP

#### Prerequisites

1	A server configured for the desired protocol is available and accessible from the switch NOS.
2	If restoring a configuration, the corresponding configuration file is present on the server.

	<p>The URL following the server IP address is a path relative to the user home folder provided ("~/"). To specify an absolute path, use a double slash after the IP address (e.g. <code>scp://&lt;SERVER_USERNAME&gt;:&lt;SERVER_PASSWORD&gt;@&lt;SERVER_IP&gt;//&lt;path/to/configfile&gt;</code>).</p>
---	--

Refer to [Accessing the switch network operating system](#) for access instructions.

#### Backing up the switch NOS configuration

Step_1	Access the switch network operating system using SSH or a serial connection.
Step_2	<p>Copy the desired configuration to the remote server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>running-config</b> : configuration currently active (may differ from startup-config if changes were made since the last boot, but not saved).</li> <li>• <b>startup-config</b> : saved configuration applied at switch boot.</li> </ul> <p>LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <code>copy &lt;running-config&gt; startup-config scp://&lt;SERVER_USERNAME&gt;:&lt;SERVER_PASSWORD&gt;@&lt;SERVER_IP&gt;/&lt;FILE_PATH&gt; save-host-key</code></p> <pre># copy startup-config scp://user:password@192.168.0.10/ startup-config save-host-key % Saving 1506 bytes to server 192.168.0.10: startup-config</pre>

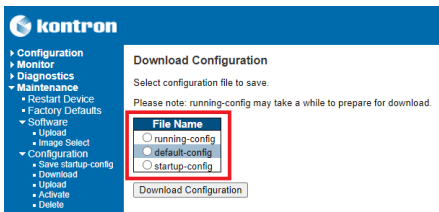
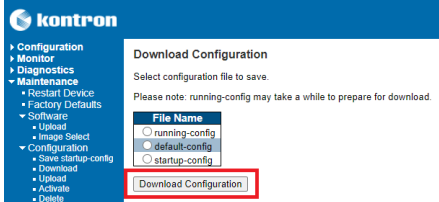
#### Restoring the switch NOS configuration

Step_1	Access the switch network operating system using SSH or a serial connection.	
Step_2	Copy the configuration file from the remote server as one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>running-config</b> : configuration currently active (volatile until saved as startup-config).</li> <li>• <b>startup-config</b> : saved configuration applied at switch boot.</li> </ul> LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>copy scp://&lt;SERVER_USERNAME&gt;:&lt;SERVER_PASSWORD&gt;@&lt;SERVER_IP&gt;/&lt;FILE_PATH&gt; &lt;running-config startup-config&gt; save-host-key</b>	<pre># copy scp://user:password@192.168.0.10/startup-config startup-config save-host-key % Saving 1506 bytes to flash:startup-config</pre>
Step_3	If the configuration was written to the startup-config, the switch NOS must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>reload cold</b>	<pre># reload cold % Cold reload in progress, please stand by.</pre>

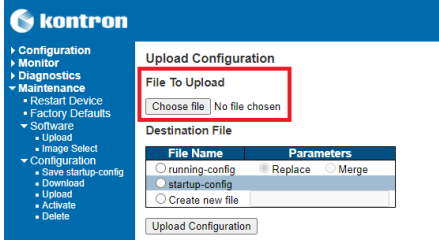
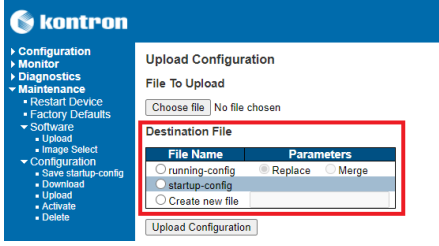
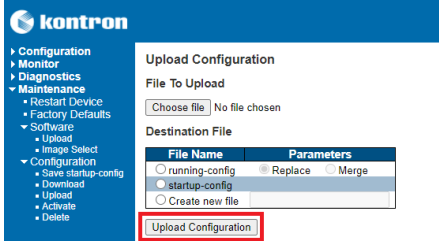
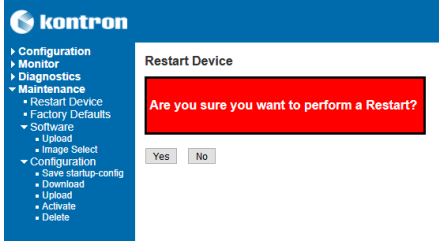
## Backing up and restoring the switch NOS configuration using the switch NOS Web UI

Access the switch NOS Web UI. Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

### Backing up the switch NOS configuration

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the switch NOS Web UI, select <b>Maintenance</b> , then <b>Configuration</b> , and then <b>Download</b> . Choose the configuration to back up: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>running-config</b> : Configuration currently active (may differ from startup-config if changes were made since the last boot, but not saved).</li> <li>• <b>default-config</b> : Configuration applied when the default configuration is reloaded.</li> <li>• <b>startup-config</b> : Saved configuration applied at switch boot.</li> </ul>	
Step_2	Click <b>Download Configuration</b> , then select where to save the configuration file.	

### Restoring the switch NOS configuration

Step_1	<p>From the left-side menu of the switch NOS Web UI, select <b>Maintenance</b> , then <b>Configuration</b> , and then <b>Upload</b> . Click <b>Choose file</b> . Then, using the pop-up file browser, select the desired configuration file to restore.</p>	
Step_2	<p>Choose the configuration to restore:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>running-config</b> : configuration currently active (volatile until saved as the startup-config). This selection allows fully replacing or merging on top of the current running-config.</li> <li>• <b>startup-config</b> : saved configuration applied at switch boot.</li> <li>• <b>Create new file</b> : creates a new configuration entry that can be subsequently activated using the <b>Maintenance</b> → <b>Configuration</b> → <b>Activate</b> path of the menu.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> A default-config cannot be written to, but a previously backed up default-config can be written to as one of these options.</p>	
Step_3	<p>Click <b>Upload Configuration</b> .</p>	
Step_4	<p>If the configuration was written to as startup-config, the switch NOS must be rebooted for changes to take effect. This can be achieved by selecting <b>Maintenance</b> , then <b>Restart Device</b> from the left-side menu. Then, confirm that a restart is to be performed by clicking <b>Yes</b> .</p>	



# Upgrading

## Table of contents

- [Upgrading BMC firmware](#)
  - [Upgrading the firmware of the BMC using Redfish](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
  - [Upgrading the firmware of the BMC using the Web UI](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
- [Upgrading FPGA firmware](#)
  - [Upgrading the firmware of the FPGA using Redfish](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
  - [Upgrading the firmware of the FPGA using the Web UI](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
- [Upgrading UEFI/BIOS firmware](#)
  - [Upgrading UEFI/BIOS firmware using a virtual media and the built-in UEFI shell](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Mounting the UEFI/BIOS upgrade virtual media](#)
    - [Upgrading the UEFI/BIOS](#)
- [Upgrading switch firmware](#)
  - [Upgrading switch firmware using SCP](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)
  - [Upgrading switch firmware using the switch NOS Web UI](#)
    - [Prerequisites](#)
    - [Procedure](#)

## Upgrading BMC firmware

NOTE: For the upgrade to work, the upgrade image version must be different from the one running on the BMC. In other words, it is not possible to upgrade with the same version.

### Relevant sections:

- [Description of system access methods](#)
- [Accessing a BMC](#)

BMC firmware can be upgraded:

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using the [Web UI](#)

## Upgrading the firmware of the BMC using Redfish

Redfish is the preferred interface for upgrading BMC firmware.

### Prerequisites

1	The .tar file provided by Kontron was downloaded on the remote computer.
2	Access to the BMC Redfish interface is required.

### Relevant section:

- [Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#)

### Procedure

Step_1	<p>From the BMC Redfish interface, verify the current firmware version of the BMC firmware.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .FirmwareVersion</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .FirmwareVersion "2.00.0159fces"</pre>
Step_2	<p>Collect the list of IDs of all the firmware present on the platform.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory   jq .Members</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory   jq .Members [   {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/8c50fd55"   } ]</pre>

	<pre> {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/c172d3d8" } {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/d6bcd2a6" } {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/ebbd5d7b" } </pre>
Step_3	<p>Verify that the new firmware is not already on the platform. Repeat the following command for every firmware discovered in the previous step. The <b>Description</b> field describes the component targeted by this firmware. The <b>Version</b> field describes the firmware version of this component.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/[FIRMWARE_ID]   jq ".Description,.Version"</p>
	<pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/c172d3d8   jq ".Description,.Version" "BMC Image" "2.07.0162f40d" </pre>
Step_4	<p>Set the apply time to Immediate .</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"HttpPushUriOptions": {"HttpPushUriApplyTime": {"ApplyTime": " Immediate }}}'   jq</p>
	<pre> \$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"HttpPushUriOptions": {"HttpPushUriApplyTime": {"ApplyTime": "Immediate"}}}'   jq </pre>
Step_5	<p>Upload the firmware by executing the following command. The BMC should return a TaskService Id .</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/octet-stream' --upload-file '[FILE_PATH]'   jq</p>
	<pre> \$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/octet-stream' --upload-file 'update.tar'   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/TaskService/Tasks/1",   "@odata.type": "#Task.v1_4_3.Task",   "Id": "1",   "TaskState": "Running",   "TaskStatus": "OK" } </pre>
Step_6	<p>Using the Id returned by the previous step, ensure that the task is completed. The <b>PercentComplete</b> value should be 100 before proceeding with the next steps. It may take several seconds.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/TaskService/Tasks/[TASK_ID]   jq .PercentComplete</p>
	<pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/TaskService/Tasks/1   jq .PercentComplete [   100 ] </pre>
Step_7	<p>Once the BMC becomes available again, verify that the firmware version has changed.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .FirmwareVersion</p>
	<pre> \$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Managers/bmc   jq .FirmwareVersion "2.00.015af61b" </pre>

## Upgrading the firmware of the BMC using the Web UI

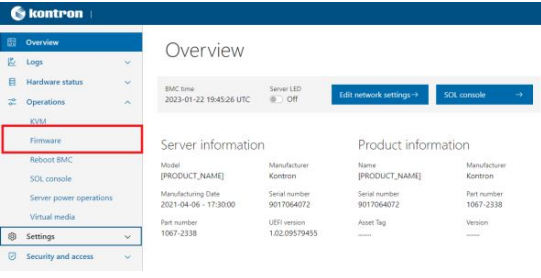
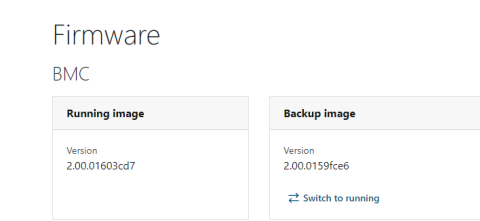
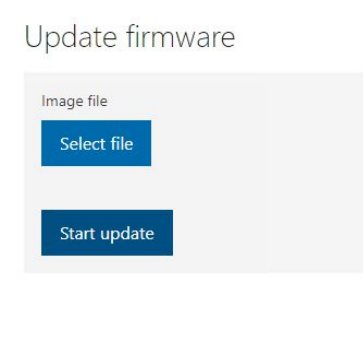
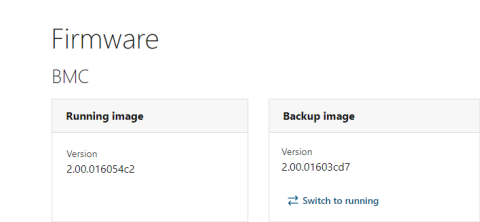
### Prerequisites

1	The .tar file provided by Kontron was downloaded on the remote computer.
2	Access to the BMC Web UI is required.

Relevant section:

[Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#)

## Procedure

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, click on <b>Operations</b> and then on <b>Firmware</b> .	
Step_2	Verify the current firmware version. Make sure that the new firmware is more recent.	
Step_3	From the <b>Update firmware</b> section, choose a <b>.tar</b> file to upload for the BMC by clicking on <b>Select file</b> .	
Step_4	Click on <b>Start update</b> .	
Step_5	When the file has successfully been uploaded, a success message should appear in the top right corner.	
Step_6	Wait for the BMC to update. The page should refresh automatically upon successful update.	
Step_7	Once the BMC becomes available again, verify that the firmware version has changed.	

## Upgrading FPGA firmware

**NOTE:** For the upgrade to work, the upgrade image version must be different from the one running on the BMC. In other words, it is not possible to upgrade with the same version.

### Relevant sections:

[Description of system access methods](#)  
[Accessing a BMC](#)

FPGA firmware can be upgraded:

- Using [Redfish](#)
- Using the [Web UI](#)

### Upgrading the firmware of the FPGA using Redfish

Redfish is the preferred interface for upgrading the FPGA firmware.

## Prerequisites

1	The .tar file provided by Kontron was downloaded on the remote computer.
2	Access to the BMC Redfish interface is required.

Relevant section:

[Accessing a BMC using Redfish](#)

## Procedure

Step_1	<p>From the BMC Redfish interface, verify the current FPGA firmware version.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .FpgaVersion</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/System   jq .FpgaVersion "1.00.0159fce6"</pre>
Step_2	<p>Collect all the IDs of the firmware present on the platform.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory   jq .Members</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory   jq .Members [   {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/8c50fd55"   },   {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/c172d3d8"   },   {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/d6bcd2a6"   },   {     "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/ebbd5d7b"   } ]</pre>
Step_3	<p>Verify that the new firmware is not already on the platform. Repeat the following command for every firmware discovered in the previous step. The <b>Description</b> field describes the component targeted by this firmware. The <b>Version</b> field describes the firmware version of this component.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/[FIRMWARE_ID]   jq ".Description,.Version"</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory/c172d3d8   jq ".Description,.Version" "BMC image" "5.07.0162fd0d"</pre>
Step_4	<p>Set the apply time to <b>Immediate</b>.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"HttpPushUriOptions": {"HttpPushUriApplyTime": {"ApplyTime": "Immediate"}}}'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request PATCH --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/json' --data '{"HttpPushUriOptions": {"HttpPushUriApplyTime": {"ApplyTime": "Immediate"}}}'   jq</pre>
Step_5	<p>Upload the firmware by executing the following command. The BMC will shut down temporarily.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url [ROOT_URL] /redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/octet-stream' --upload-file ' [FILE_PATH]'   jq</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request POST --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/UpdateService --header 'Content-Type: application/octet-stream' --upload-file 'update.tar'   jq {   "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/TaskService/Tasks/1",   "@odata.type": "#Task.v1_4_3.Task",   "Id": "1",   "TaskState": "Running",   "TaskStatus": "OK" }</pre>
Step_6	<p>Once the BMC becomes available again, verify that the firmware version has changed.</p> <p>RemoteComputer_OSPrompt:~\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url [ROOT_URL]/redfish/v1/Systems/system   jq .FpgaVersion</p> <pre>\$ curl -k -s --request GET --url https://admin:ready2go@172.16.182.31/redfish/v1/Systems/System   jq .FpgaVersion "1.00.0159fce6"</pre>

## Upgrading the firmware of the FPGA using the Web UI

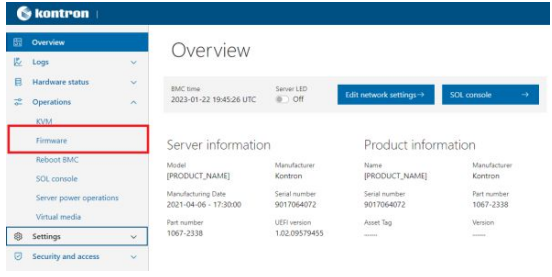
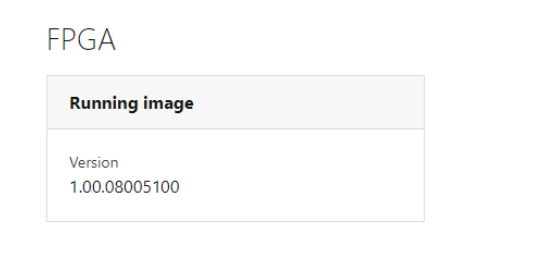
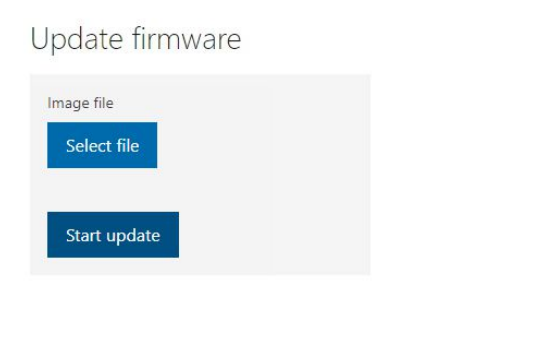
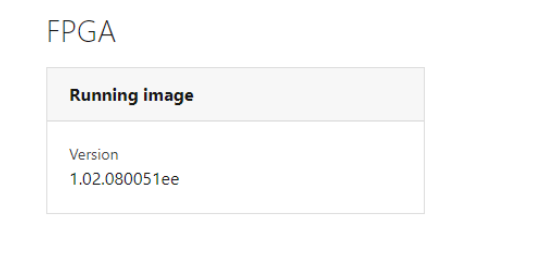
### Prerequisites

1	The .tar file provided by Kontron was downloaded on the remote computer.
2	Access to the BMC Web UI is required.

Relevant section:

[Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#)

## Procedure

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, click on <b>Operations</b> and then on <b>Firmware</b> .	
Step_2	Verify the current firmware version. Make sure that the new firmware is more recent.	
Step_3	From the <b>Update firmware</b> section, choose a <b>.tar</b> file to upload for the FPGA by clicking on <b>Select file</b> .	
Step_4	Click on <b>Start update</b> .	
Step_5	When the file has successfully been uploaded, a success message should appear in the top right corner.	
Step_6	Wait for the FPGA to update. The page should refresh automatically upon successful update.	
Step_7	Once the FPGA becomes available again, verify that the firmware version has changed.	

## Upgrading UEFI/BIOS firmware

UEFI/BIOS firmware can be upgraded:

- Using a virtual media and the built-in UEFI shell

### Upgrading UEFI/BIOS firmware using a virtual media and the built-in UEFI shell

#### Prerequisites

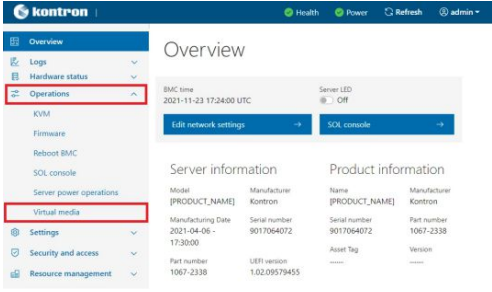
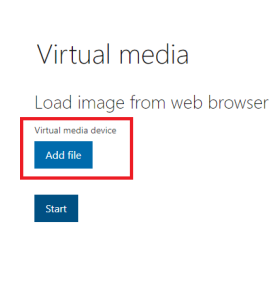
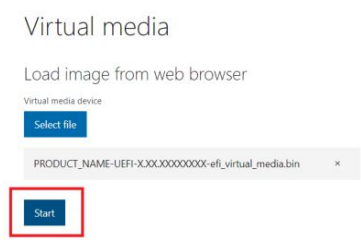
1	A virtual media .bin file has been provided by Kontron.
2	Access to the BMC Web UI is required.
3	Secure Boot must be disabled.

Relevant sections:

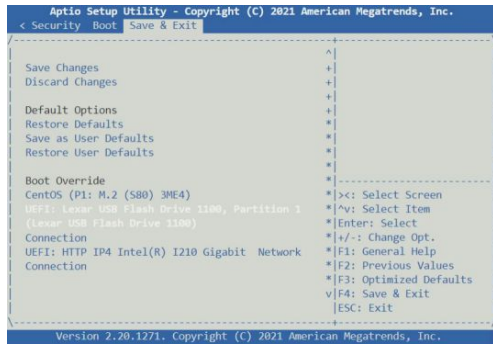
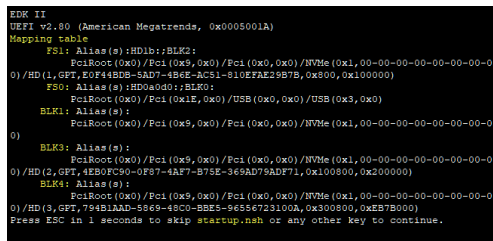
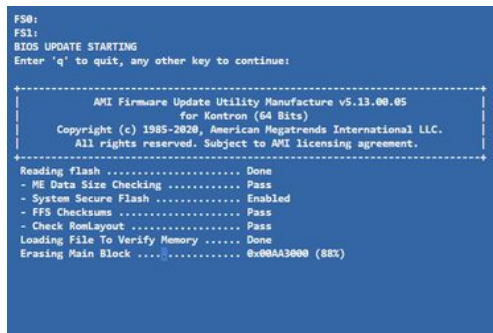
[Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#)

[Accessing a BMC using the Web UI](#)

Mounting the UEFI/BIOS upgrade virtual media

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the BMC Web UI, select <b>Operations</b> and then <b>Virtual media</b> .	
Step_2	Click on <b>Add file</b> to browse for the <b>.bin</b> file provided by Kontron.	
Step_3	Click on <b>Start</b> .	

## Upgrading the UEFI/BIOS

Step_1	Access the UEFI/BIOS setup menu.	
Step_2	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu.	
Step_3	Select the UEFI: Built-in EFI Shell option from the <b>Boot Override</b> menu.	
Step_4	The built-in EFI Shell should launch. Do not press any key. Wait for the message "BIOS UPDATE STARTING".	
Step_5	When prompted to, press any key other than 'q' to continue. The UEFI/BIOS upgrade should start.	
Step_6	At the end of the upgrade process, press the <b>Enter</b> key to end the UEFI/BIOS upgrade.	
Step_7	Once completed, the BMC and the platform will automatically reset. It may take several seconds to complete the power cycle and the remote connection might be lost.	

## Upgrading switch firmware

Switch firmware can be upgraded using:

- [SCP](#)
- The [switch NOS Web UI](#)

**NOTE:** The switch startup configuration will not be affected by a switch firmware upgrade.

### Upgrading switch firmware using SCP


#### Prerequisites

1	A server configured for the desired protocol is available and accessible from the switch NOS.
2	The .itb upgrade file provided by Kontron was downloaded on the server.

Relevant section:

[Accessing the switch NOS](#)

#### Procedure

	The URL following the server IP address is a path relative to the user home folder provided ("~/"). To specify an absolute path, use a double slash after the IP address (e.g. scp://[SERVER_USERNAME]:[SERVER_PASSWORD]@[SERVER_IP]/~/[path/to/filename.itb]).
---	---

Step_1	Access the switch NOS using SSH or a serial connection.	
Step_2	Initiate firmware download and upgrade. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>firmware upgrade</b> scp://[SERVER_USERNAME]: [SERVER_PASSWORD]@[SERVER_IP]/[FILE_PATH] <b>save-host-key</b>	<pre>NOS00A0A500A0A5# firmware upgrade scp://user:password@192.168.0.10/KONTRON-NOS-2.26.016a3532.itb save-host-key Downloading... Got 18965810 bytes Starting flash update - do not power off device! done</pre>
Step_3	Wait for the switch NOS to reboot after the upgrade completes.	
Step_4	Confirm the upgrade was successful by checking the firmware version. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# <b>show version</b> In the results, look for the version in the Primary Image section. In the image, the version is 2.26.016a3532.	<pre>Primary Image ----- Image       : linux (Active) Version    : Kontron NOS IStax 2.26.016a3532 Date       : 2022-11-22T15:50:17-05:00</pre>

## Upgrading switch firmware using the switch NOS Web UI

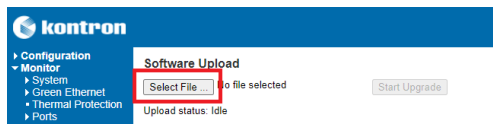
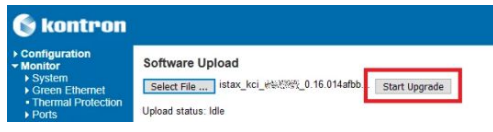
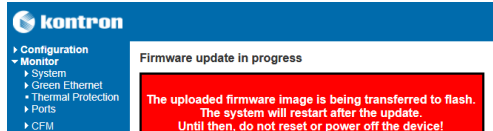

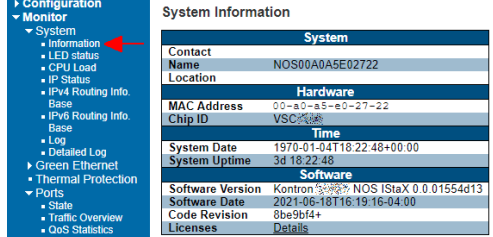
### Prerequisites

1	Access to the switch NOS Web UI is required.
2	The .itb upgrade file provided by Kontron was downloaded on the remote computer.

### Relevant section:

[Accessing the switch NOS using the switch NOS Web UI](#)

### Procedure

Step_1	From the left-side menu of the switch NOS Web UI, select <b>Maintenance</b> , <b>Software</b> and then <b>Upload</b> .	
Step_2	Click the <b>Select File</b> button and then choose the desired .itb file.	
Step_3	After selecting the file for the upgrade, click on <b>Start Upgrade</b> .	
Step_4	Wait for the upload and upgrade process to complete.	
Step_5	Once the upgrade is done, from the left-side menu, select <b>Monitor</b> , <b>System</b> and then <b>Information</b> . Confirm that the <b>Software Version</b> corresponds to that of the .itb file.	



# Platform cooling and thermal management

Table of contents

- [Behavior upon startup at temperatures below 0 degrees Celsius](#)
- [Behavior at temperatures below or above 10 degrees Celsius](#)
- [Cooling management](#)
  - [Cooling management characteristics](#)
  - [Fan fault detection method](#)
- [Default temperature thresholds](#)

Relevant sections:

[Environmental considerations](#)

[Sensor list](#)

[Configuring sensors and thermal parameters](#)

The ME1310 platform can operate within an ambient temperature range of:

- -40°C to +65°C when using a DC PSU
- -5°C to +50°C when using an AC PSU

	Fans may not be running when the ambient temperature is below 10°C.
---	---

## Behavior upon startup at temperatures below 0 degrees Celsius

The system is designed to operate in a cold environment, but for all components to run in their specified temperature ranges, the system needs to be heated before startup. Heating elements are built-in for the CPU and, optionally, for the PCIe add-in cards.

- When the platform is started at temperatures below 0°C, an internal heating element preheats the components sensitive to cold prior to the board power on.
- Once the temperature of these components exceeds 0°C, the server is powered on.

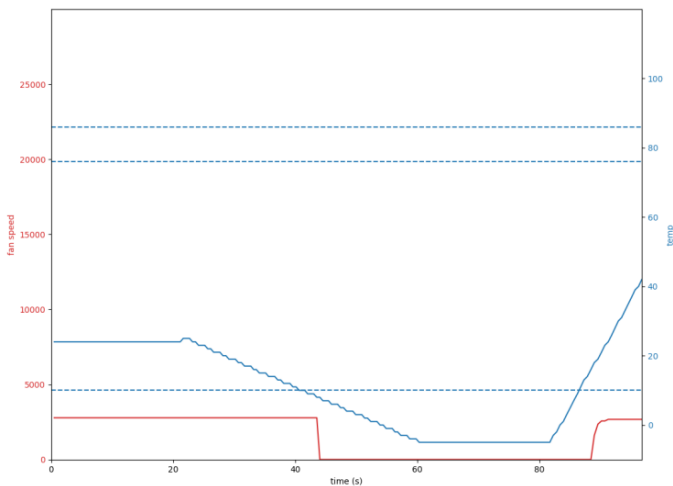
This behavior is communicated through platform LEDs. For more information, refer to [General platform LEDs](#).

## Behavior at temperatures below or above 10 degrees Celsius

The ambient temperature is measured by sensor Temp Inlet.

- When the ambient temperature is below 10°C and no sensor has exceeded its temperature thresholds, the fans will be on standby (not running and making no sound).
- When the ambient temperature is above 10°C, the fans will be started and run at 8% of their maximum capacity.
- If, at any ambient temperature, it is detected that a sensor reaches its Upper non-critical threshold, fan cooling will engage to ensure that no component is overheating.

Sensor Temp Inlet



## Cooling management

The cooling management of the platform is handled by an integrated BMC.

The BMC uses information collected from on-board temperature sensors to adjust the speed of the fans and regulate the temperature of the platform. For each sensor, the temperature reading is compared against corresponding configured thresholds to determine the required fan speed. The resulting duty cycle is based on cooling parameters, such as minimum and maximum fan speed, and gets linearly increased when a temperature reading gets between the Upper non-critical and Upper critical thresholds for that sensor. The fan control behavior can be fine-tuned by configuring these thresholds to match the target environment.

In addition to the sensors read by the BMC, other sensors can be read by a customer application, if available, running under the server's OS and then reported to the BMC. As such, PCIe add-in card temperatures, as well as M.2 and SFP temperatures, can be reported to the BMC by the customer application and

considered by the fan speed regulator in its computation for thermal management function. Thresholds for these sensors can be configured as well.

## Cooling management characteristics

- Minimum fan speeds are set to 8%.
- Minimum ambient temperature is set to 10°C. Above this temperature, fans will be running. Below this temperature, fans will be stopped but ready to start if a component requires cooling.
- Fans are started before reaching their threshold value using a threshold offset parameter.
- Fan speed deviation is monitored for failure.
- A watchdog timer sets fans to 100% if the BMC does not issue control commands. This will normally occur while the BMC reboots, for example, during a firmware upgrade.
- A BMC firmware upgrade failsafe sets fan speed to 100% during a BMC firmware upgrade or reboot.
- A small negative slew rate applies on fan speed to ensure a slow decrease in fan speed and prevent fan oscillation.
- Fast response to temperature rise.
- Fan redundancy.

## Fan fault detection method

To detect faulty fans, the speed of each fan is continuously monitored and compared to the target value sent by the fan controller. If the fan speed is out of range by  $\pm 15\%$  for 30 seconds, the fan is marked as faulty and a Redfish event is sent. The fan can later be restored if the speed comes back within the deviation range for a steady period of 5 seconds.

All the fans are redundant. This means that when a fan is faulty, all the other healthy fans will be set to maximum speed.

```
{
  "@odata.context": "/redfish/v1/$metadata#LogEntry.LogEntry",
  "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries/#1614699759_4",
  "@odata.type": "#LogEntry.v1_4_0.LogEntry",
  "Created": "2021-03-02T15:42:39+00:00",
  "EntryType": "Event",
  "Id": "1614699759_4",
  "Message": "Fan_1 speed deviated.",
  "MessageArgs": [
    "Fan_1"
  ],
  "MessageId": "OpenBMC.0.1.FanSpeedDeviated",
  "Name": "System Event Log Entry",
  "Severity": "OK"
},
{
  "@odata.context": "/redfish/v1/$metadata#LogEntry.LogEntry",
  "@odata.id": "/redfish/v1/Systems/system/LogServices/EventLog/Entries/#1614699764_4",
  "@odata.type": "#LogEntry.v1_4_0.LogEntry",
  "Created": "2021-03-02T15:42:44+00:00",
  "EntryType": "Event",
  "Id": "1614699764_4",
  "Message": "Fan_1 speed restored.",
  "MessageArgs": [
    "Fan_1"
  ],
  "MessageId": "OpenBMC.0.1.FanSpeedRestored",
  "Name": "System Event Log Entry",
  "Severity": "OK"
},
}
```

To access the SEL using Redfish to see the events, refer to [System event log](#).

## Default temperature thresholds

To see temperature thresholds, refer to the instructions provided in [Monitoring sensors](#) and [Configuring sensors and thermal parameters](#).

# Troubleshooting

# Collecting diagnostics

Table of contents

- [Collecting the system inventory](#)
- [Collecting the event logs](#)
- [Collecting system information using a QR code](#)

The following information could be required when contacting the support team to make the proper board health diagnostics. However, if the platform is inoperable, the some of the information can be retrieved using a [QR code](#).

## Collecting the system inventory

The following information could be used in order to make the proper board health diagnostics. Refer to [System inventory](#).

- FRU information
- BMC, UEFI, FPGA firmware version
- Power supply type
- Product IO module information
- Processor device information
- Memory device configuration
- Storage devices
- UEFI/BIOS configuration
- Ethernet switch running configuration
- Ethernet switch versions

## Collecting the event logs

Multiple event logs could be used in order to make the proper board health diagnostics .

- BMC event logs. Refer to [BMC system event log](#).
- Switch NOS event log. Refer to [NOS system event log](#).
- UEFI/BIOS POST codes (optional). Refer to [POST code logs](#).

## Collecting system information using a QR code

Relevant section:

[MAC addresses](#)

Step_1	Using a QR code application, scan the QR code of the platform. Record the information obtained in your device (e.g. by taking a screen shot).  S/N:9017020001 = Platform serial number P/N:1065-2823 = Platform part number BATCH:0A00000001 = Platform production lot number MAC: 00A0A5D6402A = First MAC address attributed to the BMC/server. Value to be used to replace MAC_BASE. 00A0A5E1B934 = First MAC address attributed to the integrated Ethernet switch. Value to be used to replace SW_MAC_BASE. This is only present for a platform configured with the IO Ethernet switch module.	S/N:9017020001 P/N:1065-2823 BATCH:0A00000001 MAC: 00A0A5D6402A 00A0A5E1B934
--------	---	---


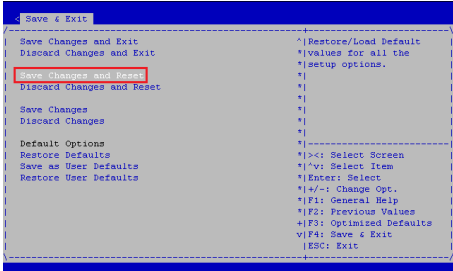
# Factory default

Table of contents

- [Restoring default UEFI/BIOS settings](#)
- [Restoring default switch NOS settings](#)
  - [Restoring default switch NOS settings using the CLI](#)
  - [Restoring default switch NOS settings using the Web UI](#)
- [Restoring a BMC password](#)

## Restoring default UEFI/BIOS settings

Refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	From the UEFI/BIOS setup menu, navigate to the <b>Save &amp; Exit</b> menu and select <b>Restore Defaults</b> .	
Step_2	Select <b>Save Changes and Reset</b> .	
Step_3	Wait for the system to reset. The UEFI/ BIOS settings should have been reset to default values.	

## Restoring default switch NOS settings

Use caution when restoring default settings. Your access to system components could be interrupted because of networking configuration changes. Refer to [Description of system access methods](#) to select an appropriate path to access the platform components.

### Restoring default switch NOS settings using the CLI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

**NOTE:** This procedure is equivalent to a factory reset for switch configuration. All configuration changes will be lost.

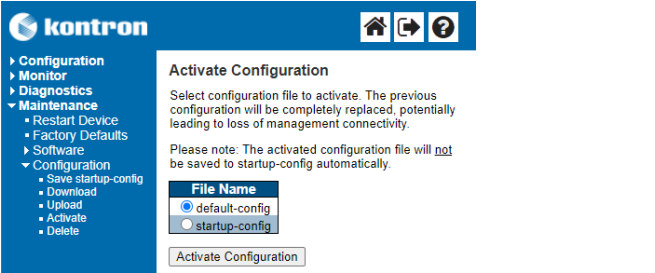
Step_1	Restore the default configuration. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# reload defaults	<pre># reload defaults % Reloading defaults. Please stand by.</pre>
Step_2	To make the revert to default values permanent, use the following command. LocalSwitchNOS_OSPrompt:~# copy running-config startup-config	<pre># copy running-config startup-config Building configuration.. % Saving 1555 bytes to flash:startup-config</pre>

### Restoring default switch NOS settings using the Web UI

Refer to [Accessing the switch NOS](#) for access instructions.

To preserve configurations, the current configuration needs to be saved to startup-config. Refer to [Saving the current configuration using the Web UI](#).

**NOTE:** This procedure is equivalent to a factory reset for switch configuration. All configuration changes will be lost.

Step_1	From the left-side menu, select <b>Maintenance, Configuration</b> and then <b>Activate</b> .	
Step_2	Click on the <b>default-config</b> radio button.	
Step_3	Press on the <b>Activate Configuration</b> button to confirm.	
Step_4	(Optional) To make the change persistent, save running-config to startup-config.	

## Restoring a BMC password

A BMC administrator password can be restored using the [Accessing a BMC using IPMI \(KCS\)](#) method.

Step_1	Identify the ID of the user with the password to restore. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user list [CHANNEL]	<pre># ipmitool user list 1 ID Name      Callin Link Auth IPMI Msg Channel Priv Limit 1  admin      false true   true   ADMINISTRATOR 2  mynewuser  false true   true   ADMINISTRATOR 3                      true  false false NO ACCESS 4                      true  false false NO ACCESS</pre>
Step_2	Reset the password. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# ipmitool user set password [USER_ID] [NEW_PASSWORD]	<pre># ipmitool user set password 1 "newpassword123456"</pre>

## Support information

To ensure timely treatment of your support request, Kontron recommends collecting the [system inventory](#) and the relevant [diagnostics](#).  
Kontron's technical support team can be reached through the following means:

- By phone: 1-888-835-6676
- By email: [support-na@kontron.com](mailto:support-na@kontron.com)
- Via the website: [www.kontron.com](http://www.kontron.com)

For sales information, including current and future product options, please contact Kontron Sales Support in Canada through the following means:

- By phone: 1-800-387-4222
- By email: [gss-com@kontron.com](mailto:gss-com@kontron.com)

## Knowledge base



# Sending a BREAK signal over a serial connection

The documentation refers to the possibility of resetting a Kontron server using a special signal called **BREAK** .

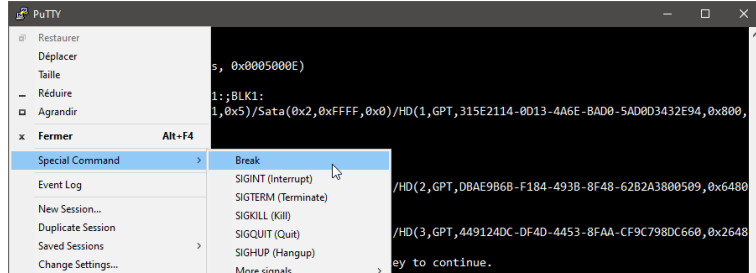
Wikipedia describes a break condition as something that "occurs when the receiver input is at the 'space' (logic low, i.e., '0') level for longer than some duration of time."

Here are methods to send a **BREAK** signal for various terminal emulators and other serial connection implementations.

## PuTTY

PuTTY accepts the keyboard combination of the CTRL key with the PAUSE/BREAK (modern keyboard often indicate only PAUSE).

The signal can also be sent via the application menu. An example is shown in the image below.



## Minicom

A **BREAK** signal can be sent from the minicom Linux utility's help.

```
| Minicom Command Summary |
| Commands can be called by CTRL-A <key> |
| Main Functions |
...
| send break.....F |
```

## Picocom

A **BREAK** signal can be sent from the picocom Linux utility's help.

```
*** Picocom commands (all prefixed by [C-a])
...
*** [C-] : Send break
```

## Serial console servers

There are also dedicated servers that implement many physical serial connections which are then accessible via a network using telnet or SSH clients for example. These serial console servers typically allow the configuration of a key combination or sequence for each port that will send a **BREAK** signal to the connected device. Refer to your device manual for more information.

## Disabling sleep states in Linux

In Linux, sleep states are not controlled exclusively with definitions in the ACPI tables. They are also controlled by the operating system. Refer to accessing [Accessing the operating system of a server](#) for access instructions.

### Verifying enabled sleep states

Step_1	Verify enabled sleep states. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# cat /sys/power/state	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# cat /sys/power/state freeze disk</pre>
--------	--	---

### Disabling sleep states

Step_1	Disable sleep states using systemd. LocalServer_OSPrompt:~# sudo systemctl mask sleep.target suspend.target hibernate.target hybrid-sleep.target	<pre>[root@localhost ~]# sudo systemctl mask sleep.target suspend.target hibernate.target hybrid-sleep.target Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/sleep.target to /dev/null. Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/suspend.target to /dev/null. Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/hibernate.target to /dev/null. Created symlink from /etc/systemd/system/hybrid-sleep.target to /dev/null.</pre>
--------	---	--

## Application notes

# Generating custom secure boot keys

Relevant section:

[Provisioning custom secure boot keys](#)

To provision custom secure boot keys, keys may have to be generated. This article provides an example using CentOS 7.

## Prerequisites

1	Packages efitools and sbsigntools must be available. These packages are not official CentOS packages.
---	---

## Procedure

Step_1	Run the following commands on the system you need to generate keys for. mkdir make_keys cd make_keys wget <a href="https://github.com/freshautomations/efitools-centos/releases/download/2019-05-12/efitools-v1.9.2-1.x86_64.rpm">https://github.com/freshautomations/efitools-centos/releases/download/2019-05-12/efitools-v1.9.2-1.x86_64.rpm</a> wget <a href="https://github.com/freshautomations/efitools-centos/releases/download/2019-05-12/sbsigntools-v0.9.2-1.x86_64.rpm">https://github.com/freshautomations/efitools-centos/releases/download/2019-05-12/sbsigntools-v0.9.2-1.x86_64.rpm</a> wget <a href="https://www.rodsbooks.com/efi-bootloaders/mkkeys.sh">https://www.rodsbooks.com/efi-bootloaders/mkkeys.sh</a> chmod +x mkkeys.sh yum install sbsigntools-v0.9.2-1.x86_64.rpm efitools-v1.9.2-1.x86_64.rpm ./mkkeys.sh
Step_2	The commands will generate a lot of files. You need the *.cer file to use in the provisioning procedure.

# Provisioning custom secure boot keys

Table of contents

- [Introduction](#)
- [Updating secure boot keys from the UEFI setup utility](#)
  - [Prerequisites](#)
  - [Procedure](#)

## Introduction

This article describes how to provision a custom set of Secure Variables used as part of the Secure Boot feature.

Secure Boot is a UEFI-defined feature used to authenticate a UEFI executable, such as an OS loader, using digital signing mechanisms based on the Public Key Infrastructure process, reducing the risks of pre-boot malware attacks. The feature uses a database of authorized signatures to confirm the UEFI executable integrity prior to execution.

Boards will typically have a pre-loaded set of Platform Key (PK), Key Exchange Keys (KEK), authorized signature database (db) and blacklisted / revoked signature database (dbx) as defined by the OEM, as well as some industry-standard certificates issued by Microsoft that allow booting Windows or well-known Linux distributions such as Ubuntu. It may be desirable for an end customer to update these keys with their own set for security reasons.

This document assumes the reader has some knowledge about the Secure Boot process, and that the required set of keys and certificates has been properly generated. The following link provides guidelines on creating and managing such keys and certificates:

<https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows-hardware/manufacture/desktop/windows-secure-boot-key-creation-and-management-guidance>


## Updating secure boot keys from the UEFI setup utility

### Prerequisites

1	A set of Secure Boot keys has been created (PK, KEK and db).
2	Public Key certificates that are to be provisioned are in DER format.
3	Public Key certificates are present on a FAT-partitioned USB drive, which is connected to the board. If Virtual Media redirection is available, it is also possible to use a corresponding ISO image instead.


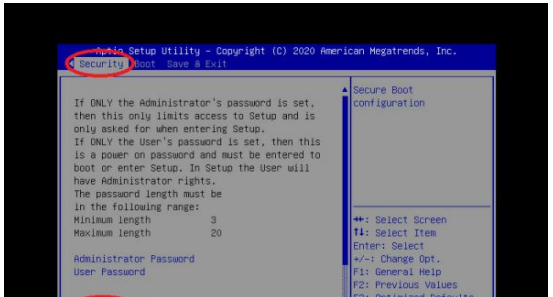
Relevant section:

[Generating custom secure boot keys](#)

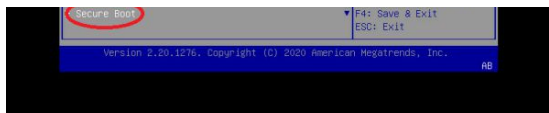
	As the current time is verified against certificate timestamps as a security measure, make sure the system time is valid prior to manipulating Secure Boot variables. Otherwise, a Security Violation error will be obtained and no change will be possible.
---	--

### Procedure

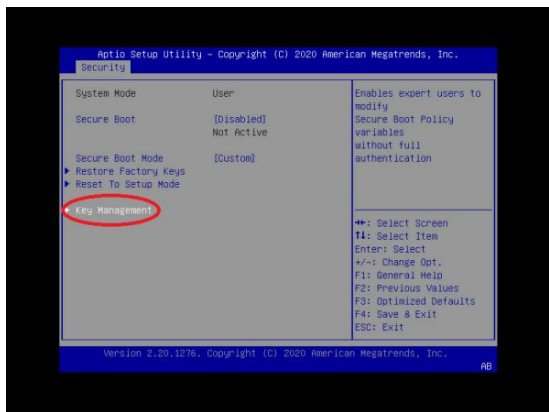
Refer to [Accessing the UEFI or BIOS](#) for access instructions.

Step_1	Access the UEFI Setup Utility by pressing F2 or DEL when the sign-on screen is displayed during boot.	
Step_2	Access the <b>Secure Boot</b> submenu from the <b>Security</b> tab.	

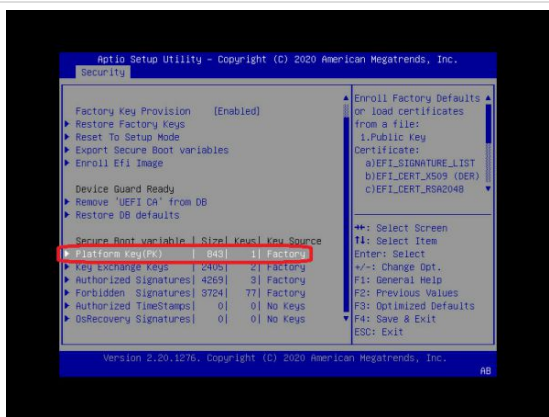
Step\_3 Access the Key Management page by selecting the Key Management menu item.



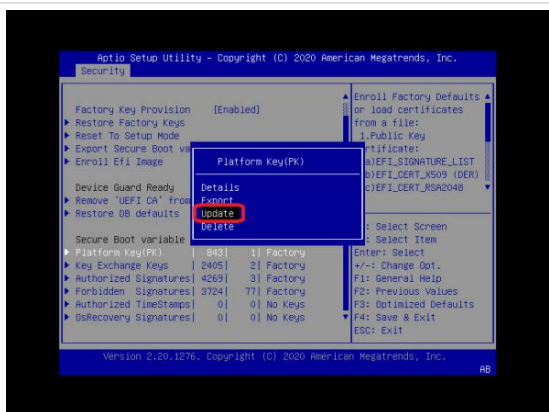
Step\_4 Default Factory Keys should already be provisioned, as identified by the "Factory" attribute in the Key Source column in the Secure Boot variable table. To replace the default Platform Key with your own, select Platform Key(PK).



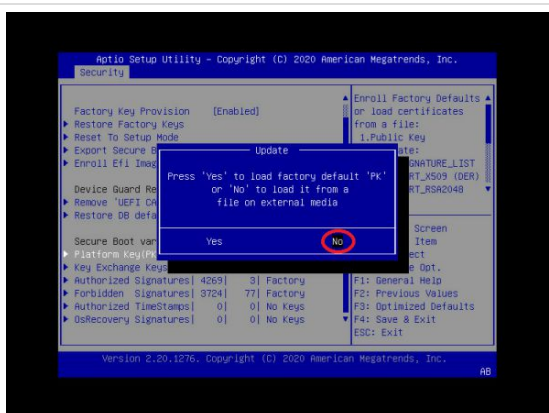
Step\_5 Select Update from the pop-up window.



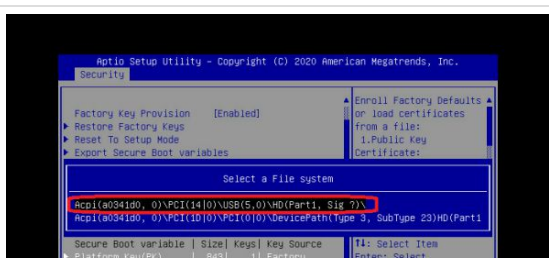
Step\_6 Select No to load a key from an external media.

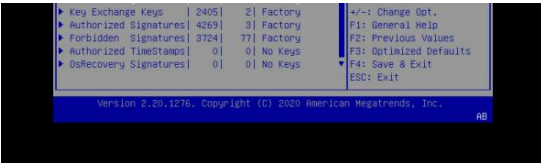
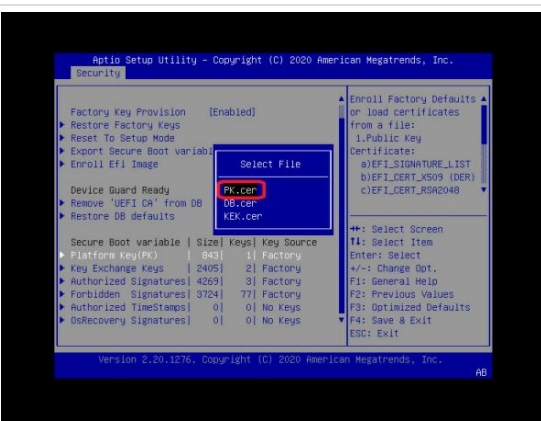
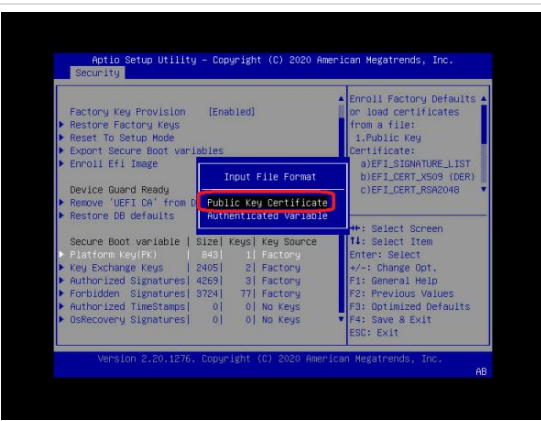
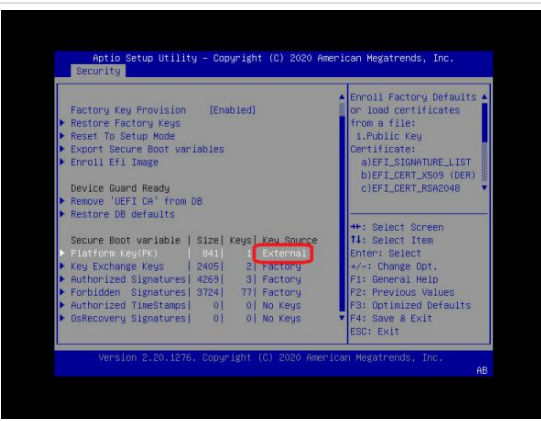
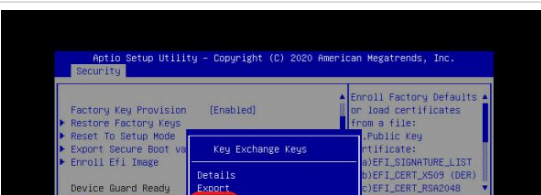


Step\_7 A list of available file systems will be displayed, using their corresponding UEFI device path. Select the USB device where the Public Key certificates are located. Note that if Virtual Media redirection is used, the device will be identified as a CDROM.



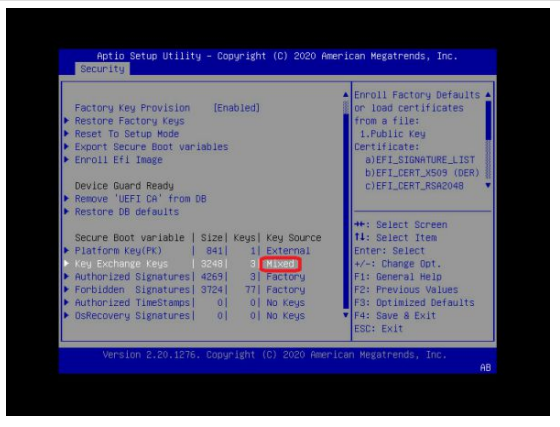
Step\_7 A list of available file systems will be displayed, using their corresponding UEFI device path. Select the USB device where the Public Key certificates are located. Note that if Virtual Media redirection is used, the device will be identified as a CDROM.



		
Step_8	From the list of files, select the Public Certificate file for the Platform Key (PK.cer in this example).	
Step_9	Specify that the file format is Public Key Certificate .	
Step_10	Select Yes to confirm Platform Key update.	
Step_11	Confirm that the update completed successfully. The table should now show that a key was added from an "External" Key Source.	
Step_12	Select Key Exchange Keys to update or append the KEK database with your own. In this case: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting <b>Update</b> from the pop-up window will erase the pre-provisioned KEK entries and add a new KEK as a single entry;</li> <li>• Selecting <b>Append</b> will add the new KEK to the database.</li> </ul>	

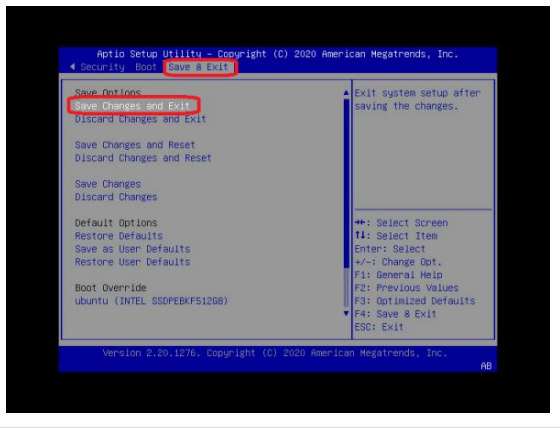


Step\_13 Follow steps 4 to 11 to add a new KEK entry. If the KEK was appended to the database, the Key Source will be "Mixed".



Step\_14 Select **Authorized Signatures** to add an authorized Public Key certificate to the db. As for KEK:  
 • Selecting **Update** from the pop-up window will erase the pre-provisioned db entries and add a new certificate as a single entry;  
 • Selecting **Append** will add the new certificate to the database.  
 Follow steps 4 to 11 to add a new db entry. If the certificate was appended to the database, the Key Source will be "Mixed".

Step\_15 Select **Save Changes and Exit** from the Setup Utility.



4. To take advantage of the Secure Boot feature, make sure it is enabled in the Security → Secure Boot submenu.

System Mode: User  
 Secure Boot: **Enabled**  
 Secure Boot Mode: [Custom]  
 Restore Factory Keys  
 Reset To Setup Mode  
 Key Management

Secure Boot feature is Active if Secure Boot is Enabled, Platform Key(PK) is enrolled and the System is in User mode. The mode change requires platform reset

++: Select Screen  
 T1: Select Item  
 Enter: Select  
 +/-: Change Opt.  
 F1: General Help  
 F2: Previous Values  
 F3: Optimized Defaults  
 F4: Save & Exit  
 ESC: Exit



## Reference guides

# Supported Redfish commands

Table of contents

- [Systems URLs](#)
- [Managers URLs](#)
- [Registries URLs](#)
- [Session Service URLs](#)
- [Task Service URLs](#)
- [Telemetry Service URLs](#)
- [Chassis URLs](#)
- [Account Service URLs](#)
- [Certificate Service URLs](#)
- [Update Service URLs](#)
- [Event Service URLs](#)
- [Miscellaneous URLs](#)

The information is presented in the following format:

- Description | URL | Type

Schema definition

Schema definition for a specific type can be retrieve from <https://redfish.dmtf.org>

## Systems URLs

- Collection of computer systems | /redfish/v1/Systems | ComputerSystemCollection
- Information about a specified system | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE} | ComputerSystem.v1\_15\_0
- Computer system reset action | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/ResetActionInfo | ActionInfo.v1\_1\_2
- Collection of memory devices for this system | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/Memory | MemoryCollection
- Collection of processors | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/Processors | ProcessorCollection
- Collection of storage devices for this system | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/Storage | StorageCollection
- Collection of log services for this system | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/LogServices | LogServiceCollection
- EventLog service | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/LogServices/EventLog | LogService.v1\_1\_0
- Collection of EventLog entries | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/LogServices/EventLog/Entries | LogEntryCollection
- PostCodes services | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/LogServices/PostCodes | LogService.v1\_1\_0
- Collection of PostCodes entries | /redfish/v1/Systems/{SYSTEM\_INSTANCE}/LogServices/PostCodes/Entries | LogEntryCollection
- Information about BIOS Configuration Service | /redfish/v1/Systems/system/Bios | Bios.v1\_1\_0

## Managers URLs

- Collection of managers | /redfish/v1/Managers | ManagerCollection
- Information about a specified manager | /redfish/v1/{MANAGER\_INSTANCE} | Manager.v1\_11\_0
- Collection of Ethernet interfaces for a specified manager | /redfish/v1/Managers/{MANAGER\_INSTANCE}/EthernetInterfaces | EthernetInterfaceCollection
- Information about a specified Ethernet interface | /redfish/v1/Managers/{MANAGER\_INSTANCE}/EthernetInterfaces/{ETHERNET\_INTERFACE\_INSTANCE} | EthernetInterface.v1\_4\_1
- Cold reset action for this manager | /redfish/v1/Managers/{MANAGER\_INSTANCE}/ResetActionInfo | ActionInfo.v1\_1\_2
- Collection of network protocol information | /redfish/v1/Managers/{MANAGER\_INSTANCE}/NetworkProtocol | ManagerNetworkProtocol.v1\_5\_0
- Collection of HTTPS Certificates | /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/NetworkProtocol/HTTPS/Certificates | CertificateCollection
- Collection of Truststore certificates | /redfish/v1/Managers/bmc/Truststore/Certificates | CertificateCollection

## Registries URLs

- Registry repository | /redfish/v1/Registries | MessageRegistryFileCollection
- Summary of a specified registry | /redfish/v1/Registries/{REGISTRY\_INSTANCE} | MessageRegistryFile.v1\_1\_0
- Detailed information about a specified registry | /redfish/v1/Registries/{REGISTRY\_INSTANCE.JSON} | MessageRegistryFile.v1\_1\_0

## Session Service URLs

- Session service | /redfish/v1/SessionService | SessionService.v1\_0\_2
- Collection of sessions | /redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions | SessionCollection
- Information about a specified session | /redfish/v1/SessionService/Sessions/{SESSION\_ID} | Session.v1\_3\_0

## Task Service URLs

- Task service | /redfish/v1/TaskService | TaskService.v1\_1\_4
- Task collection | /redfish/v1/TaskService/Tasks | TaskCollection

## Telemetry Service URLs

- Information about the telemetry service | /redfish/v1/TelemetryService | TelemetryService.v1\_2\_1
- Collection of metric definitions | /redfish/v1/TelemetryService/MetricReportDefinitions | MetricReportDefinitionCollection
- Information about a specified metric definition | /redfish/v1/TelemetryService/MetricReportDefinitions/{METRIC\_REPORT\_DEF} | MetricReportDefinition.v1\_3\_0
- Collection of metric reports | /redfish/v1/TelemetryService/MetricReports | MetricReportCollection

- Information about a specified metric report instance | `/redfish/v1/TelemetryService/MetricReports/{METRIC_REPORT_INSTANCE}` | `MetricReport.v1_3_0`

## Chassis URLs

- Chassis collection | `/redfish/v1/Chassis` | `ChassisCollection`
- Information about a specified chassis instance | `/redfish/v1/Chassis/{CHASSIS_INSTANCE}` | `Chassis.v1_14_0`
- Resets the chassis | `/redfish/v1/Chassis/{CHASSIS_INSTANCE}/ResetActionInfo` | `ActionInfo.v1_1_2`
- Collection of voltage sensors | `/redfish/v1/Chassis/{CHASSIS_INSTANCE}/Power` | `Power.v1_5_2`
- Collection of thermal sensors | `/redfish/v1/Chassis/{CHASSIS_INSTANCE}/Thermal` | `Thermal.v1_4_0`

## Account Service URLs

- Redfish account service | `/redfish/v1/AccountService` | `AccountService.v1_5_0`
- Collection of Redfish user accounts | `/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts` | `ManagerAccountCollection`
- Information about a specified Redfish account | `/redfish/v1/AccountService/Accounts/{ACCOUNT_INSTANCE}` | `ManagerAccount.v1_4_0`
- Collection of available roles | `/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles` | `RoleCollection`
- Information about a specified role | `/redfish/v1/AccountService/Roles/{ROLE_INSTANCE}` | `Role.v1_2_2`
- Collection of account LDAP Certificates | `/redfish/v1/AccountService/LDAP/Certificates` | `CertificateCollection`

## Certificate Service URLs

- Certificate service | `/redfish/v1/CertificateService` | `CertificateService.v1_0_0`
- Certificate service locations | `/redfish/v1/CertificateService/CertificateLocations` | `CertificateLocations.v1_0_0`

## Update Service URLs

- Redfish update service | `/redfish/v1/UpdateService` | `UpdateService.v1_5_0`
- Collection of firmware images | `/redfish/v1/UpdateService/FirmwareInventory` | `SoftwareInventoryCollection`

## Event Service URLs

- Event service | `/redfish/v1/EventService` | `EventService.v1_5_0`
- Collection of current event subscriptions | `/redfish/v1/EventService/Subscriptions` | `EventDestinationCollection`

## Miscellaneous URLs

- List of OEM JSON schemas and extensions | `/redfish/v1/JsonSchemas`
- Information about a specified JSON schema | `/redfish/v1/JsonSchemas/{JSON_SCHEMA_NAME}`

# Supported IPMI commands

Table of contents

- [Application commands](#)
  - [IPM device commands](#)
  - [Watchdog timer commands](#)
  - [BMC device and messaging commands](#)
  - [IPMI 2.0 specific commands](#)
- [Chassis commands](#)
  - [Chassis device commands](#)
- [Bridge commands](#)
  - [Bridge management commands](#)
  - [Bridge discovery commands](#)
  - [Bridging commands](#)
  - [Bridge event commands](#)
- [Sensor event commands](#)
- [Storage commands](#)
  - [FRU information commands](#)
  - [SDR repository commands](#)
  - [SEL device commands](#)
- [Transport commands](#)
  - [LAN device commands](#)
  - [Serial over LAN commands](#)
- [Kontron OEM commands](#)

## Application commands

### IPM device commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x06	0x01	Get Device ID	Supported
0x06	0x02	Cold Reset	Supported
0x06	0x03	Warm Reset	Unsupported
0x06	0x04	Get Self Test Results	Supported
0x06	0x05	Manufacturing Test On	Unsupported
0x06	0x06	Set ACPI Power State	Supported
0x06	0x07	Get ACPI Power State	Unsupported*
0x06	0x08	Get Device GUID	Supported
0x06	0x09	Get NetFn Support	Unsupported
0x06	0x0A	Get Command Support	Unsupported
0x06	0x0C	Get Configurable Commands	Unsupported
0x06	0x60	Set Command Enables	Unsupported
0x06	0x61	Get Command Enables	Unsupported
0x06	0x64	Get OEM NetFn IANA Support	Unsupported
0x06	0x0B	Get Command Sub-function Support	Unsupported
0x06	0x0D	Get Configurable Command Sub-functions	Unsupported
0x06	0x62	Set Command Sub-function Enables	Unsupported
0x06	0x63	Get Command Sub-function Enables	Unsupported
0x06	0x52	Master Write-Read	Unsupported

\* Commands are not rejected and can cause unpredictable behavior.

### Watchdog timer commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x06	0x22	Reset Watchdog Timer	Supported
0x06	0x24	Set Watchdog Timer	Supported
0x06	0x25	Get Watchdog Timer	Supported

## BMC device and messaging commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x06	0x2E	Set BMC Global Enables	Supported
0x06	0x2F	Get BMC Global Enables	Supported
0x06	0x30	Clear Message Flags	Supported
0x06	0x31	Get Message Flags	Supported
0x06	0x32	Enable Message Channel Receive	Unsupported
0x06	0x33	Get Message	Supported
0x06	0x34	Send Message	Supported
0x06	0x35	Read Event Message Buffer	Supported
0x06	0x36	Get BT Interface Capabilities	Supported
0x06	0x37	Get System GUID	Supported
0x06	0x38	Get Channel Authentication Capabilities	Supported
0x06	0x39	Get Session Challenge	Unsupported
0x06	0x3A	Activate Session	Unsupported
0x06	0x3B	Set Session Privilege Level	Supported
0x06	0x3C	Close Session	Supported
0x06	0x3D	Get Session Info	Supported
0x06	0x3F	Get AuthCode	Unsupported
0x06	0x40	Set Channel Access	Supported
0x06	0x41	Get Channel Access	Supported
0x06	0x42	Get Channel Info Command	Supported
0x06	0x43	Set User Access Command	Supported
0x06	0x44	Get User Access Command	Supported
0x06	0x45	Set User Name	Supported
0x06	0x46	Get User Name Command	Supported
0x06	0x47	Set User Password Command	Supported
0x06	0x52	Master Write-Read	Unsupported
0x06	0x58	Set System Info Parameters	Supported
0x06	0x59	Get System Info Parameters	Supported

## IPMI 2.0 specific commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x06	0x48	Activate Payload	Supported
0x06	0x49	Deactivate Payload	Supported
0x06	0x4A	Get Payload Activation Status	Supported
0x06	0x4B	Get Payload Instance Info	Supported
0x06	0x4C	Set User Payload Access	Supported
0x06	0x4D	Get User Payload Access	Supported
0x06	0x4E	Get Channel Payload Support	Supported
0x06	0x4F	Get Channel Payload Version	Supported
0x06	0x50	Get Channel OEM Payload Info	Unsupported
0x06	0x54	Get Channel Cipher Suites	Supported
0x06	0x55	Suspend/Resume Payload Encryption	Unsupported
0x06	0x56	Set Channel Security Keys	Unsupported
0x06	0x57	Get System Interface Capabilities	Unsupported

# Chassis commands

## Chassis device commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x00	0x00	Get Chassis Capabilities	Supported
0x00	0x01	Get Chassis Status	Supported
0x00	0x02	Chassis Control	Supported
0x00	0x04	Chassis Identify	Supported
0x00	0x05	Set Chassis Capabilities	Supported
0x00	0x06	Set Power Restore Policy	Supported
0x00	0x07	Get System Restart Cause	Unsupported*
0x00	0x08	Set System Boot Options	Supported
0x00	0x09	Get System Boot Options	Supported
0x00	0x0A	Set Front Panel Button Enables	Unsupported*
0x00	0x0B	Set Power Cycle Interval	Unsupported
0x00	0x0F	Get POH Counter	Unsupported*

\* Commands are not rejected and can cause unpredictable behavior.

# Bridge commands

## Bridge management commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x02	0x00	Get Bridge State	Unsupported
0x02	0x01	Set Bridge State	Unsupported
0x02	0x02	Get ICMB Address	Unsupported
0x02	0x03	Set ICMB Address	Unsupported
0x02	0x04	Set Bridge Proxy Address	Unsupported
0x02	0x05	Get Bridge Statistics	Unsupported
0x02	0x06	Get ICMB Capabilities	Unsupported
0x02	0x08	Clear Bridge Statistics	Unsupported
0x02	0x09	Get Bridge Proxy Address	Unsupported
0x02	0x0A	Get ICMB Connector Info	Unsupported

## Bridge discovery commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x02	0x10	Prepare For Discovery	Unsupported
0x02	0x11	Get Addresses	Unsupported
0x02	0x12	Set Discovered	Unsupported
0x02	0x13	Get Chassis Device Id	Unsupported
0x02	0x14	Set Chassis Device Id	Unsupported

## Bridging commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x02	0x20	Bridge Request	Unsupported
0x02	0x21	Bridge Message	Unsupported

## Bridge event commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x02	0x30	Get Event Count	Unsupported
0x02	0x31	Set Event Destination	Unsupported
0x02	0x32	Set Event Reception State	Unsupported
0x02	0x33	Send ICMB Event Message	Unsupported
0x02	0x34	Get Event Destination	Unsupported
0x02	0x35	Get Event Reception State	Unsupported

## Sensor event commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x04	0x16	Alert Immediate	Unsupported
0x04	0x11	Arm PEF Postpone Timer	Unsupported
0x04	0x01	Get Event Receiver	Unsupported
0x04	0x10	Get PEF Capabilities	Unsupported
0x04	0x13	Get PEF Configuration Parameters	Unsupported
0x04	0x15	Get Last Processed Event ID	Unsupported
0x04	0x20	Get Device SDR Info	Supported
0x04	0x21	Get Device SDR	Supported
0x04	0x23	Get Sensor Reading Factors	Unsupported
0x04	0x25	Get Sensor Hysteresis	Unsupported
0x04	0x27	Get Sensor Threshold	Supported
0x04	0x29	Get Sensor Event Enable	Supported
0x04	0x2B	Get Sensor Event Status	Supported
0x04	0x2D	Get Sensor Reading	Supported
0x04	0x2F	Get Sensor Type	Supported
0x04	0x17	PET Acknowledge	Unsupported
0x04	0x02	Platform Event	Supported
0x04	0x2A	Re-arm Sensor Events	Unsupported
0x04	0x22	Reserve Device SDR Repository	Supported
0x04	0x00	Set Event Receiver	Unsupported
0x04	0x12	Set PEF Configuration Parameters	Unsupported
0x04	0x14	Set Last Processed Event ID	Unsupported
0x04	0x24	Set Sensor Hysteresis	Unsupported
0x04	0x26	Set Sensor Threshold	Supported
0x04	0x28	Set Sensor Event Enable	Unsupported
0x04	0x2E	Set Sensor Type	Unsupported
0x04	0x30	Set Sensor Reading And Event Status	Supported

## Storage commands

### FRU information commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x0a	0x10	Get FRU Inventory Area Info	Supported
0x0a	0x11	Read FRU Data	Supported
0x0a	0x12	Write FRU Data	Supported

### SDR repository commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x0a	0x20	Get SDR Repository Info	Supported
0x0a	0x21	Get SDR Repository Allocation Info	Supported
0x0a	0x22	Reserve SDR Repository	Supported
0x0a	0x23	Get SDR	Supported
0x0a	0x24	Add SDR	Unsupported
0x0a	0x25	Partial Add SDR	Unsupported
0x0a	0x27	Clear SDR Repository	Unsupported
0x0a	0x28	Get SDR Repository Time	Unsupported
0x0a	0x2C	Run Initialization Agent	Unsupported
0x0a	0x26	Delete SDR Repository	Unsupported

### SEL device commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x0a	0x40	Get SEL Info	Supported
0x0a	0x41	Get SEL Allocation Info	Unsupported
0x0a	0x42	Reserve SEL	Supported
0x0a	0x43	Get SEL Entry	Supported
0x0a	0x44	Add SEL Entry	Supported
0x0a	0x45	Partial Add SEL Entry	Unsupported
0x0a	0x46	Delete SEL Entry	Supported
0x0a	0x47	Clear SEL	Supported
0x0a	0x48	Get SEL Time	Supported
0x0a	0x49	Set SEL Time	Supported
0x0a	0x5C	Get SEL Time UTC Offset	Unsupported
0x0a	0x5D	Set SEL Time UTC Offset	Unsupported

## Transport commands

### LAN device commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x0c	0x01	Set LAN Configuration Parameters	Supported
0x0c	0x02	Get LAN Configuration Parameters	Supported
0x0c	0x03	Suspend BMC ARPs	Unsupported

### Serial over LAN commands

Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x0c	0x22	Get SOL Configuration Parameters	Supported
0x0c	0x21	Set SOL Configuration Parameters	Supported

## Kontron OEM commands





Net function	Command	Command name	Supported / Unsupported
0x3C	0x07	UEFI Recovery	Supported





# Document symbols and acronyms

## Symbols


The following symbols are used in Kontron documentation.


	DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
	WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
	CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.
	NOTICE indicates a property damage message.

	<p><b>Electric Shock!</b></p> <p>This symbol and title warn of hazards due to electrical shocks (&gt; 60 V) when touching products or parts of them. Failure to observe the precautions indicated and/or prescribed by the law may endanger your life/health and/or result in damage to your material. Please also refer to the "High-Voltage Safety Instructions" portion below in this section.</p>
---	---

	<p><b>ESD Sensitive Device!</b></p> <p>This symbol and title inform that the electronic boards and their components are sensitive to static electricity. Care must therefore be taken during all handling operations and inspections of this product in order to ensure product integrity at all times.</p>
---	---

	<p><b>HOT Surface!</b></p> <p>Do NOT touch! Allow to cool before servicing.</p>
---	---

	<p>This symbol indicates general information about the product and the documentation.</p> <p>This symbol also indicates detailed information about the specific product configuration.</p>
---	--

	<p>This symbol precedes helpful hints and tips for daily use.</p>
---	---

## Acronyms

ACPI	Advanced Configuration and Power Interface
AI	Artificial Intelligence
API	Application Programming Interface
ASIC	Application Specific Integrated Circuit
BIOS	Basic Input/Output System
BMC	Baseboard Management Controller
BSP	Board Support Package
CBIT	Continuous Built-In Test
CE	Community European (EU mark)
CLI	Command-Line Interface
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CRMS	Communications Rack Mount Servers
CSA	Canadian Standards Association
DC	Direct Current
DDR4	Double Data Rate Fourth Generation
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DIMM	Dual Inline Memory Module
DRAM	Dynamic Random Access Memory
DTS	Digital Thermal Sensor
DU	Distributed Unit
ECC	Error Checking and Correcting
EEPROM	Electrically Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory
EMC	Electromagnetic Compatibility

EMI	Electromagnetic Interference
ESD	Electrostatic Discharge
ETSI	European Telecommunications Standards Institute
ETSI	European Telecommunications Standards Institute
eUSB	Embedded Universal Serial Bus
FCC	Federal Communications Commission
FH/FL	Full Height/Full Length
FPGA	Field Programmable Gate Array
FRAU	Field Replaceable Unit
FRU	Field Replaceable Unit
Gb, Gbit	Gigabit
GB, Gbyte	Gigabyte – 1024 MB
GbE	Gigabit Ethernet
GND	Ground
GPI	General Purpose Input
GPIO	General Purpose Input/Output
GPO	General Purpose Output
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPU	Graphics Processing Unit
GUI	Graphical User Interface
HDD	Hard Disk Drive
Hz	Hertz – 1 cycle/second
I/O	Input/Output
I <sup>2</sup> C	Inter-Integrated Circuit Bus
iBMC	Integrated Baseboard Management Controller
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IMU	Inertial Measurement Unit
IOL	IPMI over LAN
IPMB	Intelligent Platform Management Bus
IPMI	Intelligent Platform Management Interface
IRQ	Interrupt Request Line
KB, Kbyte	Kilobyte – 1024 bytes
KCS	Keyboard Controller Style
KEAPI	Kontron Embedded Application Programming Interface
KVM	Keyboard, Video, Mouse
LAN	Local Area Network
LED	Light-Emitting Diode
LP	Low Profile
LPC	Low Pin Count
LVDS	Low Voltage Differential SCSI
MAT	Maximum Ambient Temperature
MB, Mbyte	Megabyte – 1024 KB
MCU	Microcontroller
MEC	Multi-Access Edge Computing
MXM	Mobile PCI Express Module
NCSI	Network Communications Services Interface
NEBS	Network Equipment-Building System

NIC	Network Interface Card, or Network Interface Controller, or Network Interface Controller port
NMI	Non-Maskable interrupt
NOS	Network Operating System
NVMe	Non-Volatile Memory Express
OCXO	Oven-Controlled Crystal Oscillator
OS	Operating System
OTP	Over-Temperature Protection
OVP	Over-Voltage Protection
PBIT	Power On Built-In Test
PCH	Platform Controller Hub
PCI	Peripheral Component Interconnect
PCIe	Peripheral Component Interconnect Express
PECI	Platform Environment Control Interface
PIRQ	PCI Interrupt Request Line
PMbus	Power Management Bus
PMM	POST Memory Manager
PnP	Plug and Play
POST	Power-On Self Test
PSU	Power Supply Unit
PTP	Precision Time Protocol
PXE	Preboot eXecution Environment
RAID	Redundant Array of Independent Disks
RAN	Radio Access Network
RAS	Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability
RDIMM	Registered Dual In-Line Memory Module
RDP	Remote Desktop
RMM	Remote Management Module
RoHS	Restriction of Hazardous Substances
SAS	Serial Attached SCSI (Small Computer System Interface)
SATA	Serial Advanced Technology Attachment
SCSI	Small Computer Systems Interface
SDRAM	Synchronous Dynamic RAM
SEL	System Event Log
SFP+	Small Form-factor Pluggable that supports data rates up to 10.0 Gbps
SMBus	System Management Bus
SMS	Server Management Software
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SOC	System on a Chip
SOL	Serial over LAN
SSD	Solid State Drive
SSH	Secure Shell
THOL	Tested Hardware and Operating System List
TPM	Trusted Platform Module
TUV	Technischer Überwachungs-Verein (A safety testing laboratory with headquarters in Germany)
UART	Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter
UEFI	Unified Extensible Firmware Interface
UL	Underwriter's Laboratory

USB	Universal Serial Bus
UV	Under-Voltage
V	Volt
VA	Volt-Ampere (volts multiplied by amps)
Vac	Volts Alternating Current
Vdc	Volts Direct Current
VDE	Verband Deutscher Electrotechniker (German Institute of Electrical Engineers)
VGA	Video Graphics Array
vRAN	Virtualized Radio Access Network
VSB	Voltage Standby
W	Watt
WEEE	Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment
$\Omega$	Ohm